HDG1-EC6OAE
English

OPTIMA

OWNER'S MANUAL | English

2017 OWNER'S MANUAL

© 2016 KIA MOTORS CANADA, INC.

OPTIMA

The Power to Surprise

Kia, THE COMPANY

Thank you for becoming the owner of a new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturer focused on building high-quality vehicles with exceptional value, Kia Motors is dedicated to providing you with a customer service experience that exceeds your expectations.

All information contained in this Owner's Manual was accurate at the time of publication. However, Kia reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement can be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, you may encounter material in this manual that is not applicable to your specific Kia vehicle.

Drive safely and enjoy your Kia!

Thank you for choosing a Kia vehicle.

When you require service, remember that your Kia dealer knows your vehicle best. Your dealer has factory-trained technicians, recommended special tools and genuine Kia replacement parts. It is dedicated to your complete customer satisfaction.

Because subsequent owners require this important information as well, this publication should remain with the vehicle if it is sold.

This manual will familiarize you with operational, maintenance and safety information about your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty and Consumer Information manual that provides important information on all warranties regarding your vehicle.

We urge you to read these publications carefully and follow the recommendations to help assure enjoyable and safe operation of your new vehicle.

Kia offers a great variety of options, components and features for its various models. Therefore, some of the equipment described in this manual, along with the various illustrations, may not be applicable to your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications provided in this manual were accurate at the time of printing. Kia reserves the right to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation. If you have questions, always check with your Kia dealer.

We assure you of our continuing interest in your motoring pleasure and satisfaction in your Kia vehicle.

© 2016 Kia Canada Inc.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Kia Canada Inc..

Printed in U.S.A

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	1
Your vehicle at a glance	2
Safety features of your vehicle	3
Features of your vehicle	4
Audio system	5
Driving your vehicle	6
What to do in an emergency	7
Maintenance	8
Specifications & Consumer information	9
Index	I

Introduction

1

How to use this manual 1-2
Fuel requirements 1-2
• Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol. 1-3
• Do not use methanol 1-4
• Fuel Additives 1-5
• Operation in foreign countries. 1-5
Vehicle break-in process 1-5
Vehicle data collection and event data recorders. . 1-6

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has nine sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTICEs in this manual. These WARNINGs were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTICEs.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.

✻ NOTICE

A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having a pump octane number ((R+M)/2) of 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimize exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (Consult an authorized Kia dealer for details.)

- Tighten the cap until it clicks one time, otherwise the Check Engine light will illuminate.

⚠ WARNING - Refueling

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off. Attempts to force more fuel into the tank can cause fuel overflow onto you and the ground causing a risk of fire.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage, especially in the event of an accident.**

Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol

Gasohol, a mixture of gasoline and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and gasoline or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded gasoline.

Pursuant to EPA regulations, ethanol may be used in your vehicle.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 15 percent ethanol, and do not use gasoline or gasohol containing any methanol. Ethanol provides less energy than gasoline and it attracts water, and it is thus likely to reduce your fuel efficiency and could lower your MPG results.

Methanol may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or drivability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
2. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.
3. Gasohol containing more than 15 percent ethanol.

"E85" fuel is an alternative fuel comprised of 85 percent ethanol and 15 percent gasoline, and is manufactured exclusively for use in Flexible Fuel Vehicles. "E85" is not compatible with your vehicle. Use of "E85" may result in poor engine performance and damage to your vehicle's engine and fuel system. Kia recommends that customers do not use fuel with an ethanol content exceeding 15 percent.

✻ NOTICE

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage to the fuel system or any performance problems caused by the use of "E85" fuel.

✻ NOTICE

Never use any fuel containing methanol. Discontinue use of any methanol containing product which may inhibit proper drivability.

Other fuels

Using fuels that contain Silicone (Si), MMT (Manganese, Mn), Ferrocene (Fe), and Other metalic additives, may cause vehicle and engine damage or cause misfiring, poor acceleration, engine stalling, catalyst melting, clogging, abnormal corrosion, life cycle reduction, etc.

Also, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) may illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Use of MTBE

Kia recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapor lock or hard starting.

✻ NOTICE

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)

Gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains harmful manganese-based fuel additives Such as MMT(Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl). Kia does not recommend the use of gasoline containing MMT. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and affect your emission control system. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp on the cluster may come on.

Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Fuel Additives

Kia recommends that you use good quality gasolines treated with detergent additives such as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, which help prevent deposit formation in the engine. These gasolines will help the engine run cleaner and enhance performance of the Emission Control System. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the website (www.toptiergas.com).

For customers who do not use TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, additives that that can be purchased separately may be added to the gasoline.

If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive should be added to the fuel tank at every 12,000km (7,500miles) or every engine oil change is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

Operation in foreign countries

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

VEHICLE DATA COLLECTION AND EVENT DATA RECORDERS

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/ fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

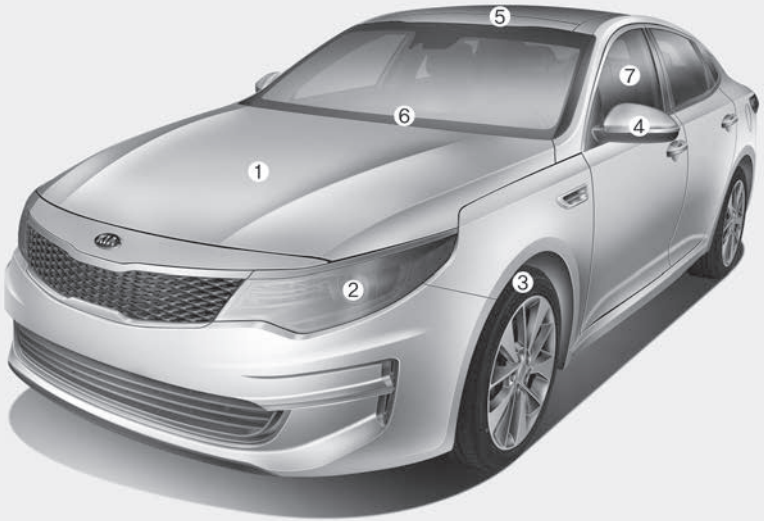
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview 2-2
Interior overview 2-4
Instrument panel overview 2-5
Engine compartment 2-6

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

■ Front view

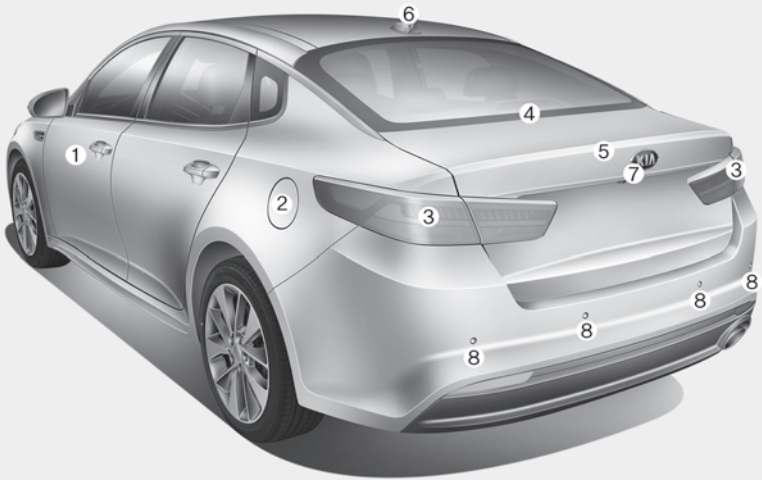


1. Hood 4-35
2. Head lamp (Features of your vehicle)..4-103
Head lamp (Maintenance).....8-77
3. Wheel and tire (Maintenance) 8-46
Wheel and tire (Specifications) 9-4
4. Outside rearview mirror.....4-53
5. Panorama sunroof.....4-41
6. Front windshield wiper blades
(Features of your vehicle).....4-110
Front windshield wiper blades
(Maintenance) 8-39
7. Windows 4-31

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJFA015001

■ Rear view

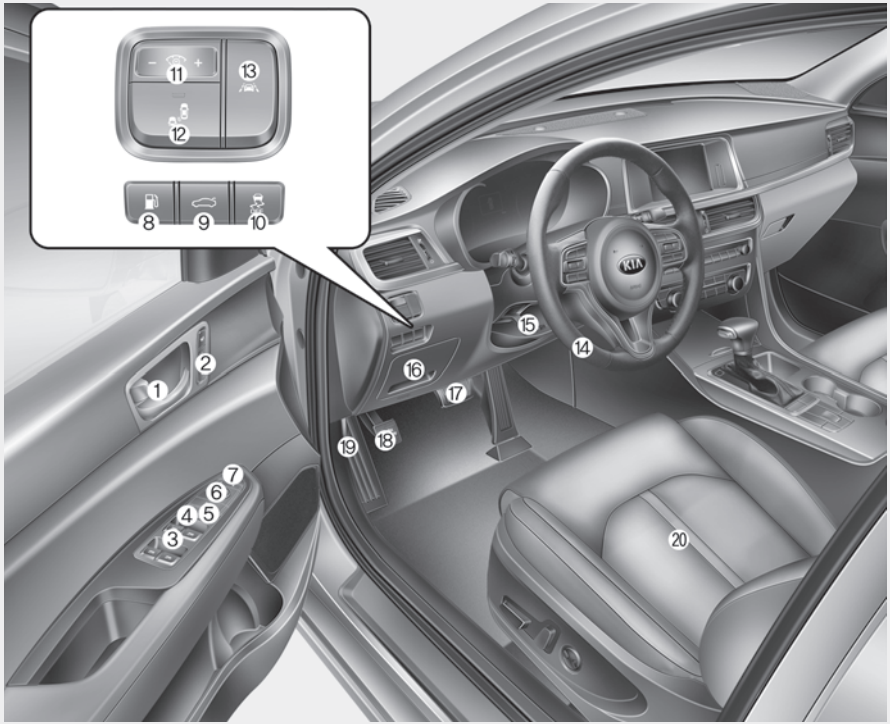


1. Door locks 4-21
2. Fuel filler lid 4-37
3. Rear combination lamp (Maintenance) ..8-78
4. High mounted stop lamp (Maintenance) .8-78
5. Trunk 4-25, 4-27
6. Antenna 5-2
7. Rearview camera 4-101
8. Parking assist system (Rear) 4-97

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJF015002L

INTERIOR OVERVIEW

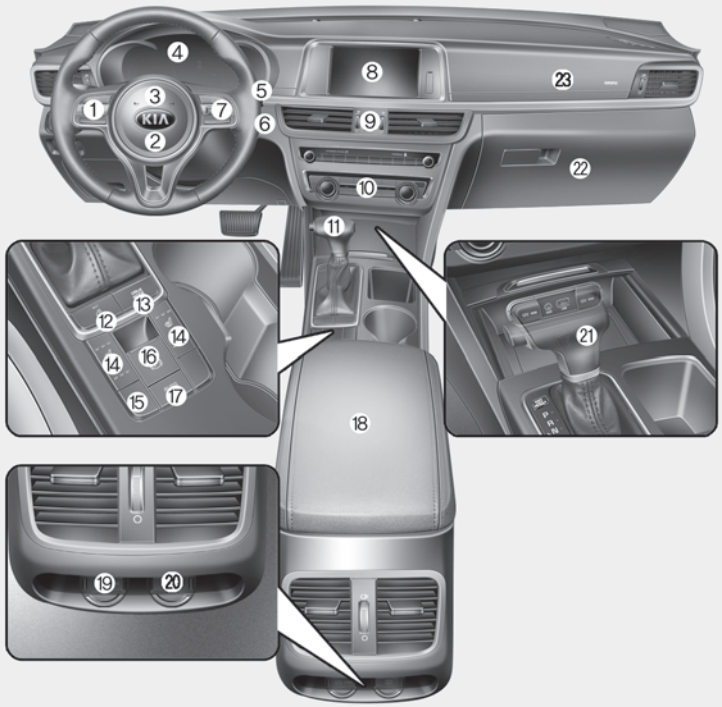


1. Inside door handle 4-22
2. Driver position memory button 3-11
3. Power window switch.....4-31
4. Central door lock switch 4-23
5. Power window lock button 4-34
6. Outside rearview mirror control 4-53
7. Outside rearview mirror folding 4-55
8. Fuel filler lid open button 4-37
9. Trunk open button 4-25
10. ESC off button 6-44
11. Instrument panel illumination control 4-57
12. BSD On/Off button.....6-86
13. LDWS On/Off button.....6-94
14. Steering wheel.....4-47
15. Tilt and telescopic steering control lever..4-48
16. Inner fuse panel.....8-62
17. Brake pedal.....6-28
18. Parking brake pedal.....6-30
19. Hood release lever.....4-35
20. Seat.....3-4

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJFA015003

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW



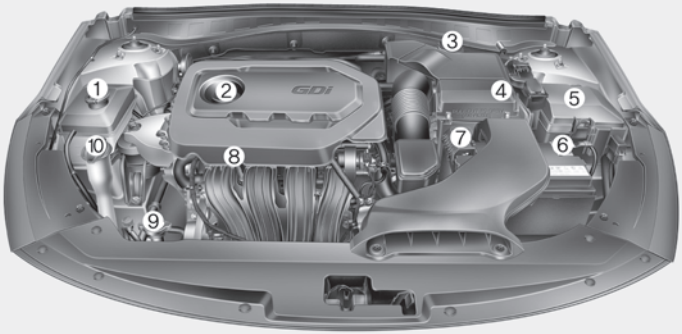
1. Steering wheel audio controls 5-3
2, Driver`s front air bag 3-59
3. Horn.....4-50
4. Instrument cluster.....4-56
5. Wiper and washer control lever.....4-110
6. Ignition switch.....6-6
   Engine start/stop button 6-9
7. Cruise control 6-62
   Advanced smart cruise control.....6-66
8. Audio 5-8
9. Hazard warning flasher 7-2
10. Manual climate control system.....4-118
    Automatic climate control system....4-128
11. Shift lever A/T.....6-13
    Shift lever DCT 6-20
12. Heated steering wheel button 4-49
13. Drive mode button.....6-83
14. Seat warmer.....4-148
    Air ventilation seat.....4-149
15. 360° camera monitoring system
    On/Off button.....4-102
16. Electronic parking brake (EPB) switch.6-31
17. Auto Hold On/Off button.....6-38
18. Center console storage box 4-145
19. Power outlet.....4-150
20. USB charger.....4-151
21. Smart phone wireless charger 4-152
22. Glove box 4-145
23. Passenger's front air bag 3-59

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

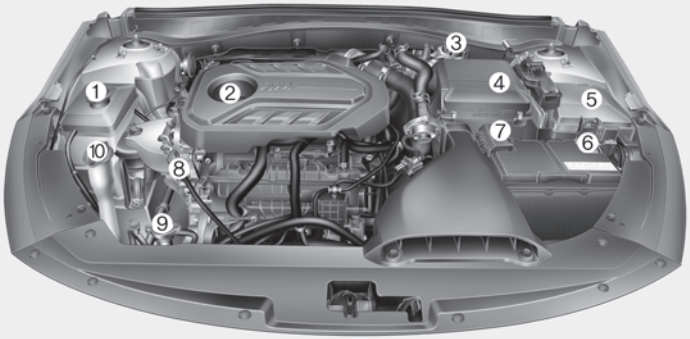
OJFA015004

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ THETA 2.4L - GDI



■ THETA 2.0L T-GDI

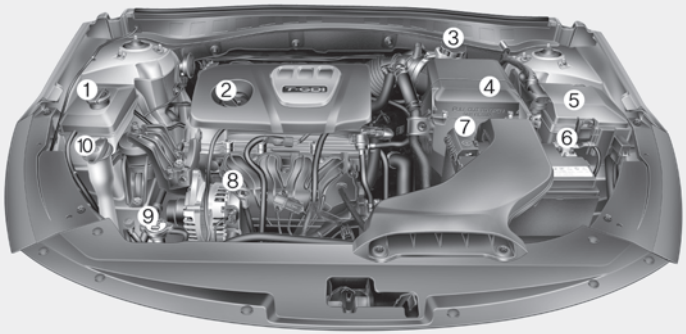


1. Engine coolant reservoir 8-30
2. Engine oil filler cap 8-28
3. Brake fluid reservoir 8-32
4. Air cleaner 8-35
5. Fuse box 8-61
6. Negative battery terminal 8-43
7. Positive battery terminal 8-43
8. Engine oil dipstick 8-27
9. Radiator cap 8-31
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir 8-33

❊ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJFA075001/OJF075001L

■ **GAMMA 1.6L T-GDI**



1. Engine coolant reservoir.....8-30
2. Engine oil filler cap 8-28
3. Brake fluid reservoir.....8-32
4. Air cleaner.....8-35
5. Fuse box 8-61
6. Negative battery terminal.....8-43
7. Positive battery terminal 8-43
8. Engine oil dipstick.....8-27
9. Radiator cap 8-31
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir....8-33

❊ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJFA075002

Safety features of your vehicle

Important safety precautions 3-2
- Always wear your seat belt 3-2
- Restrain all children 3-2
- Air bag hazards 3-2
- Driver distraction 3-2
- Control your speed 3-3
- Keep your vehicle in safe condition 3-3

Seat. 3-4
- Front seat adjustment - manual. 3-7
- Front seat adjustment - power. 3-8
- Driver position memory system (for power seat). . . 3-11
- Headrest (for front seat). 3-13
- Seatback pocket. 3-16
- Rear seat adjustment 3-16

Seat belts 3-21
- Seat belt restraint system 3-21
- Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-27
- Seat belt precautions. 3-29
- Care of seat belts 3-31

Child restraint system (CRS) 3-32
- Children Always in the Rear 3-32
- Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-33
- Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS). 3-36

Air bag - advanced supplemental restraint system 3-43
- How does the air bag system operate? 3-44
- Air bag warning light 3-46
- SRS components and functions 3-47
- Occupant Detection System (ODS) 3-50
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-58
- Side air bag 3-61
- Curtain air bag 3-63
- SRS Care 3-69
- Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle. 3-70
- Air bag warning label 3-70

IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with air bags, ALWAYS make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should ride in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate child restraint. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

Air bag hazards

While air bags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and shorter adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using cellular phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction or getting into an accident:

- ALWAYS set up your mobile devices (i.e., MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.

- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and when conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email while driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

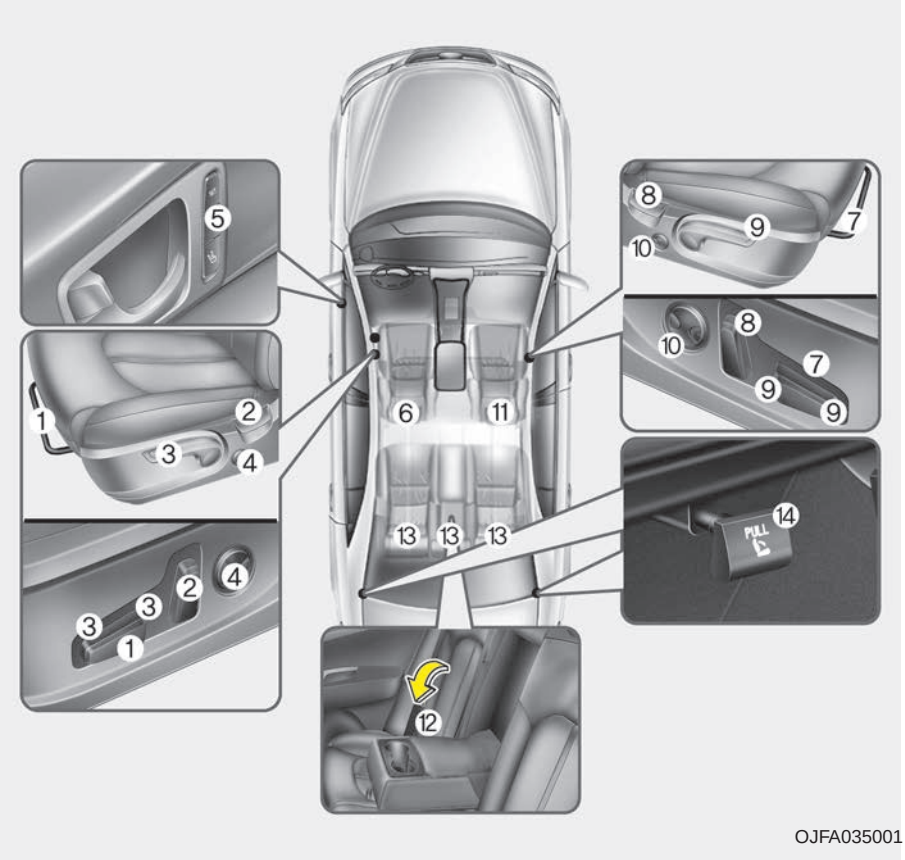
Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

SEAT



OJFA035001

Driver's seat

(1) Seat adjustment, forward / backward
(2) Seatback recliner
(3) Seat adjustment, height
(4) Lumbar support *
(5) Driver position memory system *
(6) Headrest

Front passenger's seat

(7) Seat adjustment, forward / backward
(8) Seatback recliner
(9) Seat cushion height
(10) Lumbar support*
(11) Headrest

Rear seat

(12) Armrest
(13) Headrest
(14) Seat-back folding lever

* : if equipped

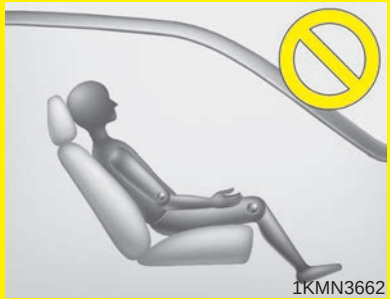
⚠ WARNING - Loose objects

Do not place anything in the driver's foot well or under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals.

⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat

Do not press the release lever on a manual seatback without holding and controlling the seatback. The seatback will spring upright possibly impacting you or other passengers.

⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for passengers



The driver must advise the passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion. If a seat is reclined during an accident, the restraint system's ability to restrain will be greatly reduced.

⚠ WARNING - Seat cushion

Occupants should never sit on aftermarket seat cushions or sitting cushions. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat

- **Never attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control of your vehicle.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against the seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while still maintaining comfortable control of the your vehicle. A distance of at least 250mm (10 inches) from your chest to the steering wheel is recommended. Failure to do so can result in air bag inflation injuries to the driver.**

⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks

Always lock the rear seatback before driving. Failure to do so could result in passengers or objects being thrown forward injuring vehicle occupants.

⚠ WARNING - Luggage and Cargo

Do not stack, pile or stack luggage or cargo higher than the seatback in the cargo area. In an accident the cargo could strike and injury a passenger. If objects are large, heavy or must be piled, they must be secured in the cargo area.

⚠ WARNING - Unexpected Seat Movement

After adjusting a manual seat, always check that it is locked by shifting your weight to the front and back. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Seat adjustment

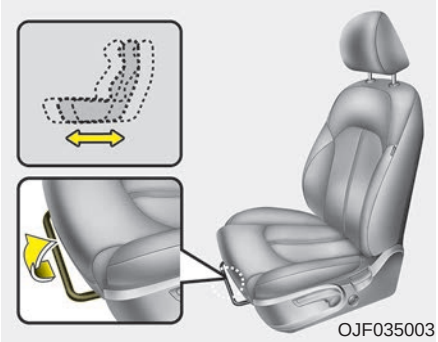
- **Do not adjust the seat while wearing seat belts. Moving the seat forward will cause strong pressure on the abdomen.**
- **Do not place your hand near the seat bottom or seat track while adjusting the seat. Your hand could get caught in the seat mechanism.**

⚠ WARNING - Small Objects

Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the center console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seats mechanism.

Front seat adjustment - manual

Forward and backward

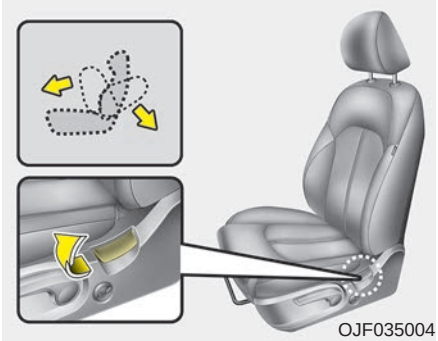


To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

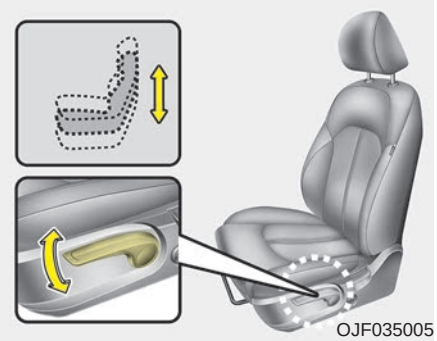
Seatback angle



To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up the seatback recline lever.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

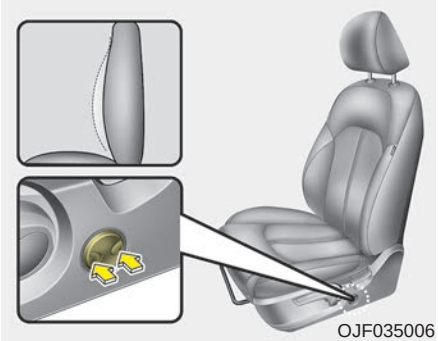
Seat height



To change the height of the seat, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

Lumbar support (if equipped)



The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

Front seat adjustment - power (if equipped)

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so you can easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

⚠ WARNING - Unattended children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them.

⚠ **CAUTION - Power seat adjustments**

The power seating controls function by electric motor.

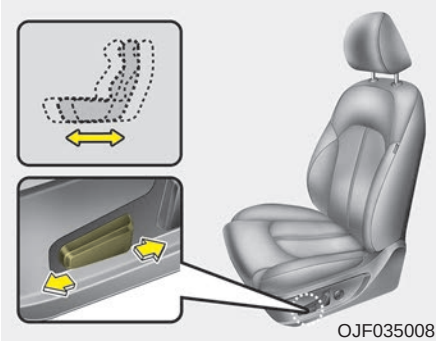
Excessive operation may cause damage to the electrical equipment.

⚠ **CAUTION - Power Seating**

Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may damage the power seat motor or electrical components.

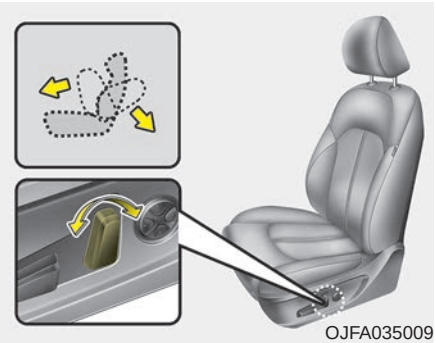
When in operation, the power seat-consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary while the engine is not running.

Forward and backward



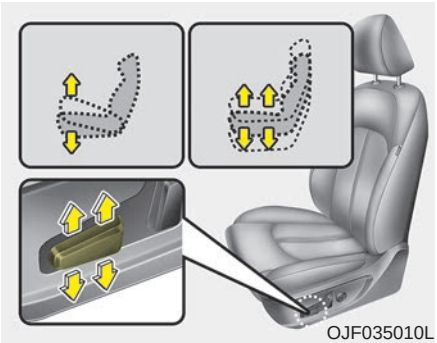
Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seatback angle



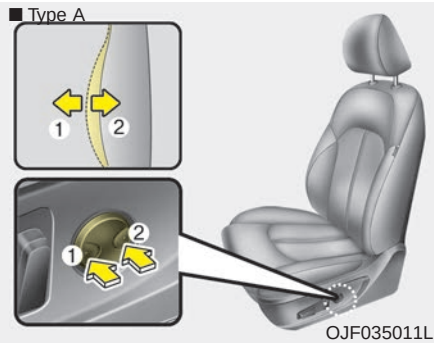
Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat height



Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

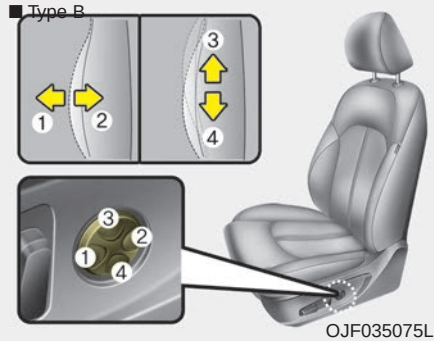
Lumbar support (if equipped)



The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

Type A

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

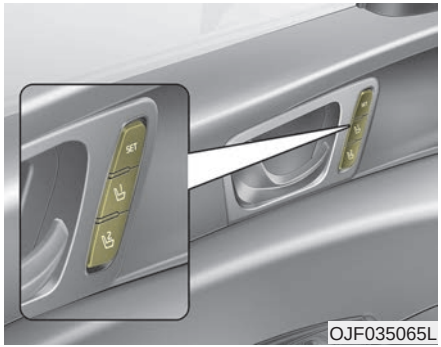


OJF035075L

Type B

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch (2), to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.
3. Press the upper portion (3) of the switch to move the support position up, or press the lower portion (4) of the switch, to move the support position down.
4. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

Driver position memory system (if equipped, for power seat)



OJF035065L

A driver position memory system is provided to store and recall the driver seat and outside rearview mirror position with a simple button operation. By saving the desired position into the system memory, different drivers can reposition the driver seat based upon their driving preference. If the battery is disconnected, the desired seat position memory will need to be re-saved.

⚠ WARNING - Driver Position Memory System

Never attempt to operate the driver position memory system while the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death or serious injury.

Storing positions into memory using the buttons on the door

Storing driver's seat positions

1. Shift the shift lever into P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) while the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. Adjust the driver's seat and outside rearview mirror comfortable for the driver.
3. Press SET button on the control panel. The system will beep once.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button. The system will beep twice when memory has been successfully stored.

When recalling an adjustment memory button while sitting in the vehicle, you can be surprised by the setting chosen if the memory has been adjusted by someone else. If that occurs, immediately push the seat position control knob in the direction of the desired position to stop further undesired movement.

Recalling positions from memory

1. Shift the shift lever into P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) while the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. To recall the position in the memory, press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, then the driver's seat will automatically adjust to the stored position.

Adjusting the control switch for the driver's seat while the system is recalling the stored position will cause the movement to stop and move in the direction that the control switch is moved.

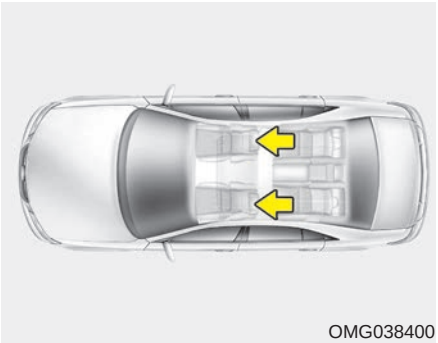
Easy access function (if equipped)

The system will move the driver's seat automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - It will move the driver’s seat rearward when the ignition key is removed and front driver`s door is opened.
  - It will move the driver’s seat forward when the ignition key is inserted.
- With smart key system
  - It will move the driver’s seat rearward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the OFF position and front driver`s door is opened.
  - It will move the driver’s seat forward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the ACC or START position.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when you get in your vehicle with the smart key after closing the driver's door.

You can activate or deactivate this feature. Refer to "User settings" in chapter 4.

Headrest (for front seat)



The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

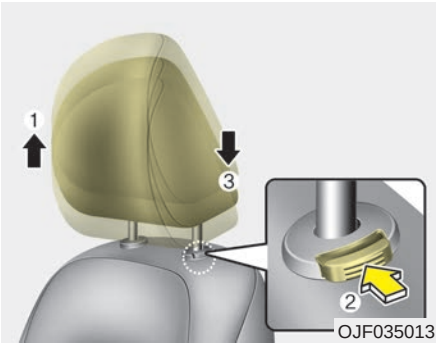
The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a rear collision.

For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.

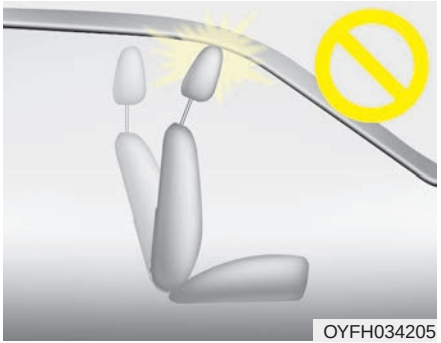
⚠ WARNING - Headrest removal/adjustment

- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Headrests can provide critical neck and head support in a crash.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest height while the vehicle is in motion. Driver may lose control of the vehicle.**

Adjusting the height up and down



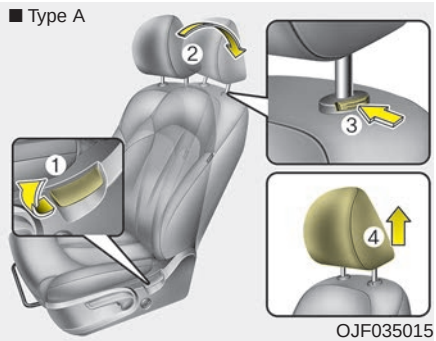
To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).



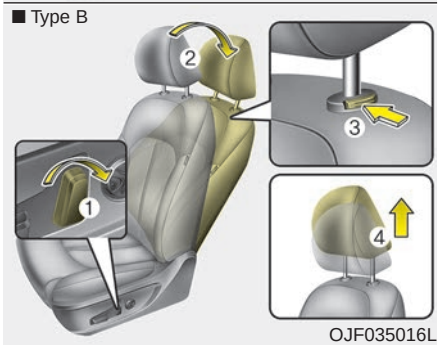
✻ NOTICE

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.

Removal and reinstallation



OJF035015



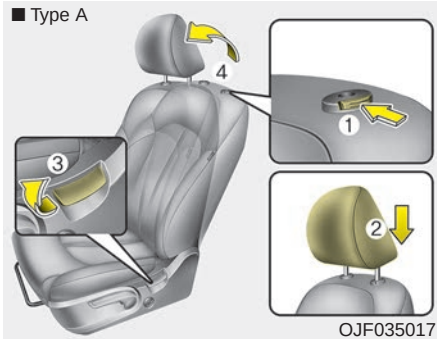
OJF035016L

To remove the headrest:

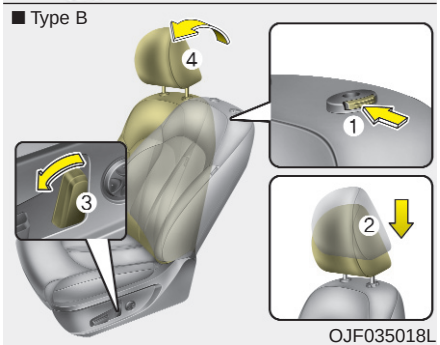
1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever or switch (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) while pulling the headrest up (4).

⚠ WARNING - Headrest Removal

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed. Headrests can provide critical neck and head support in a crash.



OJF035017



OJF035018L

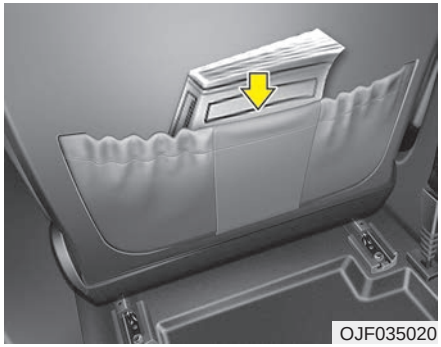
To reinstall the headrest :

1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes while pressing the release button (1) or switch(1).
2. Recline the seatback (4) with the recline lever or switch (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING - Headrest Reinstallation

To reduce the risk of injury to the head or neck, always make sure the headrest is locked into position and adjusted properly after reinstalling.

Seatback pocket


OJF035020

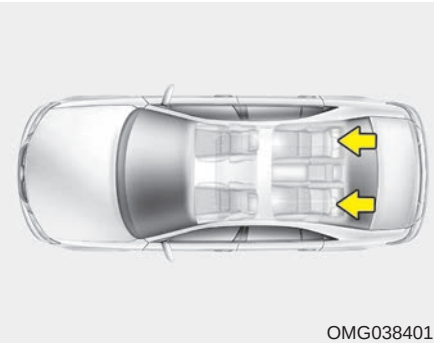
The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.

⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.

Rear seat adjustment

Headrest

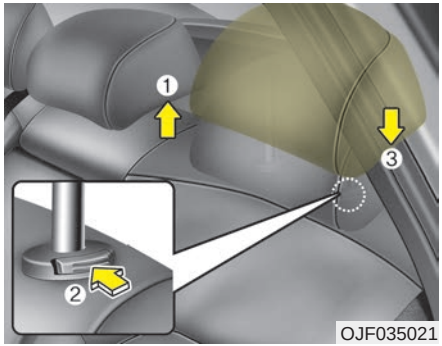

OMG038401

The rear seat is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

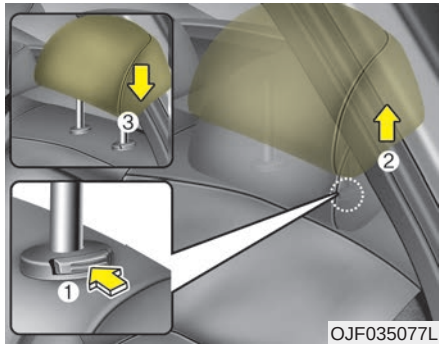
For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's heads is similar with the height as the top of their eyes.

Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.



Adjusting the height up and down (if equipped)

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

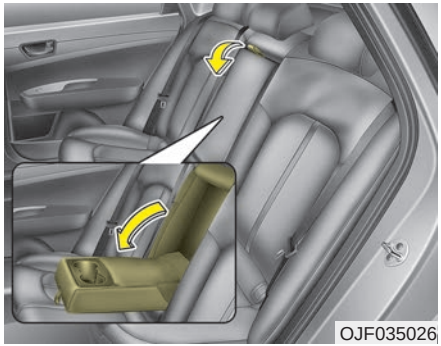


Removal and reinstallation (if equipped)

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) while pulling the headrest upward (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes while pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height and ensure that it locks in position.

Armrest



To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.

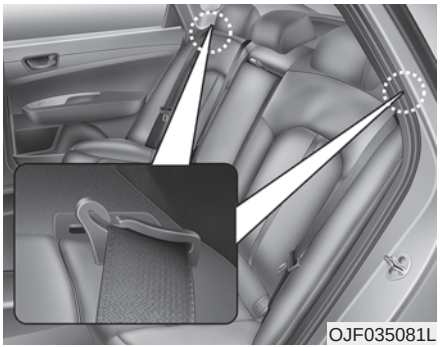
Folding the rear seat

The rear seatbacks may be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Folded Seatback

The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects than could not otherwise be accommodated.

- **Never allow a passenger to sit on top of the folded down seatback while the car is moving. This is not a proper seating position since no seat belts are available for use.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury caused by sliding cargo within the passenger compartment of the vehicle, objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seats.**

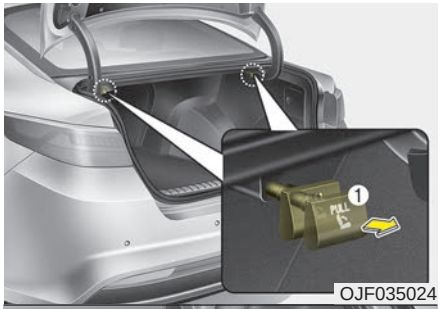


To fold down the rear seatback:

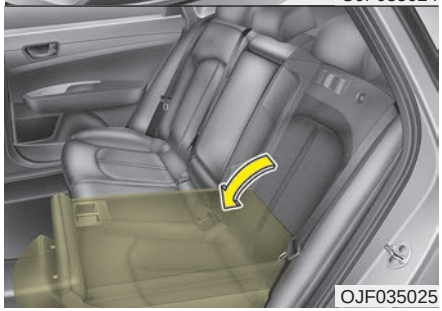
1. Make sure the rear seat belt webbing is in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.

⚠ WARNING - Objects

Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.



OJF035024



OJF035025

4. Pull out the seatback locking knob(1) in the trunk, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.
5. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

✻ NOTICE

After folding the rear seat, unless the driver's position is properly set according to the driver's physical figure, do not fold the rear seat.

⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat

When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward, resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.

⚠ WARNING - Rear Seatback

To ensure maximum protection in the event of an accident or sudden stop, when returning the rear seat to the upright position:

- **Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to become pinched or caught in the rear seat.**
- **Ensure the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback.**

Failure to adhere to any of these instructions could result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash.

⚠ CAUTION - Damaging rear seat belt buckles

When you fold the rear seatback, insert the buckle between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback.

When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading

Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission is in P (Park) and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

SEAT BELTS

Seat belt restraint system

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the vehicle is moving. A properly positioned shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.
- Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. See child restraint system section for further discussion.

⚠ WARNING - Twisted seat belt

Make sure your seat belt is not twisted when worn. A twisted seat belt may not properly protect you in an accident and could even cut into your body.

⚠ WARNING - Shoulder Belt

- **Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt cannot protect the occupant in a crash.**
- **Always wear both the shoulder portion and lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.**

⚠ WARNING - Damaged seat belt

Replace the entire seat belt assembly if any part of the webbing or hardware is damaged as you can no longer be sure that a damaged seat belt will provide protection in a crash.

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

- No modifications or additions should be made by the user which would either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.
- When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of another seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.
- Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly while driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.
- When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.

⚠ WARNING - Seat belt buckle

Do not allow foreign material (gum, crumbs, coins, etc.) to obstruct the seat belt buckle. This may prevent the seat belt from fastening securely.

OJF035091L

Driver's seat belt warning

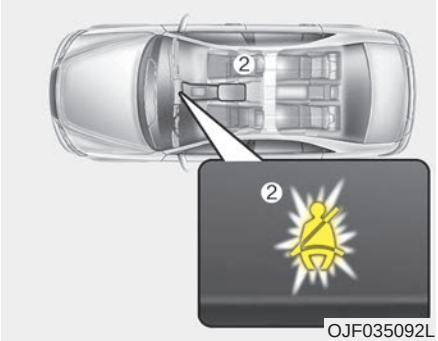
As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate and warning chime will sound for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON if the seat belt is unfastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h (6mph), the warning light will stay illuminated until you drive under 6km/h (4mph). (if equipped)

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20km/h (12mph) the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink. (if equipped)

If you unfasten the seat belt while driving under 20km/h (12mph), the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

If you unfasten the seat belt while driving over 20km/h (12mph), the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.



Front passenger's seat belt warning

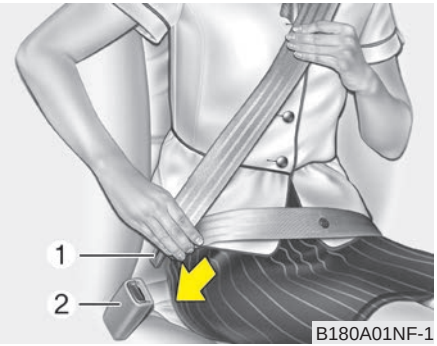
As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h (6mph), the warning light the warning light will stay illuminated.

If you unfasten the seat belt while driving in case of under 20km/h (12mph) the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

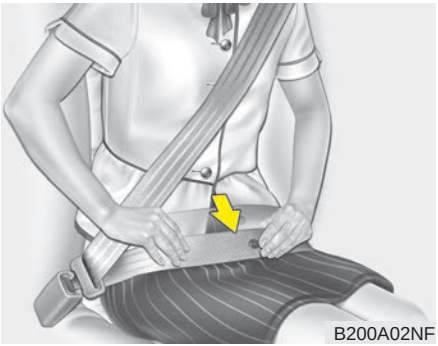
If you unfasten the seat belt while driving over 20km/h (12mph), the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

Seat belt - Driver's 3-point system with emergency locking retractor



To fasten your seat belt:

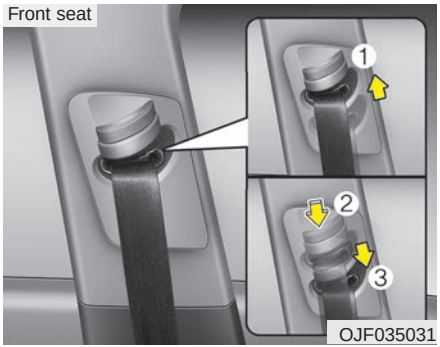
To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.



The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

✱ NOTICE

If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.



Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.

To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belt positioning

Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.

⚠ WARNING - Seat belt replacement

Replace your seat belts after being in an accident. Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision.

Seat belts - Front passenger and rear seat 3-point system with combination locking retractor

To fasten your seat belt:

Combination retractor type seat belts are installed in the rear seat positions to help accommodate the installation of child restraint systems. Although a combination retractor is also installed in the front passenger seat position, it is strongly recommended that children always be seated in the rear seat. NEVER place any infant restraint system in the front seat of the vehicle.

This type of seat belt combines the features of both an emergency locking retractor seat belt and an automatic locking retractor seat belt. To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab into the buckle. There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle. When not securing a child restraint, the seat belt operates in the same way as the driver's seat belt (Emergency Locking Retractor Type).

It automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion of the seat belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips.

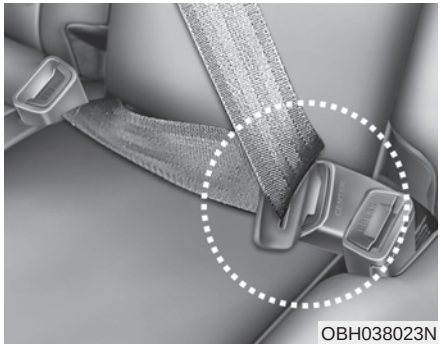
When the seat belt is fully extended from the retractor to allow the installation of a child restraint system, the seat belt operation changes to allow the belt to retract, but not to extend (Automatic Locking Retractor Type). Refer to “Using a child restraint system” in this section.

✻ NOTICE

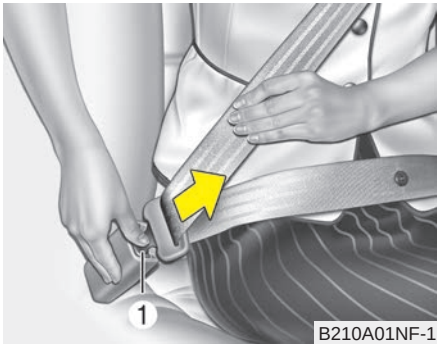
Although the combination retractor provides the same level of protection for seated passengers in either emergency or automatic locking modes, have the seated passengers use the emergency locking feature for improved convenience. The automatic locking function is intended to facilitate child restraint installation. To convert from the automatic locking feature to the emergency locking operation mode, allow the unbuckled seat belt to fully retract.

⚠ CAUTION

Do NOT fold down the left portion of the rear seat back when the rear center seat belt is buckled. ALWAYS UNBUCKLE the rear center seat belt before folding down the left portion of the rear seat back. If the rear center seat belt is buckled when the left portion of the rear seat back is folded down, distortion and damage to the top portion of the seat back and seat belt garnish may result, causing the seat back to lock into the folded down position.



When using the rear center seat belt, the buckle with the “CENTER” mark must be used.



To release the seat belt:

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (1) on the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

Pre-tensioner seat belt

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts (retractor pretensioner and EFD (Emergency Fastening Device)). The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated, when a frontal collision is severe enough, together with the air bags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor may lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

(1) Retractor Pretensioner

The purpose of the retractor pretensioner is to make sure that the shoulder belts fit in tightly against the occupant's upper body in certain frontal collisions.

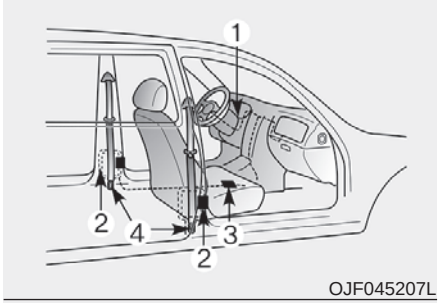
(2) EFD (Emergency Fastening Device)

The purpose of the EFD is to make sure that the pelvis belts fit in tightly against the occupant's lower body in certain frontal collisions.

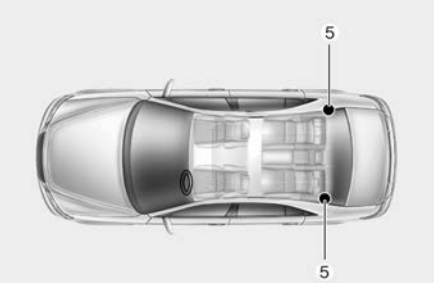
If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt.

✻ NOTICE

When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.



OJF045207L



OJF045205L

The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

(1) SRS air bag warning light
(2) Front retractor pre-tensioner assembly
(3) SRS control module
(4) Emergency fastening device (EFD)
(5) Rear retractor pre-tensioner assembly (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING - Skin Irritation

Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated. The fine dust from the pre-tensioner activation may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods.

✻ NOTICE

- **Both the driver's and front passenger's seat belt pre-tensioner system may be activated not only in certain frontal collision, but also in certain side collisions or rollovers, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the ON position, and then it should turn off.**

If the pre-tensioner seat belt system is not working properly, this warning light will illuminate even if there is not a malfunction with the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized Kia dealer inspect the pre-tensioner seat belt and SRS air bag system as soon as possible.

✻ NOTICE

Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. This must be done by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Hot pretensioner

Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pre-tensioner seat belt mechanism fires during a collision the pre-tensioner becomes hot and can burn you.

Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. If the pre-tensioner must be replaced, contact an authorized Kia dealer.

Seat belt precautions

Infant or small child

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

✻ NOTICE

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets the Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

Larger children

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips as low as possible. Check periodically to insure that the belt fits. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are given the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING - Small children

Do not allow small children to ride in the vehicle without an appropriate child restraint system. If the shoulder belt comes in contact with your child's neck or face your child is too small to ride in the vehicle. In a crash the seat belt will inflict injury to your child's neck, throat and face.

Restraint of pregnant women

Pregnant women should wear lap/shoulder belt assemblies whenever possible according to specific recommendations by their doctors. The lap portion of the belt should be worn AS SECURELY AND LOW AS POSSIBLE.

⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the seat belt above or on the abdomen where the fetus is located. The force of the seat belt during a collision will crush the fetus.

Injured person

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

Do not lie down

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front and rear seats should be in an upright position when the vehicle is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front and rear seats are in a reclined position.

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

⚠ WARNING - Pinched seat belt

Make sure that the webbing and/or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat when returning the rear seatback to its upright position. A caught or pinched webbing/ buckle may become damaged and could fail during a collision or sudden stop.

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

The entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. Additional questions concerning seat belt operation should be directed to an authorized Kia dealer.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

Children Always in the Rear

⚠ WARNING - Restraint Location

Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating airbag and seriously injured.

⚠ WARNING - Hot Child Restraint

A child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day. Be sure to check the seat cover, buckles and latches before placing a child in the restraint system.

Children under age 13 must always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Even with air bags, children can be seriously injured or killed. Children too large for a child restraint must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have child restraint laws which require children to travel in approved child restraint devices. The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of child restraints differs among conutries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child restraint systems must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Stantards of your country.

Child restraint systems are generally designed to be secured in a vehicle seat by lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a LATCH system in the rear seats of the vehicle.

Child restraint system (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rear-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the rear seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.

⚠ WARNING
- Child Restraint Installation

An improperly secured child restraint can increase the risk of serious injury or death in an accident. Always take the following precautions when using a child restraint system:

- **Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Always properly restrain your child in the child restraint.**
- **If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a child seat (as described in the child restraint system manual), the head restraint of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**

✻ NOTICE

After an accident, have a Kia dealer check the child restraint system, seat belts, tether anchors and lower anchors.

Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a CRS for your child, always:

- Make sure the CRS has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country.
- Select a child restraint based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a child restraint that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided instructions with the child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING - Holding Children

Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car's interior. Always use a child restraint system which is appropriate for your child's height and weight.

⚠ WARNING - Unattended Children

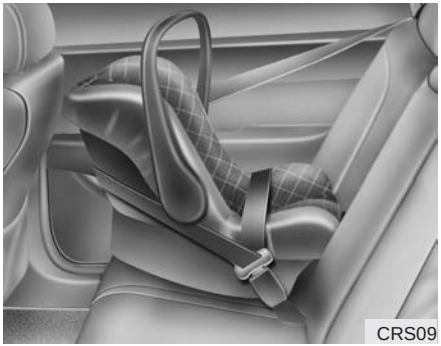
Never leave children unattended in a vehicle. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in injuries to the child in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Seat Belt Use

Do not use one seat belt for two occupants at the same time. This will eliminate any safety benefit provided by the seat belt to the occupants.

Child restraint system types

There are three main types of child restraint systems: rear-facing seats, forward-facing seats, and booster seats. They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.


CRS09

Rear-facing child seats

A rear-facing child seat provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the seat and reduces the stress to the neck and spinal cord.

All children under age one must always ride in a rear-facing infant child restraint.

Convertible and 3-in-1 child seats typically have higher height and weight limits for the rear-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rear-facing for a longer period of time.

Continue to use a rear-facing child seat for as long as your child will fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the child seat manufacturer. It's the best way to keep them safe. Once your child has outgrown the rear-facing child restraint, your child is ready for a forward-facing child restraint with a harness.

OJF035032

Forward-facing child restraints

A forward-facing child seat provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing child seat with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your child restraint's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing child restraint, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the lap of your child.

Keep your child in a booster seat until they are big enough to sit in the seat without a booster and still have the seat belt fit properly. For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie snug across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury.

Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

After selecting a proper child seat for your child, check to make sure it fits properly in your vehicle. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child seat. Note these general steps when installing the seat to your vehicle:

- **Properly secure the child restraint to the vehicle.** All child restraints must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the LATCH system.
- **Make sure the child restraint is firmly secured.** After installing a child restraint to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A child restraint secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.
- **Secure the child in the child restraint.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child restraint according to the manufacturer instructions.

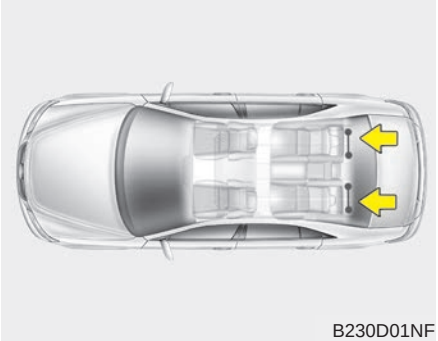
Lower Anchors and Tether for Children (LATCH) System

The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the child restraint easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your child restraint. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint. The LATCH system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the child restraint to the rear seats.

Lower anchors are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments.

To use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you must have a child restraint with LATCH attachments.

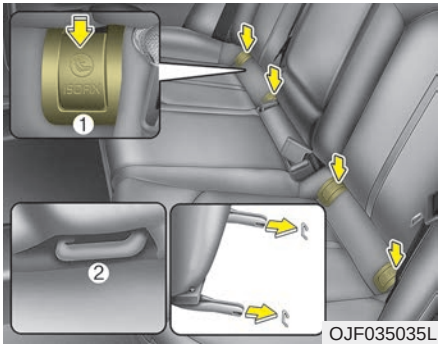
The child seat manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child seat with its attachments for the LATCH lower anchors.



LATCH anchors have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration. There are no LATCH anchors provided for the center rear seating position.

⚠ WARNING - LATCH Lower Anchors

Never attempt to attach a LATCH equipped seat in the center seating position. LATCH lower anchors are only to be used in the left and right rear outboard seating positions. You may damage the anchors or the anchors may fail and break in a collision.



OJF035035L

The lower anchor position indicator symbols are located on the left and right rear seat backs to identify the position of the lower anchors in your vehicle (see arrows in illustration).

The LATCH anchors are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions.

To use the lower anchor, push the upper portion of the lower anchor cover.

❊ (1) : Lower Anchor position indicator
(2) : Lower Anchor

Securing a child restraint with the LATCH anchors system

To install a LATCH-compatible child restraint in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

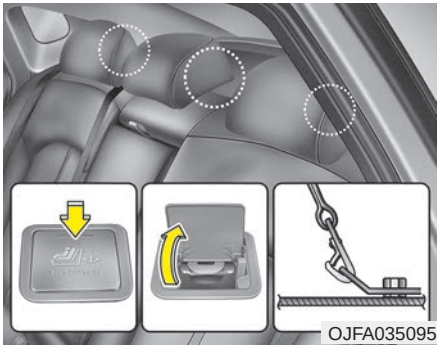
1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the lower anchors.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child restraint and the lower anchors.
3. Place the child restraint on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer.
4. Follow the child restraint instructions for properly adjusting and tightening the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the LATCH system:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your child restraint system.**
- **To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.**
- **NEVER attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Always have the LATCH system inspected by your authorized Kia dealer after an accident. An accident can damage the LATCH system and may not properly secure the child restraint.**

Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system


OJFA035095

First secure the child restraint with the LATCH lower anchors or the seat belt. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether strap be attached, attach and tighten the top tether strap to the top tether strap anchor.

Child restraint hook holders are located on the shelf behind the rear seats.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when installing the tether strap:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your child restraint system.**
- **NEVER attach more than one child restraint to a single tether anchor. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Do not attach the tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor. It may not work properly if attached to something else.**
- **Do not use the tether anchors for adult seat belts or harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**
- **Always fasten the seatbelts behind the child restraint seat when they are not used to secure the child seat. Failure to do so may result in child strangulation.**

OJF035034

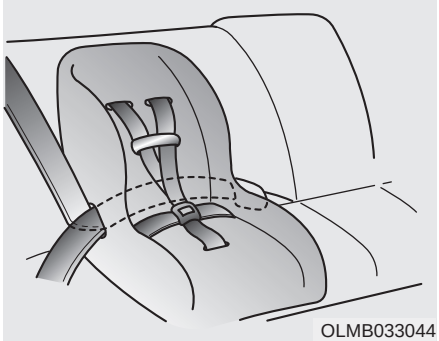
To install the tether anchor:

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the child restraint seatback. Route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, or route the tether strap over the top of the vehicle seatback. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the tether anchor, then tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions to firmly secure the child restraint to the seat.

3. Check that the child restraint is securely attached to the seat by pushing and pulling the seat forward and from side-to-side.

Securing a child restraint with a lap belt or lap/shoulder belt

When not using the LATCH system, all child restraints must be secured to a vehicle rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.



Automatic locking mode

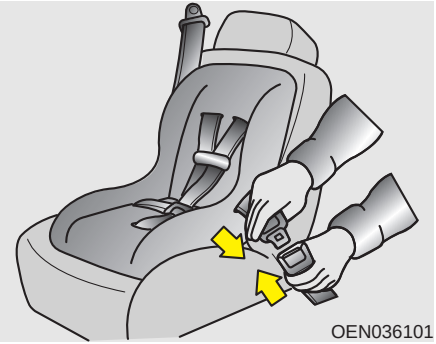
Since all passenger seat belts move freely under normal conditions and only lock under extreme or emergency conditions (emergency locking mode), you must manually pull the seat belt all the way out to shift the retractor to the “Automatic Locking” mode to secure a child restraint.

The “Automatic Locking” mode will help prevent the normal movement of the child in the vehicle from causing the seat belt to loosen and compromise the child restraint system. To secure a child restraint system, use the following procedure.

To install a child restraint system on the rear seats, do the following:

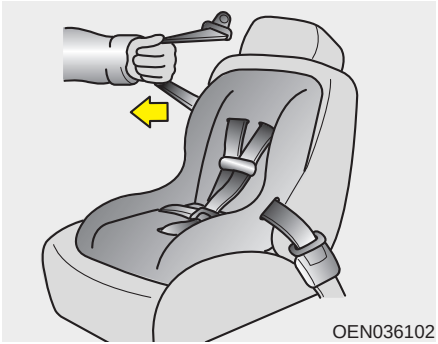
1. Place the child restraint system on a rear seat and route the lap/ shoulder belt around or through the child restraint, following the restraint manufacturer’s instructions.

   Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

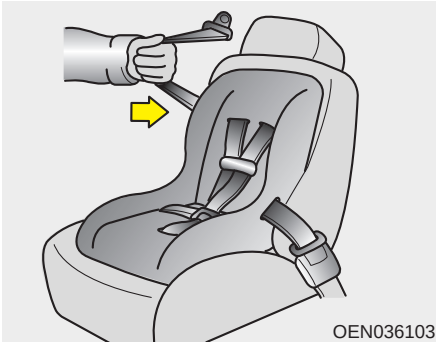


2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.

   Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.



3. Pull the shoulder portion of the seat belt all the way out. When the shoulder portion of the seat belt is fully extended, it will shift the retractor to the "Automatic Locking" (child restraint) mode.



4. Slowly allow the shoulder portion of the seat belt to retract and listen for an audible "clicking" or "ratcheting" sound. This indicates that the retractor is in the "Automatic Locking" mode. If no distinct sound is heard, repeat steps 3 and 4.

5. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the child restraint system while feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
6. Push and pull on the child restraint system to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place. If it is not, release the seat belt and repeat steps 2 through 6.
7. Double check that the retractor is in the "Automatic Locking" mode by attempting to pull more of the seat belt out of the retractor. If you cannot, the retractor is in the "Automatic Locking" mode.

If your CRS manufacturer instructs or recommends you to use a tether anchor with the lap/shoulder belt, refer to the previous pages for more information.

✻ NOTICE

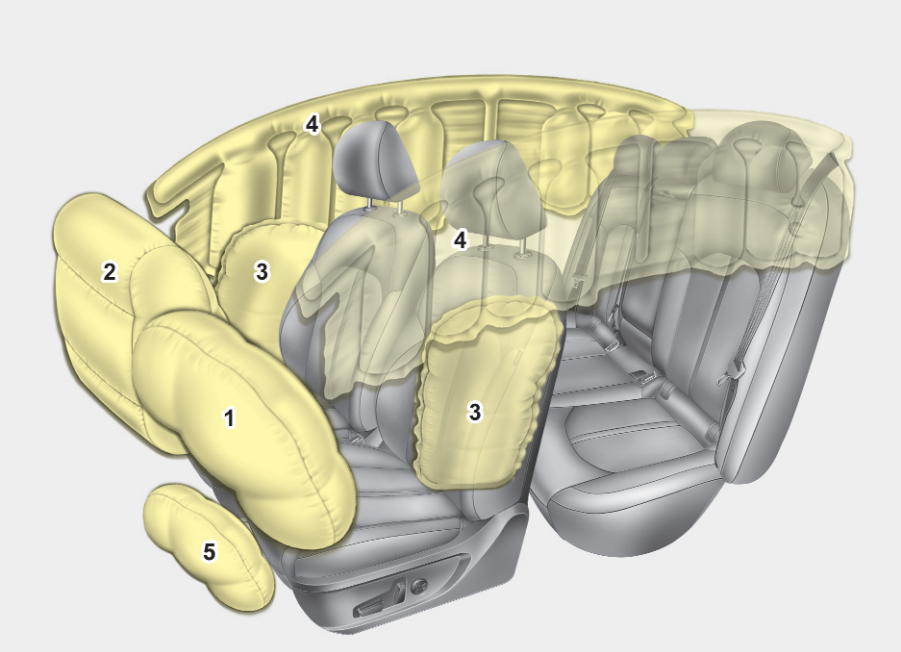
When the seat belt is allowed to retract to its fully stowed position, the retractor will automatically switch from the "Automatic Locking" mode to the emergency lock mode for normal adult usage.

⚠ WARNING - Auto lock mode

Set the retractor to Automatic Lock mode when installing any child restraint system. If the retractor is not in the Automatic Locking mode, the child restraint can move when your vehicle turns or stops suddenly.

To remove the child restraint, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the restraint and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

AIR BAG - ADVANCED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM



The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJF035036

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag
(3) Side air bag
(4) Curtain air bag
(5) Driver's knee air bag

Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimize the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.

How does the air bag system operate?

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- The appropriate air bags inflate instantly in the event of a serious frontal collision or side collision in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact, and, the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident.

  It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, side and/or curtain air bags will inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.
- When a rollover is detected, side and/or curtain air bags will remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts.
- In order to help provide protection, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of the air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of the air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel or passenger air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel or passenger air bag.**

⚠ WARNING - Airbag inflation

Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while still maintaining comfortable control of your vehicle. A distance of at least 250mm (10 inches) from your chest to the steering wheel is recommended. Failure to do so can result in airbag inflation injuries to the driver.

Noise and smoke

When inflated, the air bags make a loud noise and leave smoke and powder in the air inside the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are non-toxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult a doctor if the symptom persists.

⚠ WARNING - Hot components

Do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after airbag inflation. The air bag related parts in the steering wheel, instrument panel and the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. Hot components can result in burn injuries.

Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger's seat.

1JBH3051

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.

In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it could cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

⚠ WARNING - Air bag deployment

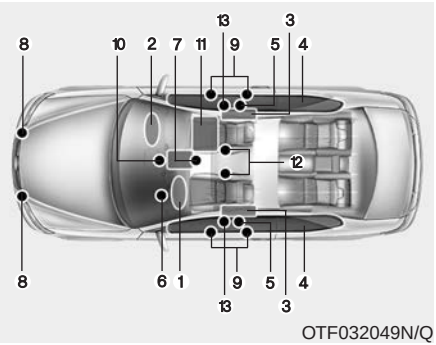
When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of a vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible. Inflation of the side and/or curtain air bags could impact the child.

Air bag warning light

W7-147

The purpose of air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag system, which could include your side and/or curtain air bags used for rollover protection.

SRS components and functions



OTF032049N/Q

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Side air bag modules
4. Curtain air bag modules
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies*
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)/ Rollover sensor
8. Front impact sensors
9. Side impact sensors
10. PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator (Front passenger’s seat only)
11. Occupant detection system (Front passenger’s seat only)
12. Driver’s and front passenger’s seat belt buckle sensors
13. Emergency fastening device (EFD)

*: if equipped

W7-147

If the air bag warning light is illuminated for more than 6 seconds after the ignition is turned on, or of it illuminates during vehicle operation, an SRS component may not be functioning properly and you should have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

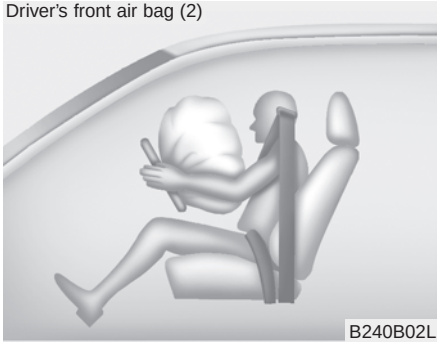
If any of the following conditions occur, this indicates a malfunction in the air bag system. Have an authorized Kia dealer inspect the air bag system as soon as possible.

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

Driver's front air bag (1)

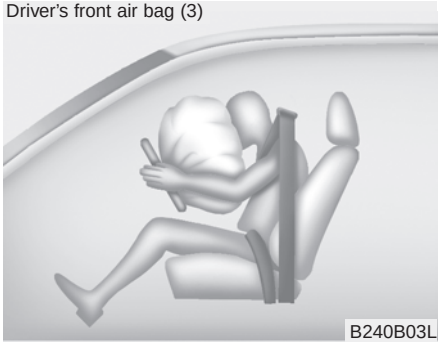
The front air bag modules are located both in the center of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

Driver's front air bag (2)



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)



A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag

⚠ WARNING - Air bag obstructions

Do not install or place any accessories on the steering wheel, instrument panel, or on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles if the air bag deploys.

⚠ WARNING - Flying objects

Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles if the side airbag inflates.

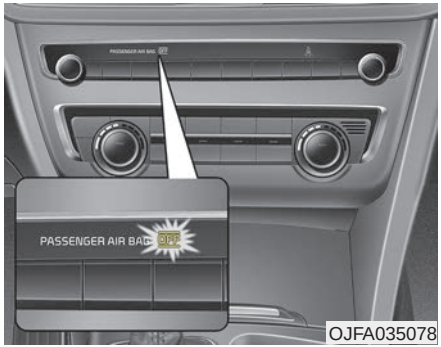
- If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.

- The SRS can function only when the ignition switch is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on while driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, have your vehicle immediately inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition switch. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.

Occupant Detection System (ODS)



OJFA035078

Your vehicle is equipped with an occupant detection system in the front passenger's seat.

The occupant detection system is designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated front passenger and determine if the passenger's front air bag should be enabled (may inflate) or not. Only the front passenger front air bag is controlled by the Occupant Detection System.

Do not put anything in front of the passenger air bag OFF indicator.

Main components of the occupant detection system

- An detection device located within the front passenger seat cushion.
- An electronic system which determines whether the passenger air bag systems should be activated or deactivated.
- An indicator light located on the instrument panel which illuminates the words PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicates the front passenger air bag system is deactivated.
- The instrument panel air bag warning light is interconnected with the occupant detection system.

If the front passenger seat is occupied by a person that the system determines to be of appropriate size, and he/she sits properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor), the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator will turn off and the front passenger's air bag will be able to inflate, if necessary, in frontal crashes.

You will find the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator on the center facia panel. This system detects the conditions 1~4 in the following table and activates or deactivates the front passenger air bag based on these conditions.

Always be sure that you and all vehicle occupants are seated and restrained properly (sitting upright with the seat in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion, with the person’s legs comfortably extended, feet on the floor, and wearing the safety belt properly) for the most effective protection by the air bag and the safety belt.

- The ODS (Occupant Detection System) may not function properly if the passenger takes actions which can defeat the detection system. These include:

(1) Failing to sit in an upright position.
(2) Leaning against the door or center console.
(3) Sitting towards the sides or the front of the seat.
(4) Putting legs on the dashboard or resting them on other locations which reduce the passenger weight on the front seat.
(5) Improperly wearing the safety belt.
(6) Reclining the seat back.

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant detection system

Condition detected by the occupant classification system	Indicator/Warning light		Devices
	"PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator light	SRS warning light	Front passenger air bag
1. Adult*1	Off	Off	Activated
2. Child restraint system with child under 12 months old *2 *3 *4	On	Off	Deactivated
3. Unoccupied	On	Off	Deactivated
4. Malfunction in the system	Off	On	Activated

*1 The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2 Do not allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending upon his/her physique or sitting position.

*3 Never install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*4 The PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator may turn on or off when a child above 12 months to 12 years old (with or without child restraint system) sits in the front passenger seat. This is a normal condition.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install a child restraint seat in the passenger seat when the seat is heavily soaked with any type of liquid.***
- ***Do not alter or remodel the ODS (Occupant Detection System). This may damage the system and prevent its proper function in a collision.***

✻ NOTICE

- Do not use car seat cushions that cover up the surface of the seat and aftermarket manufactured passenger seat heaters.
- After the passenger seat has been removed or installed for repair purposes, check for normal operation of the "PASS AIR BAG "OFF"" and air bag warning lights with a person seated or not seated in the passenger seat.
- After conducting car interior cleaning using steam or detergent, the seat should be dried properly. Afterward, check for normal operation of the "PASS AIR BAG "OFF"" and air bag warning lights.
- Any service related to the passenger seat and the ODS must be done at Kia service center.

⚠ WARNING - ODS system

Riding in an improper position or placing items on or under the passenger seat may interfere with the normal operation of the ODS (Occupant Detection System). It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.

✻ NOTICE

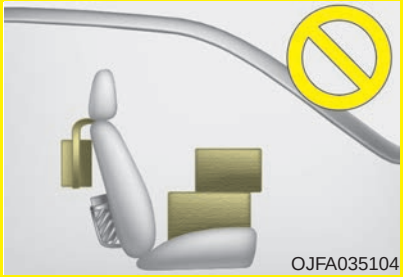
When the "PASS AIR BAG "OFF"" symbol is illuminated, the passenger air bag system will not operate. The passenger air bag system will operate when necessary if the symbol is not illuminated.

✻ NOTICE

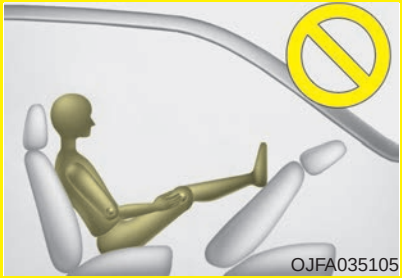
Do not modify or replace the front passenger seat. Don't place anything on or attach anything such as a blanket, front seat cover or after market seat heater to the front passenger seat. This can adversely affect the occupant detection system.

⚠ WARNING

Riding in an improper position adversely affects the Occupant Detection System and may result in the deactivation of the front passenger airbag. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.



- **Do not place a heavy load in the front passenger seatback pocket or on the front passenger seat.**

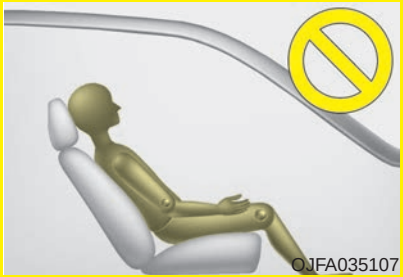


- **Do not place feet on the front passenger seatback.**

- **Never sit with hips shifted towards the front of the seat.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

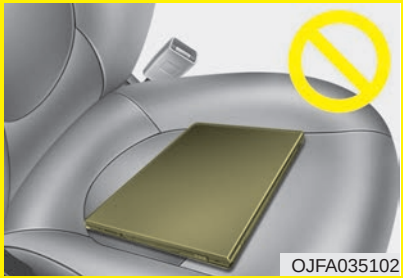


- **Never excessively recline the front passenger seatback.**

- **Never place feet on the dashboard.**

- **Do not use car seat accessories such as thick blankets and cushions which cover up the car seat surface.**

- **Never lean on the door or center console.**
- **Never sit on one side of the front passenger seat.**

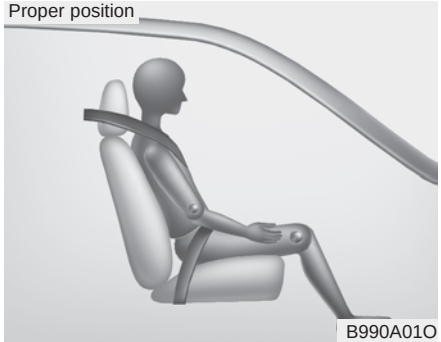


- **Do not place electronic devices such as laptops, DVD player, or conductive materials such as water bottles on the passenger seat.**

Do not use electronic devices such as laptops and satellite radios which use inverter chargers.

⚠ WARNING
- Wet Passenger Seat

Do not spill liquid in the passenger seat. Spilled liquid on the passenger seat may cause the air bag warning light to illuminate or malfunction. If any liquid is spilled, make sure the seat has been completely dried before driving the vehicle.



When an adult is seated in the front passenger seat, if the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator is on, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and ask the passenger to sit properly (sitting upright with the seat back in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor). Restart the engine and have the person remain in that position. This will allow the system to detect the person and to enable the passenger air bag.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator is still on, ask the passenger to move to the rear seat.

⚠ WARNING - "AIR BAG OFF" light

Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator is illuminated, because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a crash. The driver must instruct the passenger to reposition himself in the seat. Failure to properly position yourself may lead to air bag deactivation resulting in air bag non-deployment in a collision. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator remains illuminated after the passenger repositions themselves properly and the car is restarted, it is recommended that passenger move to the rear seat because the passenger's front air bag will not deploy.

✻ NOTICE

The PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or after the engine is started. If the front passenger seat is occupied, the occupant detection sensor will then classify the front passenger after several more seconds.

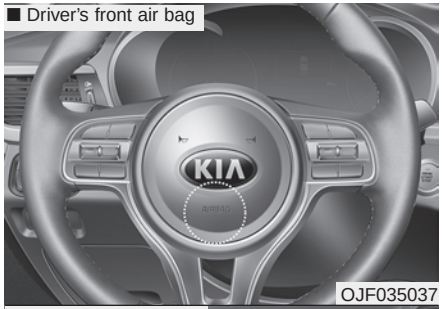
- Even though your vehicle is equipped with the occupant detection system, never install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A deploying air bag can forcefully strike a child resulting in serious injuries or death. Any child age 12 and under should ride in the rear seat. Children too large for child restraints should use the available lap/shoulder belts. No matter what type of crash, children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator is illuminated when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult and he/she sits properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor), have that person sit in the rear seat.

Any child age 12 and under should ride in the rear seat. Children too large for child restraints should use the available lap/shoulder belts. No matter what type of crash, children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat.

If the occupant detection system is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate because the passenger's front air bag is connected with the occupant detection system. If there is a malfunction of the occupant detection system, the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator will not illuminate and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if there is no occupant in the front passenger's seat.

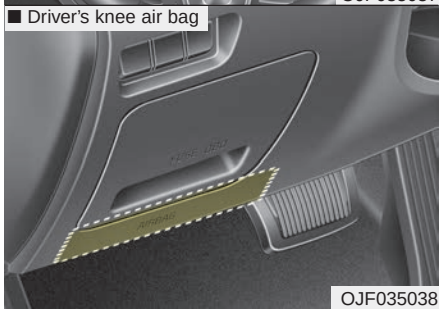
Driver's and passenger's front air bag

■ Driver’s front air bag



OJF035037

■ Driver’s knee air bag



OJF035038

■ Passenger’s front air bag

OJF035039

Your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating position.

The indication of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" located on the air bag pad cover on the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity. The SRS uses sensors to gather information about the driver's and front passenger's seat belt usage and impact severity.

The seat belt buckle sensors determine if the driver and front passenger's seat belts are fastened.

These sensors provide the ability to control the SRS deployment based on whether or not the seat belts are fastened, and how severe the impact is.

The advanced SRS offers the ability to control the air bag inflation with two levels. A first stage level is provided for moderate-severity impacts. A second stage level is provided for more severe impacts.

The passenger’s front air bag is designed to help reduce the injury of children sitting close to the instrument panel in low speed collisions. However, children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat.

According to the impact severity and seat belt usage, the SRSCM (SRS Control Module) controls the air bag inflation. Failure to properly wear seat belts can increase the risk or severity of injury in an accident.

Additionally, your vehicle is equipped with an occupant detection system in the front passenger's seat. The occupant detection system detects the presence of a passenger in the front passenger's seat and will turn off the front passenger's air bag under certain conditions. For more detail, see "Occupant detection system" in this chapter.

Modification to the seat structure can cause the air bag to deploy at a different level than should be provided.

Manufacturers are required by government regulations to provide a contact point concerning modifications to the vehicle for persons with disabilities, which modifications may affect the vehicle’s advanced air bag system. However, Kia does not endorse nor will it support any changes to any part or structure of the vehicle that could affect the advanced air bag system, including the occupant detection system.

⚠ WARNING - Replacement / modifications

The front passenger seat, dashboard or door should not be replaced except by an authorized Kia dealer using original Kia parts designed for this vehicle and model. Any other such replacement or modification could adversely affect the operation of the occupant detection system and your advanced air bags.

Advanced air bags are combined with pre-tensioner seat belts to help provide enhanced occupant protection in frontal crashes. Front air bags are not intended to deploy in collisions in which sufficient protection can be provided by the pre-tensioner seat belt.

✻ NOTICE

Air bags can only be used once – have an authorized Kia dealer replace the air bag immediately after deployment.

Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. However, when frontal deployment threshold is satisfied at side-impact, front air bags may deploy. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.

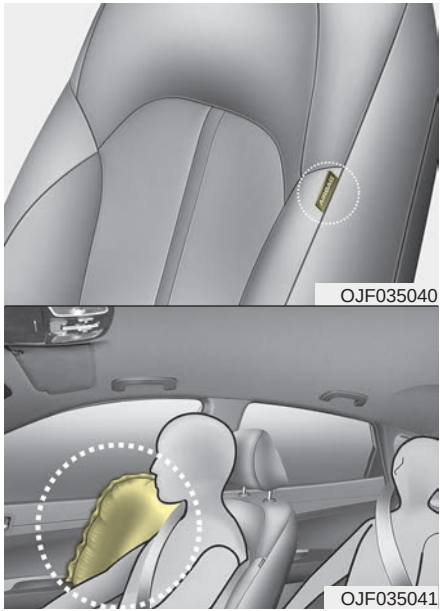
⚠ WARNING - SRS Wiring

Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.

⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects

No objects (such as crash pad cover, cellular phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy. Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.

Side air bag



❊ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

- The side air bags are designed to deploy during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. However, when side deployment threshold is satisfied at front-impact, side air bags may deploy.
- The side air bags may deploy on the side of the impact or on both sides.
- The side and/or curtain air bags on both sides of the vehicle will deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.
- The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

⚠ WARNING - Unexpected deployment

Avoid impact to the side impact airbag sensor when the ignition switch is ON to prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag.

- The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times while the vehicle is in operation.
- For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.

⚠ WARNING - Deployment

Do not install any accessories including seat covers, on the side or near the side air bag as this may affect the deployment of the side air bags.

- If seat or seat cover is damaged, have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer. Inform the dealer that your vehicle is equipped with side air bags and an occupant detection system.

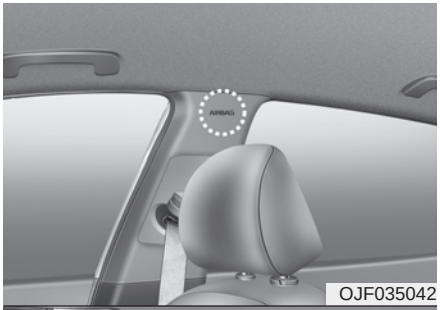
⚠ WARNING - Flying objects

Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles if the side airbag inflates.

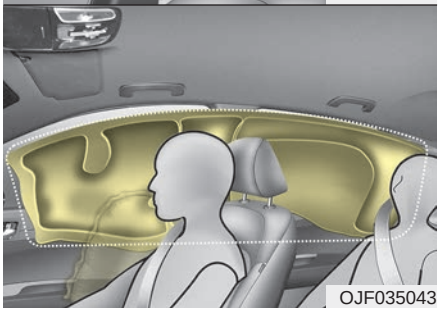
⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects

- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.**
- **Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.**

Curtain air bag



OJF035042



OJF035043

❊ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect occupants in certain side impacts and to help prevent them from ejecting out of the vehicle as a result of a rollover, especially when the seatbelts are also in use.

- The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. However, when side deployment threshold is satisfied at front-impact, side air bags may deploy.
- The curtain air bags may deploy on the side of the impact or on both sides.
- Also, the curtain air bags on both sides of the vehicle will deploy in certain rollover situations.
- The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies against the doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side impact and/or curtain air bags.

✻ NOTICE

Never try to open or repair any components of the side and curtain air bag system. This should only be done by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects

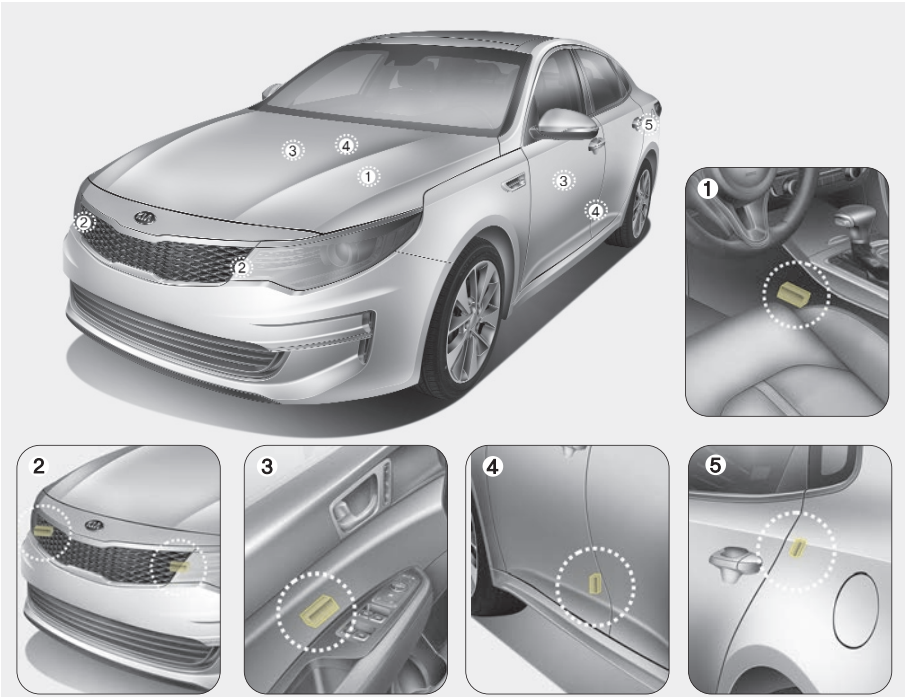
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.**
- **Do not hang hard or breakable objects on the coat hook.**

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.

Air bag collision sensors



OJFA035045/OJF035064/OJFA035047/OJF035048/OJF035049/OJF035084

(1) SRS control module/ Rollover sensor

(2) Front impact sensor

(3) Side impact sensor

(4) Side impact sensor

(5) Side impact sensor

⚠ WARNING - Air bag sensors

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.**

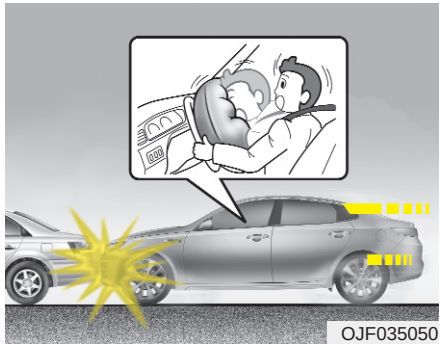
  This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should.**

  Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. Have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.

Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, front end module, body or front doors where side collision sensors are installed. Have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.

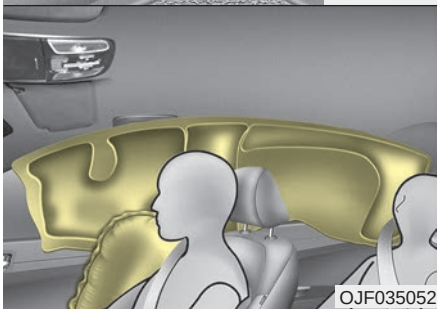
Installing bumper guards (or side step or running board) or replacing a bumper (or front door module) with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicle's collision and air bag deployment performance.

Air bag inflation conditions



Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.



❊ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side and/or curtain air bags

Side and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

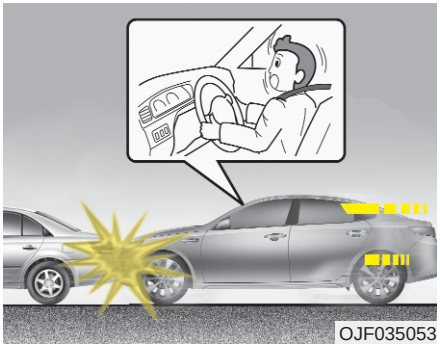
Also, the side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient frontal force in another type of impact. Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions. They may inflate in other types of collisions where a side force is detected by the sensors. Side air bag and/or curtain air bags may also inflate where rollover sensors indicate the possibility of a rollover occurring (even if none actually occurs) or in other situations, including when the vehicle is tilted while being towed.

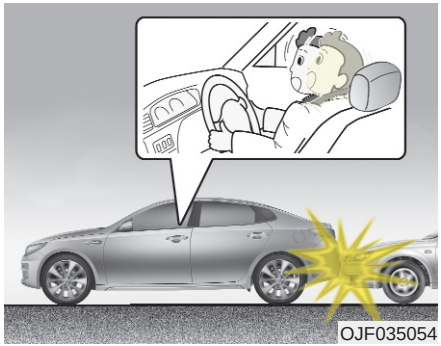
Even where side and/or curtain air bags would not provide impact protection in a rollover, however, they will deploy to prevent ejection of occupants, especially those who are restrained with seat belts.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

Air bag non-inflation conditions


OJF035053

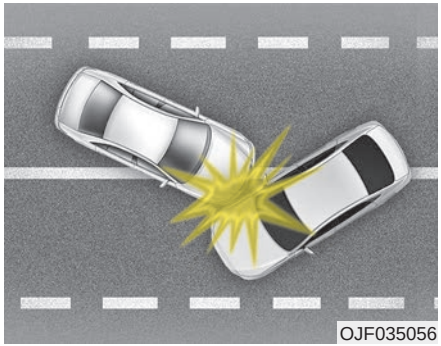
- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.


OJF035054

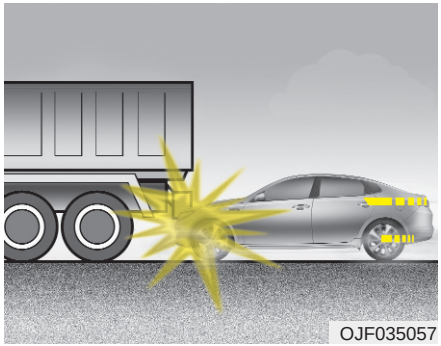
- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.

OJFA035055

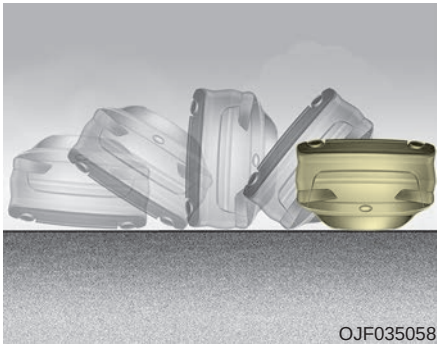
- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.



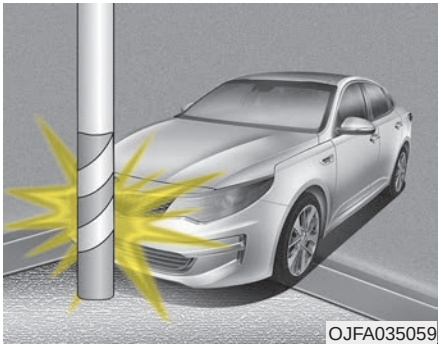
- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.



- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “under-ride” collisions.



- Front air bags may not inflate in all rollover accidents where the SRSCM indicates that the front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.



- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, have your vehicle immediately inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails must be performed by an authorized Kia dealer. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.

If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorized Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Tampering with SRS

Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in the accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.

⚠ WARNING - Towing Vehicle

Always have the ignition off when your vehicle is being towed. The side air bags may inflate if the vehicle is tilted such as when being towed because of the rollover sensors in the vehicle.

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

Air bag warning label

Air bag warning labels, some required by the Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (CMVSS), are attached to the sunvisor to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

Features of your vehicle

Folding key 4-5
- Record your key number 4-5
- Key operations 4-5
- Transmitter precautions 4-7
- Battery replacement 4-8
- Immobilizer system 4-9

Smart key 4-12
- Record your key number 4-12
- Smart key function 4-12
- Loss of the smart key 4-14
- Smart key precautions 4-15
- Battery replacement 4-15
- Smart key immobilizer system 4-16

Theft-alarm system 4-18
- Armed stage 4-18
- Theft-alarm stage 4-19
- Disarmed stage 4-19

Door locks 4-21
- Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 4-21
- Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 4-22
- Impact sensing door unlock system 4-24
- Child-protector rear door lock 4-24

Trunk 4-25
- Opening the trunk 4-25
- Closing the trunk 4-26
- Emergency trunk safety release 4-26

Smart trunk 4-27

Windows 4-31
- Power windows 4-32

Hood 4-35
- Opening the hood 4-35
- Closing the hood 4-36

Fuel filler lid 4-37
- Opening the fuel filler lid 4-37
- Closing the fuel filler lid 4-37
- Emergency fuel filler lid release 4-40

Panoramic sunroof 4-41
- Sunroof open warning 4-42
- Sunshade 4-43
- Sliding the sunroof 4-43
- Tilting the sunroof 4-45
- Closing the sunroof 4-45
- Resetting the sunroof 4-46

Steering wheel 4-47
• Electric power steering (EPS) 4-47
• Tilt and telescopic steering 4-48
• Heated steering wheel 4-49
• Horn 4-50
Mirrors 4-51
• Inside rearview mirror 4-51
• Outside rearview mirror 4-53
Instrument cluster 4-56
• Instrument Cluster Control 4-57
• LCD Display Control 4-57
• Gauges 4-58
• Transaxle Shift Indicator 4-61
• Dual clutch transmission shift indicator 4-62
LCD display 4-63
• LCD Modes 4-63
• Service Mode 4-64
• User Settings Mode 4-66
Trip modes (Trip computer) 4-72
• Trip Modes 4-72
• Fuel Economy 4-72
• Trip A/B 4-74
• Digital speedometer 4-75
• One time driving information mode 4-75
• Turn By Turn Mode 4-76
• ASCC/LDWS Mode 4-76
• A/V Mode 4-76
• Warning Messages 4-77
Warning and indicator lights 4-85
• Warning lights 4-85
• Indicator Lights 4-92
Rear parking assist system 4-97
• Operation of the rear parking assist system 4-97
• Non-operational conditions of rear parking assist system 4-98
• Rear parking assist system precautions 4-99
• Self-diagnosis 4-100
Rearview camera 4-101
360° camera monitoring system 4-102

Lighting 4-103
• Battery saver function. 4-103
• Daytime running light. 4-103
• Lighting control 4-103
• High beam operation. 4-105
• High Beam Assist. 4-106
• Turn signals and lane change signals 4-108
• Check headlight 4-108
• Headlight leveling device 4-109
• AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) 4-109
Wipers and washers 4-110
• Windshield wipers 4-110
• Front windshield washers 4-112
Interior lights 4-113
• Automatic turn off function 4-113
• Room lamp 4-113
• Map lamp 4-114
• Trunk room lamp. 4-115
• Vanity mirror lamp 4-115
• Glove box lamp 4-115
Welcome system 4-116
• Headlight (Headlamp) escort function 4-116
• Interior light 4-116
• Pocket lamp 4-116
Defroster 4-117
• Rear window defroster 4-117
Manual climate control system 4-118
• Heating and air conditioning 4-119
• System operation 4-124
• Climate control air filter. 4-126
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant. 4-126
Automatic climate control system 4-128
• Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-129
• Manual heating and air conditioning 4-130
• System operation 4-136
• Climate control air filter. 4-138
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant. 4-138
Windshield defrosting and defogging. 4-140
• Manual climate control system 4-140
• Automatic climate control system 4-141
• Defogging logic. 4-142
Storage compartments 4-145
• Center console storage 4-145
• Glove box 4-145
• Sunglass holder 4-146

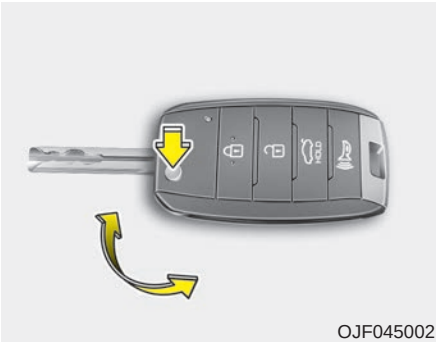
Interior features 4-147
- Cup holder 4-147
- Bottle holder. 4-147
- Seat warmer 4-148
- Air ventilation seat 4-149
- Sunvisor 4-149
- Power outlet 4-150
- USB charger. 4-151
- Wireless smart phone charging system 4-152
- Coat hook 4-155
- Floor mat anchor (s) 4-155
- Side curtain 4-156

FOLDING KEY

Record your key number

The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, this number will enable an authorized Kia dealer to duplicate the keys easily. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe place.(not in the vehicle)

Key operations



- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.
- To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically. To fold the key, fold the key manually while pressing the release button.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

⚠ WARNING - Aftermarket key

Use only Kia original parts for the ignition key in your vehicle. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (smart key)

Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with a manual ignition key or a smart key is dangerous. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch or press the start button. The key would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or death.

Door Lock (1)

1. Close all doors, engine hood and trunk.
2. Press the lock button(1).
3. All doors and trunk will lock. The hazard warning lights will blink once.
4. If the lock button is pressed once more within 4 seconds, the hazard warning lights will blink and the horn will sound once.
5. Make sure that doors are locked by checking the door lock button inside or pulling the outside door handle.

Door Unlock (2)

1. Press the unlock button(2).
2. The driver's door will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times.
3. Press the unlock button(2) twice within 4 seconds and all doors and trunk will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times.

✻ NOTICE

You can activate or deactivate the Two Press Unlock function. Refer to "User settings" in this chapter.

Trunk open (3)

The trunk is opened if the button is pressed for more than 1 second.

Once the trunk is opened and then closed, the trunk will lock automatically.

Panic (4)

The horn sounds and hazard warning lights flash for about 27 seconds if this button is pressed for more than 0.5 second. To stop the horn and lights, press any button on the transmitter.

Transmitter precautions

- The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:
  - The ignition key is in the ignition switch.
  - You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).
  - The battery in the transmitter is weak.
  - Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
  - The weather is extremely cold.
  - The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio substation or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- If the transmitter is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phones normal operational signals. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your mobile phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and always try to maintain an adequate distance between the two devices.

⚠ **CAUTION - Transmitter**

Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid as, it can become damaged and not function properly.

✻ NOTICE

If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

Battery replacement

OYDDCO2005

The transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter center cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery is positioned correctly.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For replacement transmitters, see an authorized Kia dealer for transmitter reprogramming.

- The transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use; however, it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your transmitter or replace the battery, contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.
- To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.
- An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and may cause harm to human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

⚠ CAUTION - Transmitter damage

Do not drop, wet or expose the keyless entry system transmitter to heat or sunlight.

⚠ IC WARNING

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Immobilizer system

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobilizer system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON or whenever the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, it checks and verifies if the ignition key is valid.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

To activate the immobilizer system:

Turn the ignition key or change the engine start/stop button from the ON position to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobilizer system:

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position or change the engine start/stop button to the ON position.

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your Immobilizer password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise, the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separate in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch.

Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.

✻ NOTICE

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, contact an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION - Immobilizer damage

Do not expose your immobilizer system to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. This may damage your immobilizer.

⚠ CAUTION - Adjusting alarm system

Do not change, alter or adjust the theft alarm system in your vehicle. Improper installation of the alarm system could damage the vehicle or cause the system to malfunction.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

✻ NOTICE

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

Limp home (override) procedure

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON position, if the immobilizer indicator ( ) goes off after blinking 5 times, your transponder equipped in the ignition key is out of order. You cannot start the engine without the limp home procedure. To start the engine, you have to input your password by using the ignition switch. Your password is only available from an authorized Kia dealership. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.

The following procedure is how to input your password of “2345” as an example.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position. The immobilizer indicator ( ) will blink 5 times and go off indicating the beginning of the limp home procedure.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the ACC position.
3. To enter the first digit (in this example “2”), turn the ignition switch to the ON and ACC position twice. Perform the same procedure for the next digits between 3 seconds and 10 seconds (for example, for “3”, turn the ignition ON and ACC 3 times).
4. If all of the digits have been input successfully, you have to start the engine within 30 seconds. If you attempt to start the engine after 30 seconds, the engine will not start and you will have to input your password again.

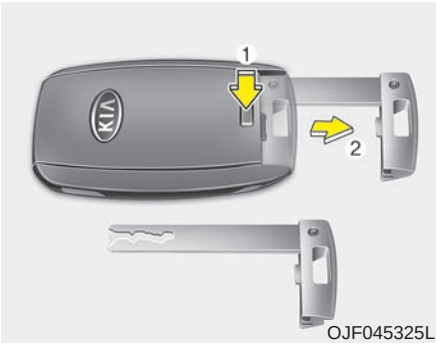
After performing the limp home procedure, you have to see an authorized Kia dealer immediately to inspect and repair your ignition key or immobilizer system.

SMART KEY

Record your key number

The key code number is stamped on the bar code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, this number will enable an authorized Kia dealer to duplicate the keys easily. Remove the bar code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

Smart key function



To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button(1) and remove the mechanical key (2).

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door (and trunk) and start the engine.

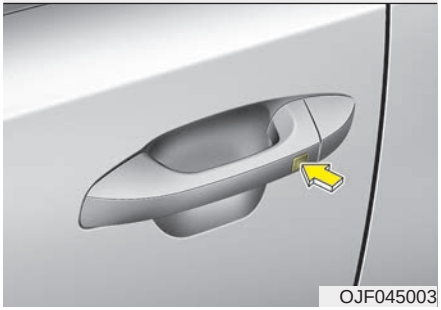
Refer to the following for more details.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (smart key)

Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with a manual ignition key or a smart key is dangerous. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch or press the start button. The key would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or death.

Locking

OYDDCO2004



OJF045003

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and trunk) closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors (and trunk).

The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors (and trunk) are locked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in) from the outside door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the outside door handle.

Even though you press the button, the doors will not lock and the chime sounds if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the trunk is opened.

Unlocking

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and trunk) closed and locked, unlocks all the doors (and trunk). The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors (and trunk) are unlocked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in) from the outside door handle.

When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7~1 m (28 ~ 40 in) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open a door without possession of the smart key.

Trunk unlocking

If you are within 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in) from the outside trunk handle, with your smart key in possession, the trunk will unlock and open when you press the trunk handle switch.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the trunk is unlocked.

Panic

1. Press the panic button (4) for more than 1 second.
2. The horn sounds and hazard warning light flash for about 27 seconds.

✻ NOTICE

To stop the horn and lights, press any button on the smart key.

Start-up

You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to the “Engine start/stop button” in chapter 6.

Loss of the smart key

A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle.

If you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. You should immediately take the vehicle and remaining key to your authorized Kia dealer (tow the vehicle, if necessary) to protect it from potential theft.

Smart key precautions

- The smart key will not work if any of the following occur:
  - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.
  - The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a cellular phone.
  - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- When the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key and contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- If the smart key is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the smart key could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making a call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.

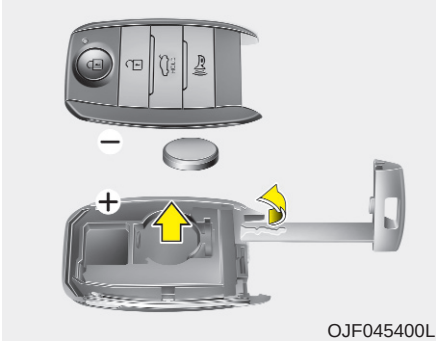
⚠ CAUTION - Transmitter

Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid, as it can become damaged and not function properly.

✻ NOTICE

If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

Battery replacement



A smart key battery should last for several years, but if the smart key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one. If you are unsure how to use your smart key or replace the battery, contact an authorized Kia dealer.

1. Remove the mechanical key.
2. Pry open the rear cover.
3. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery is in the correct position.

4. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

- The smart key is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- Using the wrong battery can cause the smart key to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.
- To avoid damaging the smart key, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.
- An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

⚠ CAUTION - Smart key damage

Do not drop, get wet or expose the smart key to heat or sunlight, or it will be damaged.

⚠ IC WARNING

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Smart key immobilizer system

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the smart key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobilizer system, whenever you turn the engine start/stop button to the ON position by pressing the button while carrying the smart key, it verifies if the smart key is valid. If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobilizer system:

Turn the engine start/stop button to the ON position by pressing the button while carrying the smart key.

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle.

To activate the immobilizer system:

Turn the engine start/stop button to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid smart key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

✻ NOTICE

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separate in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

✻ NOTICE

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, contact an authorized Kia dealer.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

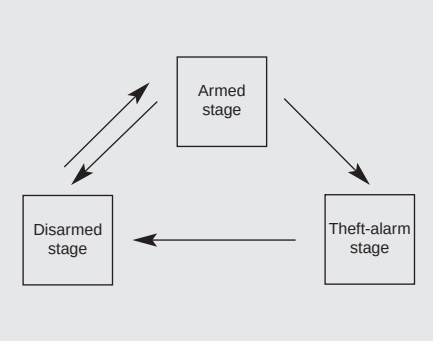
(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

✻ NOTICE

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM



This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorized entry into the vehicle. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

Armed stage

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch and exit the vehicle.
2. Make sure that all doors (and trunk) and engine hood are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors using the transmitter of the keyless entry system (or smart key) or ignition key.

After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink (for smart key, the chime also sounds) once to indicate that the system is armed.

If any door (or trunk) or engine hood remains open, the hazard warning lights and the chime will not operate and the theft-alarm will not arm. If all doors and trunk and engine hood are closed after the lock button is pressed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

The system can also be armed by locking the doors with the key from the front doors; however, the hazard warning lights will not blink using this method.

✻ NOTICE

The theft-alarm system can be deactivated by an authorized Kia dealer. If you want this feature, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed while a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door (or trunk) or engine hood is opened within 30 seconds after the system enters the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent an unnecessary alarm.

Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs while the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using the ignition key or transmitter (or smart key).
- The trunk is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine hood is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for approximately 27 seconds, and repeat the horn 3 times unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the ignition key or transmitter (or smart key).

Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when

- The doors (and trunk) are unlocked with the transmitter (or smart key) or the ignition key.

After depressing the unlock button, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound twice (in smart key) to indicate that the system is disarmed.

After depressing the unlock button, if any door (or trunk) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

✻ NOTICE

- **Avoid trying to start the engine while the alarm is activated. The vehicle starting motor is disabled during the theft-alarm stage.**
  - **If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch, turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for 30 seconds. Then, the system will be disarmed.**
  - **If the system is not disarmed with the smart key, press the engine start/stop button with the smart key. The side with the lock button should contact the engine start/stop button directly.**
- **If you lose your keys, consult your authorized Kia dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION - Adjusting alarm system

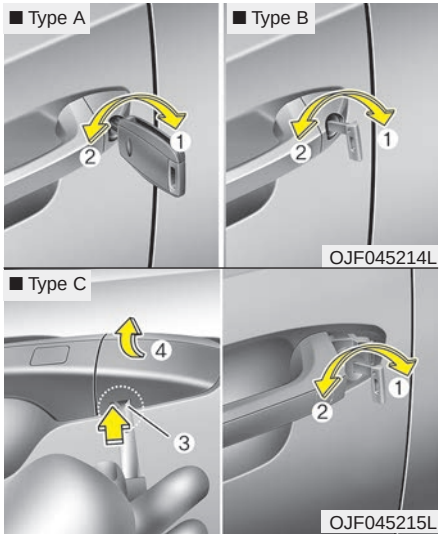
Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction and should only be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

DOOR LOCKS

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle



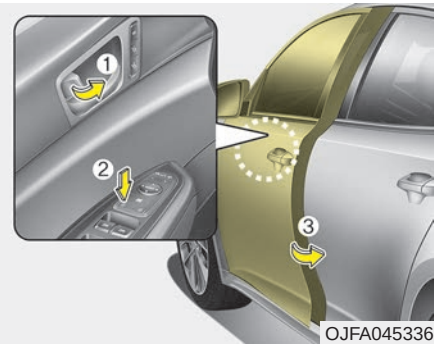
To remove the cover (For Type C):

1. Pull out the door handle (4).
2. Press the lever (3) located inside the bottom part of the cover with a key or flat-head screwdriver.
3. Push out the cover while pressing the lever.

- Turn the key clockwise to lock (1) and counterclockwise to unlock (2).
- If you lock the driver's door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock automatically.
- From the driver's door, turn the key to the right once to unlock the door and once more within 4 seconds to unlock all doors.
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter.
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the doors are closed securely.

✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**



OJFA045336

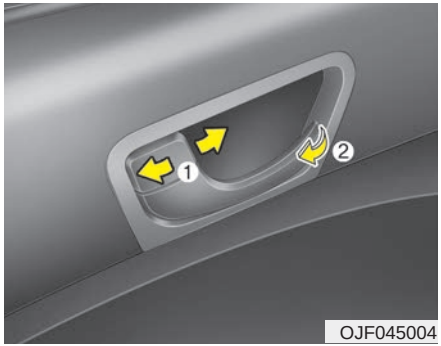
- To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (1) or central door lock switch (2) to the “Lock” position when the ignition switch is in the OFF position and close the door (3).
- If you lock the door with the central door lock switch (2), all vehicle doors will lock automatically.

✻ NOTICE

Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows, and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door lock button



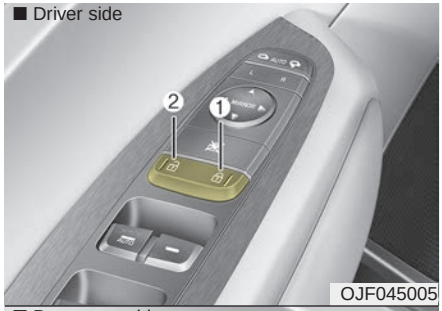
OJF045004

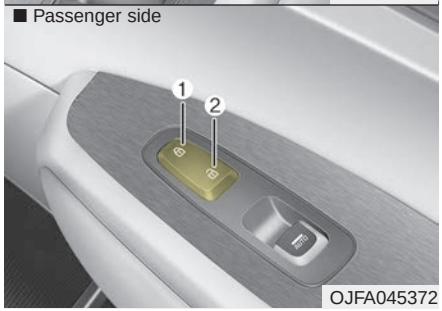
- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark on the button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (2) outward.
- If the inner door handle of the driver’s (or front passenger’s) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open.
- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and an door is open.

If a power door lock ever fails to function while you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) while simultaneously pulling on the door handle.
- Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.
- Lower a front window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.

With central door lock switch





Operate by pressing the central door lock switch.

- When pressing the right portion(1) for driver side or the upper portion(1) for passenger side of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.
- When pressing the left portion(2) for driver side or the lower portion(2) for passenger side of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- If the key is in the ignition switch (or if the smart key is in the vehicle) and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the right portion(1) for driver side or upper portion(1) for passenger side of the central door lock switch is pressed.

⚠ WARNING - Doors

The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door.

⚠ WARNING - Unattended children/animals

Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle.

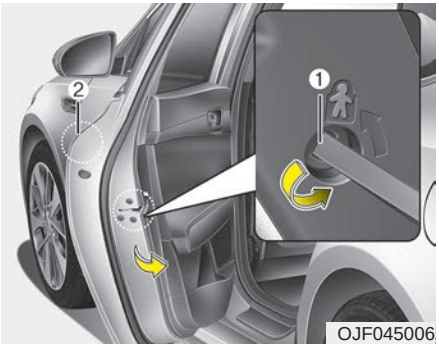
Impact sensing door unlock system

In the event of air bag deployment resulting from a vehicle impact, all doors will automatically unlock.

✻ NOTICE

You can select some auto door lock/unlock features in "User Settings" For more information, refer to "User Settings" in this chapter.

Child-protector rear door lock



The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

1. Open the rear door.
2. Turn the child safety lock (1) located on the rear edge of the door to the lock ( ) position. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open even when the inner door handle is pulled.
3. Close the rear door.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle (2).

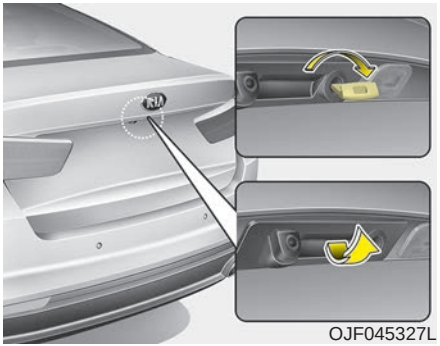
Even though the doors may be unlocked, the rear door will not open by pulling the inner door handle until the rear door child safety lock is unlocked.

⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks

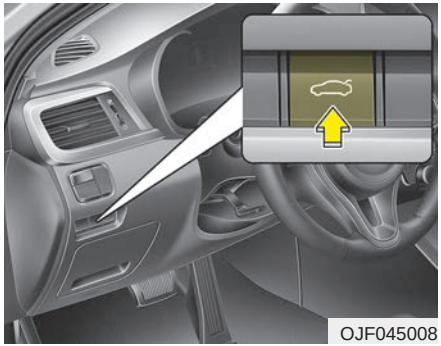
Use the rear door safety locks whenever children are in the vehicle. If a child accidently opens the rear doors while the vehicle is moving, they may fall out.

TRUNK

Opening the trunk


OJF045327L

1. Make sure the shift lever is in P (Park, for automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission) or first gear and set the parking brake.
2. Then do one of the following :
   - Press the Remote key or Smart Key Trunk Unlock button for more than one second.
   - Press the button on the trunk itself with the Smart Key in your possession.
   - Use the mechanical key.


OJF045008

- To open the trunk from inside the vehicle, push the trunk lid release button.

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, trunk lock and trunk mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

⚠ WARNING

The trunk swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the trunk.

⚠ CAUTION

Make certain that you close the trunk before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the trunk lift cylinders and attached hardware if the trunk is not closed prior to driving.

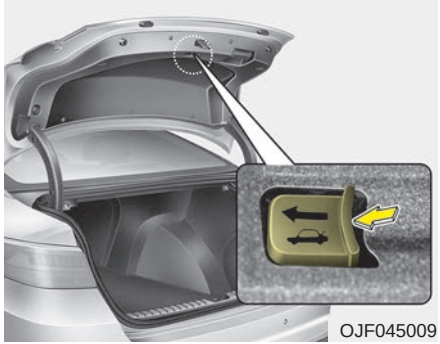
Closing the trunk

To close, lower the trunk lid, then press down on it until it locks. To be sure the trunk lid is securely fastened, always check by trying to pull it up again.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust Fumes

The trunk lid should always be kept completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases may enter the car and serious illness or death may result.

Emergency trunk safety release

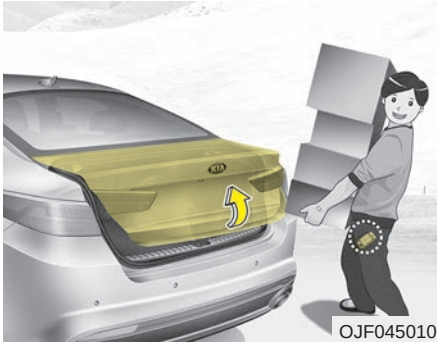

OJF045009

Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency trunk release lever located inside the trunk. If someone is inadvertently locked in the trunk, moving the handle in the direction of the arrow will release the trunk latch mechanism and open the trunk.

⚠ WARNING

- **No one should be allowed to occupy the trunk at any time. The trunk is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially while the vehicle is in motion.**

SMART TRUNK (IF EQUIPPED)



On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the trunk can be opened with no-touch activation using the Smart Trunk system.

How to use the Smart Trunk

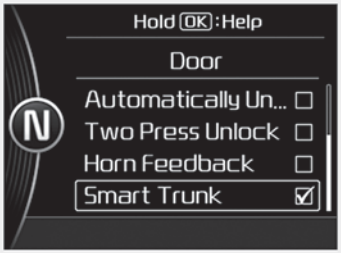
The trunk can be opened with no-touch activation satisfying all the conditions below.

- After 15 seconds when all doors are closed and locked
- Positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds.

✻ NOTICE

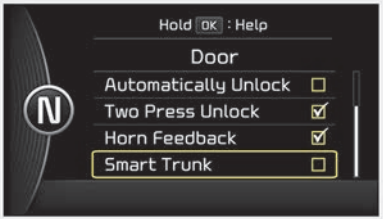
- **The Smart Trunk does not operate when:**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and 1.5 m (60 inches) from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light)**
  - **A door is not locked or closed.**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**

■ Normal



OJF045282L

■ Supervision

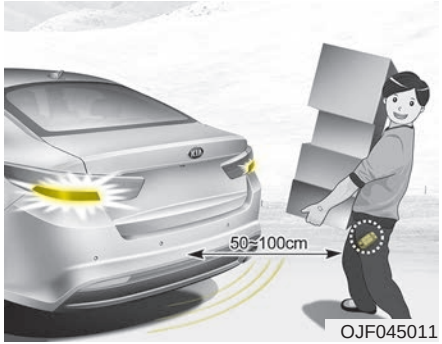


OJF045283L

1. Setting

To activate the Smart Trunk, go to User Settings Mode and select Smart Trunk on the LCD display.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.



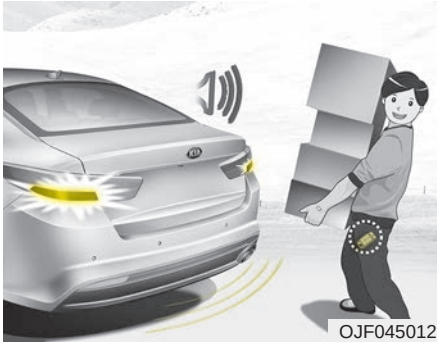
OJF045011

2. Detect and Alert

If you are positioned in the detecting area (50 ~100 cm (20 ~ 40 inches) behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you the smart key has been detected and the trunk will open.

✻ NOTICE

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the trunk to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The trunk will stay closed.


OJF045012

3. Automatic opening

The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound 2 times and then the trunk will slowly open.

Make certain that you close the trunk before driving your vehicle.

Make sure there are no people or objects around the trunk before opening or closing the trunk.

Make sure to deactivate the Smart trunk function when washing your vehicle.

Otherwise, the trunk may open inadvertently.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure objects in the rear cargo area do not come out when opening the trunk on the slope way. It may cause serious injury.

✻ NOTICE

The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the Smart Trunk while playing around the rear area of the vehicle.

How to deactivate the Smart Trunk function using the smart key

OYDDCO2004

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Trunk open
4. Panic

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the Smart Trunk function for emergency situations.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the door unlock button (2), the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart trunk function will be activated again.**
- **If you press the trunk open button (3) for more than 1 second, the trunk opens.**
- **If you press the door lock button (1) or trunk open button (3) when the Smart Trunk function is not in the Detect and Alert stage, the smart trunk function will not be deactivated.**
- **In case you have deactivated the Smart Trunk function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart trunk function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.**

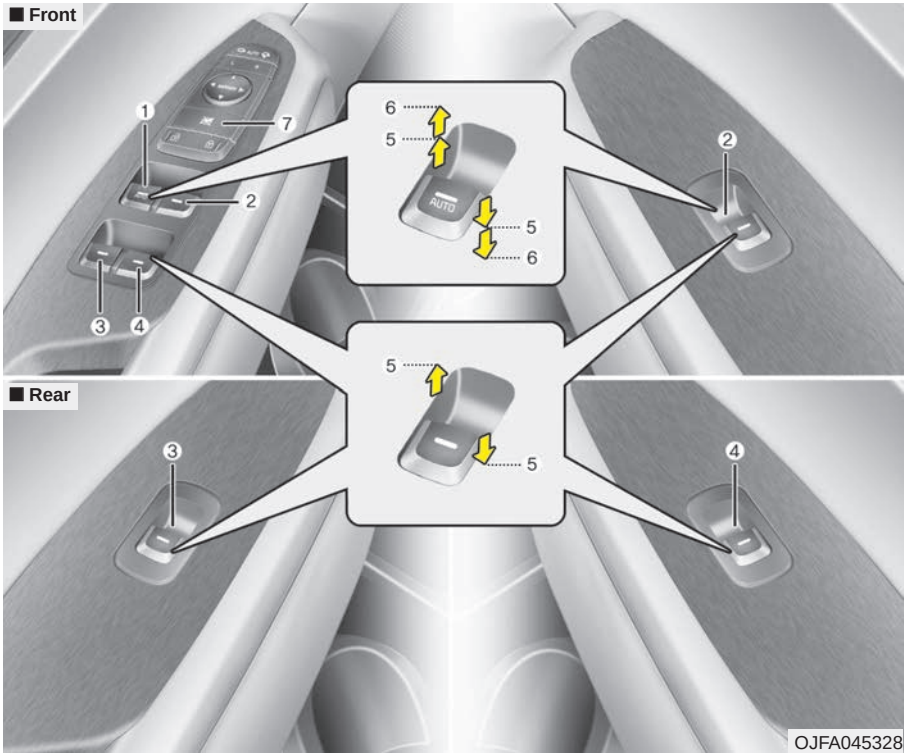
Detecting area

- The Smart Trunk operates with a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 50 ~ 100 cm (20 ~ 40 inches) from the trunk.
- The alert stops at once if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the Detect and Alert stage.

✻ NOTICE

- **The Smart Trunk function will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a cellular phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **The detecting range may decrease or increase when :**
  - **One side of the tire is raised to replace a tire or to inspect the vehicle.**
  - **The vehicle is slantingly parked on a slope or unpaved road, etc.**

WINDOWS



(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing*
(6) Automatic power window up/down* (Driver's and Passenger's window)
(7) Power window lock button

* if equipped

In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

Power windows

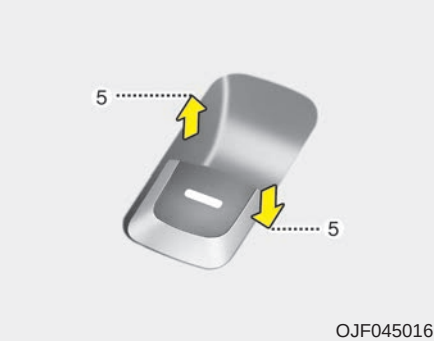
The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate.

Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock button which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK (or OFF) position. If the front doors are opened; however, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

✻ NOTICE

While driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open) position, your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately 2.5 cm. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.

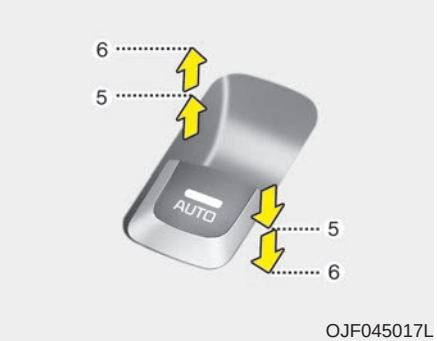
Window opening and closing



The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle.

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).

Auto up/down window (if equipped)

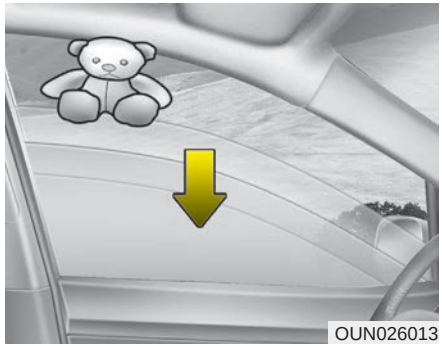


OJF045017L

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or raises the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the driver's and passenger's window and continue pulling up the driver's power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.


OUN026013

Automatic reversal (for Auto up/down window)

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm. (11.8 in) to allow the object to be cleared.

The distance may vary based on the size or position of the window. If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.).

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

The automatic reverse feature for the driver's window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

⚠ WARNING

Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.

Power window lock button

OJF045018

- The driver can disable the power window switches on the passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button located on the driver's door to the LOCK position (pressed).

- **When the power window lock button is pressed :**
  - The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
  - The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
  - The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.

⚠ CAUTION - Opening /closing Window

To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.

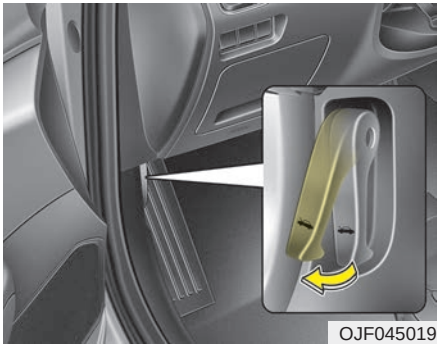
Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.

⚠ WARNING - Power windows

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the power window lock button (on the driver's door) in the LOCK (pressed) position.

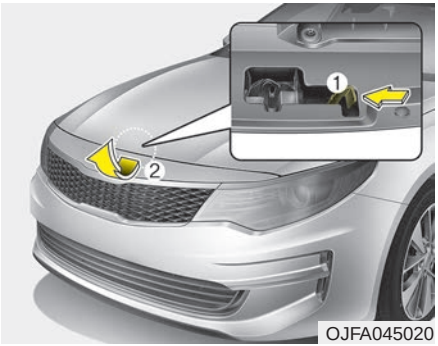
HOOD

Opening the hood


OJF045019

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.

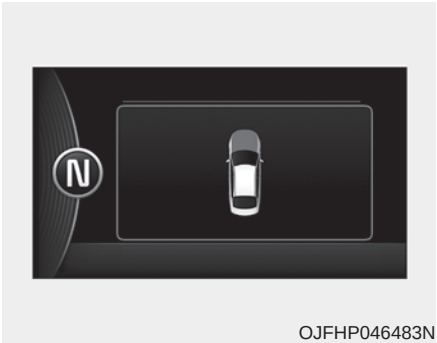
Open the hood after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P (Park) position and setting the parking brake.



OJFA045020

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, push the secondary latch (1) upward inside of the hood center and lift the hood (2).
3. Raise the hood. It will completely rise by itself after it has been raised about halfway.

Hood open warning


OJFHP046483N

The hood warning message will appear on the LCD display when hood is open.

The warning chime will operate when the vehicle is being driven at or above 3 km/h (2 mph) with the hood open.

Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
   - All filler caps in the engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Lower the hood halfway and push down to securely lock in place.

⚠ CAUTION - Hood obstruction

Before closing the hood, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the hood opening. Closing the hood with an obstruction present in the hood opening may result in property damage.

⚠ WARNING - Fire risk

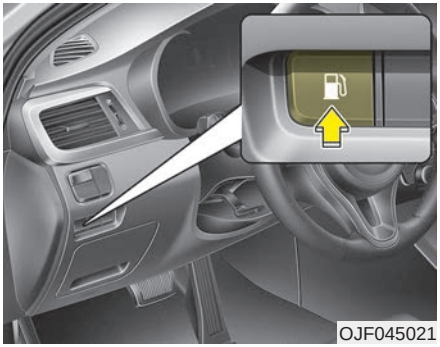
Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.

⚠ WARNING - Unsecured engine hood

Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the hood could fly open while the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.

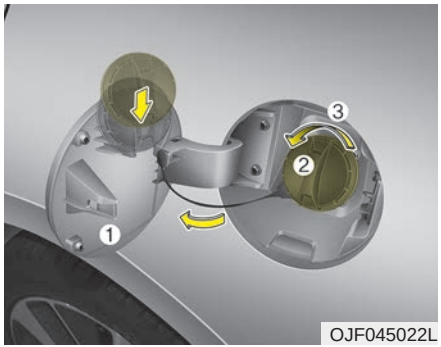
FUEL FILLER LID

Opening the fuel filler lid


OJF045021

The fuel filler lid must be opened from inside the vehicle by pressing the fuel filler lid opener button.

If the fuel filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.



OJF045022L

1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler lid, push the fuel filler lid opener button.
3. Pull open the fuel filler lid (1).
4. To remove the cap, turn the fuel filler cap (2) counterclockwise(3).
5. Refuel as needed.

Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks” once. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler lid and push it in lightly making sure that it is securely closed.

✻ NOTICE

There may be an intermittent noise near the refueling hole while the engine is idling if the fuel cap is not closed securely. This occurs normally with the OBD system.

✻ NOTICE

When refueling on unlevel ground, the fuel gauge may not point to the F position.
It is not a malfunction. If you move your vehicle to a level ground, the fuel gauge will move to the full position.

⚠ WARNING - Refueling

Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap. If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and subject you to the risk of fire and burns.

Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

✻ NOTICE

Tighten the cap until it clicks once, otherwise the fuel cap open warning indicator light will illuminate.

⚠ WARNING - Fire/explosion risk

Read and follow all warnings posted at the gas station facility. Failure to follow all warnings may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death due to fire or explosion.

⚠ WARNING - Static electricity

- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.**
- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refueling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapors resulting in rapid burning. If you must reenter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other gasoline source.**

⚠ WARNING - Portable fuel container

When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refueling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete. Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store gasoline.

⚠ WARNING - Cell phone fires

Do not use cellular phones while refueling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cellular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapors causing

⚠ WARNING - Smoking

DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle while at a gas station especially during refueling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.

⚠ WARNING - Refueling & Vehicle fires

When refueling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.

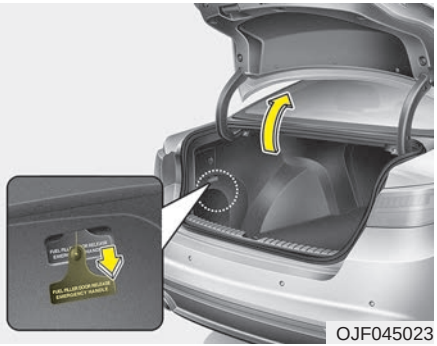
Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the “Fuel requirements” suggested in chapter 1.

If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only a genuine Kia cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.

⚠ CAUTION - Exterior paint

Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.

Emergency fuel filler lid release



OJF045023

If the fuel filler lid does not open using the remote fuel filler lid release, you can open it manually. Remove the panel in the cargo area. Pull the handle out slightly.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not pull the handle excessively, otherwise the luggage area trim or release handle may be damaged.

PANORAMIC SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

OJF045024

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK (or OFF) position.

However, if the front door is opened, the sunroof cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof motor damage

To prevent damage to the sunroof, periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.

In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

After the vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.

⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof control lever

Do not continue to press the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.

The sunroof cannot slide when it is in the tilt position nor can it be tilted while in an open or slide position.

⚠ WARNING - Roof cargo

Do not operate the sun roof while using the roof rack to transport cargo. This may cause the cargo to come loose and distract the driver.

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade while driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not extend any luggage outside the sunroof while driving.

Sunroof open warning (if equipped)

OJF045216L

If the driver removes the ignition key (smart key: turns off the engine) when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for a few seconds and a message will appear on the LCD display or the warning indicator will illuminate.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the sunroof is fully closed when leaving your vehicle. If the sunroof is opened, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior.

Sunshade

OJF045217L

To open the sunshade

Push the sunroof control lever backward to the 1st detent position.

To close the sunshade when the sunroof glass is closed

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the 1st detent position.

To stop the sliding at any point, press the sunshade control switch momentarily.

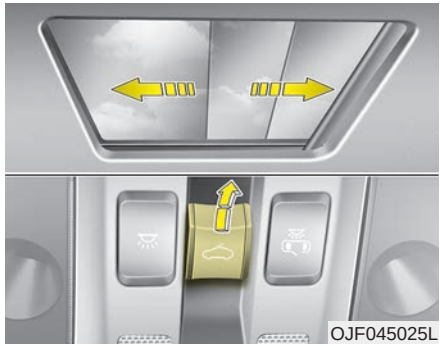
✻ NOTICE

Wrinkles formed on the sunshade as material characteristic are normal.

⚠ CAUTION - Automatic sunroof shade

- ***Do not pull or push the sunshade by hand as such action may damage the sunshade or cause it to malfunction.***
- ***Close the sunroof when driving in dusty environments. Dust may cause a malfunction of the vehicle system.***

Sliding the sunroof


OJF045025L

When the sunshade is closed

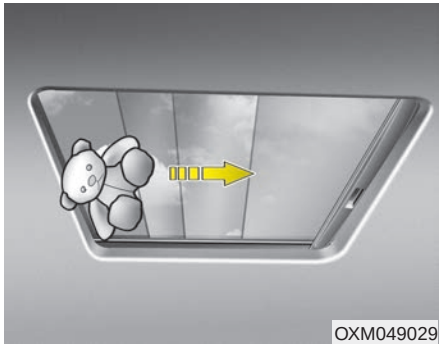
Push the sunroof control lever backward to the 2nd detent position, both the sunshade and sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control glass lever momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

Push the sunroof glass control lever backward to the 1st or 2nd detent position, the sunroof glass will be opened.

To stop the sunroof glass movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

Automatic reversal



If an object or part of the body is detected while the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

⚠ WARNING - Sunroof

Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside the sunroof while driving.

⚠ WARNING - Sunroof Operation

When closing the sunroof, make sure there are no body parts in the movement range of the sliding roof. Parts of the body could become trapped or crushed.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the sunroof, periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.

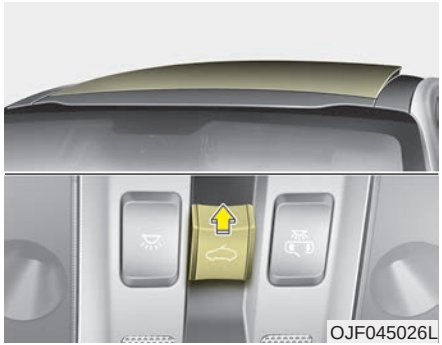
✻ NOTICE

If you drive with the sunroof opened right after a vehicle wash or rain, water may get inside the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof motor damage

If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.

Tilting the sunroof



When the sunshade is closed

Push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunshade will slide halfway open then the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

Push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

Closing the sunroof

To close the sunroof glass with the sunshade

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the 2nd detent position. The sunroof glass and sunshade will close automatically.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

To close the sunroof glass only

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the 1st detent position. The sunroof glass will close automatically.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Start the engine.
2. Close the sunshade and sunroof completely if opened.
3. Release the sunroof control lever.
4. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunshade slightly moves. Then, release the lever.
5. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close, until the sunroof operates as follows again:

   Sunshade Open → Glass Tilt Open → Glass Slide Open → Glass Slide Close → Sunshade Close

   Then, release the lever.

When this is complete, the sunroof system has been reset and one touch open and close should be restored.

✻ NOTICE

If you do not reset the sunroof, it may not work properly.

STEERING WHEEL

Electric power steering (EPS)

The power steering uses a motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The motor driven power steering is controlled by a power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for optimum steering control.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, have the power steering checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

- If the Electric Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may require increased steering effort. Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, noise may occur. If temperature rises, the noise will likely disappear. This is a normal condition.
- When the vehicle is stationary, and the steering wheel is turned all the way to the left or right continuously, the steering wheel becomes harder to turn. The power assist is limited to protect the motor from overheating.

  As time passes, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.

✻ NOTICE

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering gets heavy immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK (OFF) position.**
- **A motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **If the Electric Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate abnormally. Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the charging system warning light comes on due to the low voltage (When the alternator or battery) does not operate normally or malfunctions), the steering wheel may require increased steering effort.**

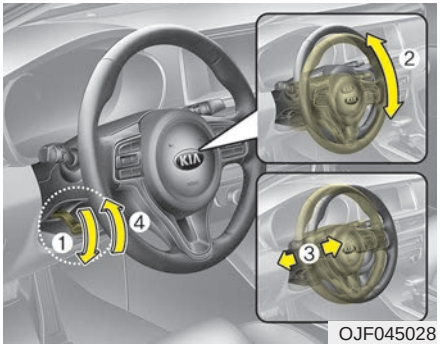
Tilt and telescopic steering

Tilt and telescopic steering allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, while permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

⚠ WARNING - Steering wheel adjustment

Never adjust the angle and height of the steering wheel while driving. You may lose steering control.

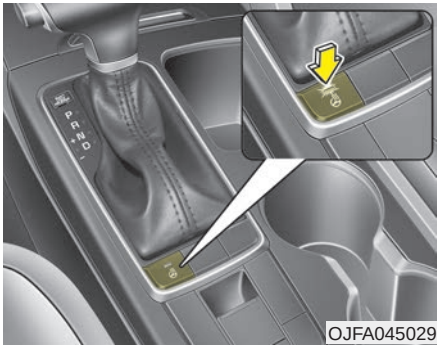


To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock-release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3, if equipped) then pull up the lock-release lever to lock (4) the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

✻ NOTICE

After adjustment, sometimes the lock release lever may not lock the steering wheel. It is not a malfunction. This occurs when two gears are not engaged correctly. In this case, adjust the steering wheel again and then lock the steering wheel.

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)



OJFA045029

With the ignition switch in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

⚠ WARNING

If the steering wheel becomes too warm, turn the system off. The heated steering wheel may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.

✻ NOTICE

The heated steering wheel will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install any type of grip cover for the steering wheel, it may impair the function of the heated steering wheel system.***
- ***When cleaning the heated steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the steering wheel.***
- ***If the surface of steering wheel is damaged by sharp object, damage to the heated steering wheel components could occur.***

Horn

OJF045030

To sound the horn, press the horn symbols on your steering wheel. Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

✻ NOTICE

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror so that the center view through the rear window is seen. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision through the rear window.

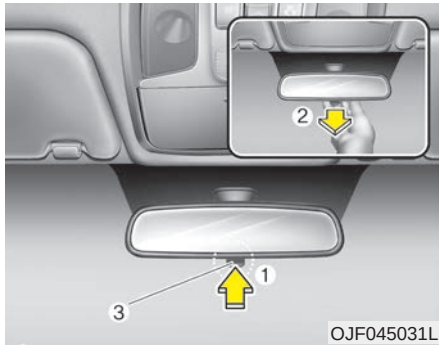
⚠ WARNING - Mirror adjustment

Do not adjust the rearview mirror while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control.

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify the inside mirror and don't install a wide mirror. It could result in injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag.

Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)



Make this adjustment before you start driving and while the day/night lever (3) is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever (3) toward you to reduce the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

❊ (1) : Day, (2) : Night

Electric chromatic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)

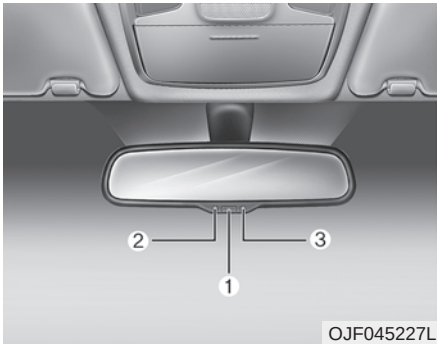
The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle and automatically controls the headlight glare from the vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the shift lever is shifted into reverse (R), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION - Cleaning mirror

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. It may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.



OJF045227L

To operate the electric rearview mirror:

- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.
- Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light (2) will turn off.

  Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light (2) will illuminate.

❊ (2) : Indicator, (3) : Sensor

Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust the mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic vehicle wash or when passing through a narrow street.

The right outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.

⚠ CAUTION - Rearview mirror

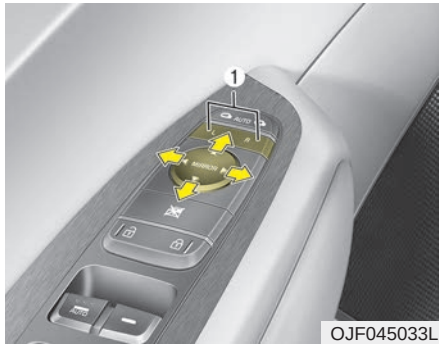
Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict the movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.

If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

⚠ WARNING - Mirror adjustment

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control.

Adjusting outside rearview mirror



OJF045033L

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, press the R or L button (1) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point (▲) on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

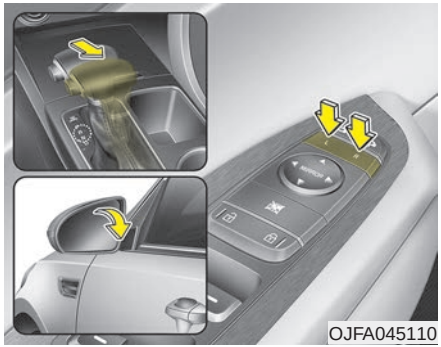
After adjustment, press the R or L button again to prevent the inadvertent adjustment.

⚠ **CAUTION - Outside mirror**

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is pressed.***

  Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***

Reverse parking aid function (if equipped)



While the vehicle is moving in reverse, the outside rearview mirror(s) will move downward to aid reverse parking. According to the position of the outside rearview mirror switch (1), the outside rearview mirror(s) will operate as follows:

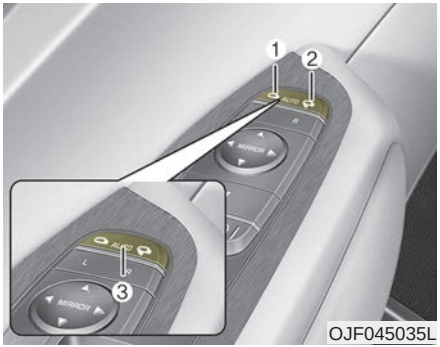
L/R : When the remote control outside rearview mirror switch (1) is selected to the L (left) or R (right) position, both outside rearview mirrors will move downward.

Neutral : When the remote control outside rearview mirror switch is placed in the middle, the outside rearview mirrors will not operate while the vehicle is moving rearward.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions under the following conditions:

1. The ignition switch is in the OFF position.
2. Shift lever is moved to any position except R (Reverse).
3. Remote control outside rearview mirror switch is placed in the middle.

Folding the outside rearview mirror (if equipped)



OJF045035L

Electric type

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch when the ignition switch is ACC or ON position as below.

Left (1) : The mirror will unfold.

Right (2) : The mirror will fold.

Center (AUTO, 3) :

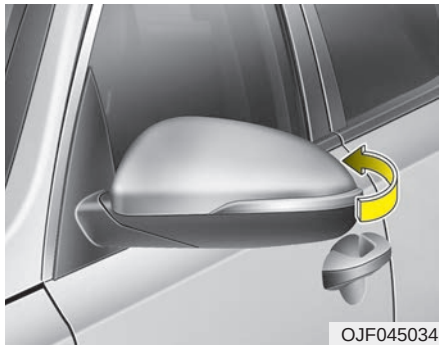
The mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:

- The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the folding key or smart key.
- The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.
- The mirror will unfold when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession. (if equipped)

⚠ **CAUTION - Electric type outside rearview mirror**

The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary while the engine is not running.

In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.


OJF045034

Manual type

To fold the outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of the mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ **Type A**

■ **Type B**

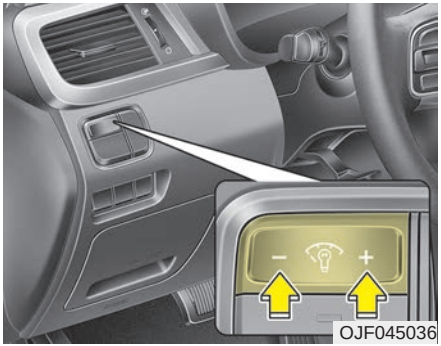
1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display

❊ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to the "Gauges" in this chapter.

OJFA046100C/OJFA046101C

Instrument Cluster Control

Adjusting Instrument Cluster Illumination

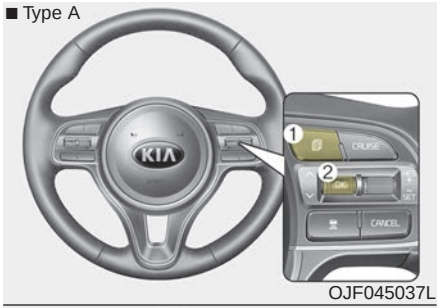


The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is changed by pressing the illumination control button ("+" or "-") when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON, or the taillights are turned on.

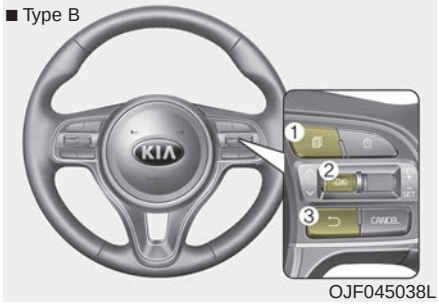
- If you hold the illumination control button ("+" or "-"), the brightness will be changed continuously.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.

LCD Display Control

■ Type A



■ Type B



The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons on the steering wheel.

[Type A]

(1) 🗐 : MODE button for changing modes

(2) ∧/∨/OK : SELECT scroll switch for setting the selected item and RESET scroll switch for resetting items

[Type B]

(1) 🗐 : MODE button for changing modes

(2) ∧/∨/OK : SELECT scroll switch for setting the selected item and RESET scroll switch for resetting items

(3) ⮌ : RETURN button for moving the previous mode or item (if equipped)

❊ For the LCD modes, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.

Gauges

Speedometer

OJFA045102C

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometers per hour (km/h) and/or miles per hour (mph).

Tachometer

OJF045103

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

⚠ CAUTION - Red zone

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

OJF045104

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON.

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "H" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the Engine Overheats" in chapter 7.

⚠ WARNING - Hot radiator

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.

Fuel Gauge

OJF045105

This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

✻ NOTICE

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 9.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

✻ NOTICE - Fuel gauge

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger. You must top and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "E (Empty)" level.

⚠ CAUTION - Low fuel

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.

✻ NOTICE

Fuel display may not be accurate if you are filling in sloping places.

Odometer

OJF045133

The odometer Indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range : 0 ~ 999999 kilometers or miles.

Outside Temperature Gauge

OJF045135

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

- Temperature range : -40°C ~ 60°C (-40°F ~ 140°F)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being distracted.

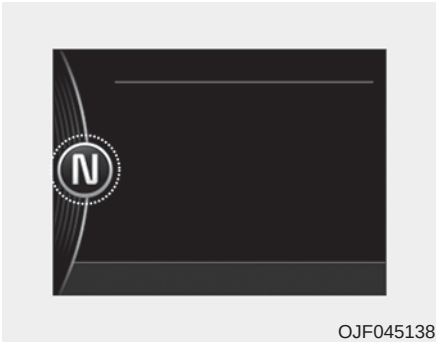
To change the temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C)

The temperature unit can be changed by using the "User Settings" mode of the LCD display.

❊ For more details, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.

Transaxle Shift Indicator

Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)



OJF045138

This indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

Dual clutch transmission shift indicator (if equipped)

OJF045330L

This indicator displays which shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : D1, D2, D3, D4, D5, D6, D7

LCD DISPLAY

LCD Modes

Modes	Symbol	Explanation
Trip Computer		This mode displays driving information like the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on. For more details, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.
Turn By Turn (if equipped)		This mode displays the state of the navigation.
ASCC/LDWS (if equipped)		This mode displays the state of the Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) and Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS). For more details, refer to "Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC)" or "Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)" in chapter 6.
A/V (if equipped)		This mode displays the state of the A/V system.
Service		This mode informs of service interval (mileage or days) and pressure status of each tire.
		This mode informs of warning messages related to Low tire pressure or malfunction of Blind Spot Detection system (BSD) and so on.
		When any door is not closed securely, this symbol illuminated.
User Settings		On this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps, etc.

❊ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.

Service Mode

Tire Pressure (if equipped)

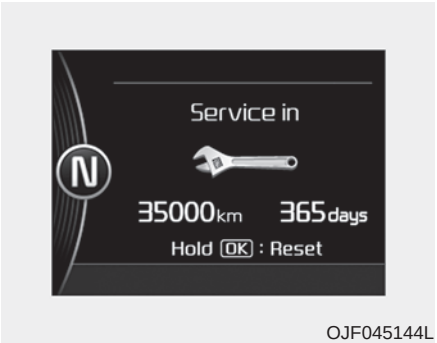
OJF045292L

This mode displays the pressure status of each tire.

You can change the tire pressure unit in "User settings" mode.

❈ For more information, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 7.

Service Interval



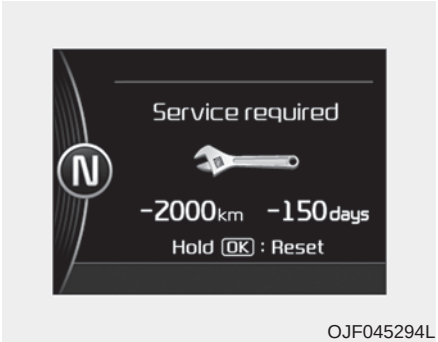
OJF045144L

Service interval

It calculates and displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 1,500 km (900 mi.) or 30 days.

Service interval message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.



OJF045294L

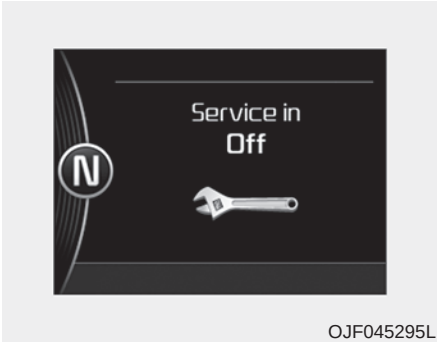
Service required

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, the "Service required" message will appear.

The "Service required" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you input before:

Press the OK button (reset) for more than 1 second.



OJF045295L

Service in OFF

If the service interval is not set "Service in OFF" message is displayed on the LCD display.

If you want to activate Service interval function, set the service interval in the User setting mode.

For more details, refer to “User setting mode" in this chapter.

✻ NOTICE

If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.
- The battery cable is disconnected.
- The fuse switch is turned off.
- The battery is discharged.

Master Warning Mode

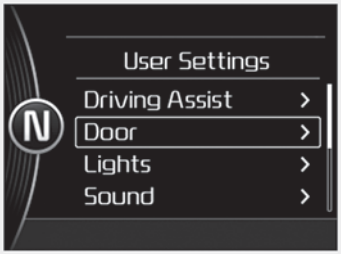
- This warning light informs the driver the following situations
  - Blind Spot Detection (BSD) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) malfunction (if equipped)
  - High Beam Assist (HBA) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Lamp malfunction and so on.

The Master Warning Light illuminates when more than one of the above warning situations occur. At this time, the LCD Modes Icon will change from (⚙) to (⚠).

If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will be turned off and the LCD Modes Icon will be changed back to its previous icon (⚙).

User Settings Mode

Description



OJF045148L

In this mode, you can change setting of the doors, lights, etc.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the User Settings while driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.

Driving Assist (if equipped)

Items	Explanation
Smart Cruise Control Response (if equipped)	Choose the sensitivity of the smart cruise control. For more details, refer to "Advanced Smart Cruise Control System" in chapter 6.
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (if equipped)	If this item is checked, the rear cross traffic alert function will be activated. For more details, refer to "Blind Spot Detection System" in chapter 6.
AEB (Autonomous Emergency Braking) (if equipped)	To activate or deactivate the AEB system. For more details, refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)" in chapter 6.
FCW (Forward Collision Warning) (if equipped)	Choose the sensitivity of the FCW. For more details, refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking(AEB)" in chapter 6.

Door / Trunk

Items	Explanation
Automatically Lock	• Off : The auto door lock operation will be deactivated. • Enable on Speed: All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph). • Enable on Shift: All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position.
Automatically Unlock	• Disable : The auto door unlock operation will be canceled. • Vehicle Off : All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch or the Engine Star/Stop button is set to the OFF position. • On Shift to P: All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position.
Smart Trunk (if equipped)	To activate or deactivate the Smart Trunk system. For more details, refer to "Smart Trunk" in this chapter.
Two Press Unlock	If this item is checked, the two press unlock will be activated.
Horn Feed Back	If this item is checked, the horn feed back will be activated.

Light

Items	Explanation
One Touch Turn Signal	• Off: The one touch turn signal function will be deactivated. • 3, 5, 7 Flashes : The lane change signals will blink 3, 5, or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly. For more details, refer to "Light" in this chapter.
Head Lamp Delay	• If this item is checked, the head lamp delay function will be activated.
Welcome Light (If equipped)	• If this item is checked, the welcome light function will be activated.

Sound

Items	Explanation
Park Assist System Vol. (if equipped)	• Adjust the Park Assist System volume. (Level 1~3) For more details, refer to "Parking Assist System" in this chapter.
BSD (Blind Spot Detection) Sound (if equipped)	• If this item is checked, the blind spot detection sound will be activated. For more details, refer to "Blind Spot Detection System" in chapter 6.
Welcome Sound (if equipped)	• If this item is checked, the welcome sound function will be activated.

Service interval

Items	Explanation
Service Interval	On this mode, you can activate the service interval function with mileage (km or mi.) and period (months). • Off : The service interval function will be deactivated. • On :You can set the service interval (mileage and months). For more details, refer to "Service Mode" in this chapter.

Convenience

Items	Explanation
Seat Easy Access (if equipped)	Choose the sensitivity (None/Normal/Extend) of the seat easy access. For more details, refer to "Seat Easy Access Function" in chapter 3.
Steering Position	If this item is checked, the warning function regarding the steering wheel alignment will be activated. For more details, refer to "Warning Messages" in this chapter.
Wireless Charging System (if equipped)	If this item is checked, the wireless charging system will be activated.
Wiper/Light Display (if equipped)	If this item is checked, the LCD display shows a selected wiper/light mode whenever you changed its mode.

Other features

Items	Explanation
Fuel Economy Auto Reset	If this item is checked, the average fuel economy will reset automatically when refueling or after ignition.
Fuel Economy Unit	Choose the fuel economy unit. (Km/L, L/100 km)
Temperature Unit	Choose the temperature unit. (°C,°F)
Tire Pressure Unit (if equipped)	Choose the tire pressure unit. (psi, kPa, Bar)

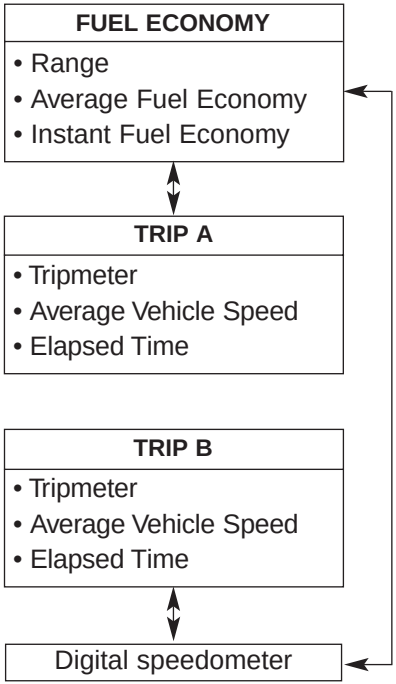
TRIP MODES (TRIP COMPUTER)

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

✻ NOTICE

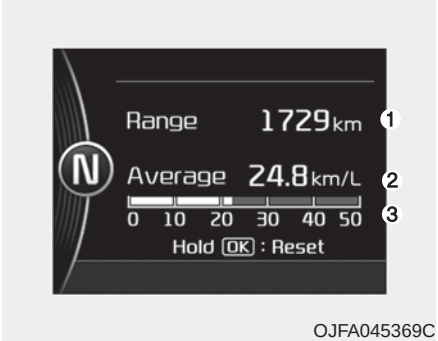
Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.

Trip Modes



To change the trip mode, scroll the TRIP scroll switch (∧/∨) in the trip computer mode.

Fuel Economy



OJFA045369C

Range (1)

- The range is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
  - Distance range : 1 ~ 9,999 km or 1 ~ 9,999 mi.
- If the estimated distance is below 1km (1mi.), the trip computer will display “---” as range.
- If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the range function may not operate correctly.

- The range may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.
- The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- The fuel economy and range may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.

Average Fuel Economy (2)

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range : 1 ~ 99.9 L/100km or MPG
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

Manual reset

To reset average fuel economy manually, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

Automatic reset

To make the average fuel economy reset automatically whenever refueling, select the “Auto Reset” mode in User Setting menu of the LCD display (Refer to “LCD Display”).

- OFF - You may set to default manually by using the trip switch reset button.
- When driving - The vehicle will automatically set to default once 4 hours pass after the Ignition is in OFF.
- When refueling - After refueling more than 6 liters and driving over 1km/h, the vehicle will reset to default automatically.

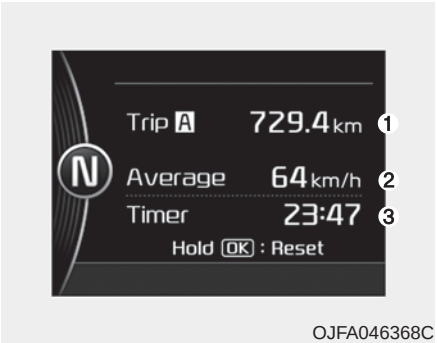
✻ NOTICE

The average fuel economy is not displayed for more accurate calculation if the vehicle does not drive more than 10 seconds or 50 meters (0.03 miles) since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.

Instant Fuel Economy (3)

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h (6.2 MPH).
  - Fuel economy range:
    0 ~ 30 L/100km or 0 ~ 50 MPG

Trip A/B



OJFA046368C

Tripmeter (1)

- The tripmeter is the total driving distance since the last tripmeter reset.
  - Distance range: 0.0 ~ 9999.9 km or mi.

To reset the tripmeter, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the tripmeter is displayed.

Average Vehicle Speed (2)

- The average vehicle speed is calculated by the total driving distance and driving time since the last average vehicle speed reset.
  - Speed range :
    0~260 km/h or 0~160 MPH

To reset the average vehicle speed, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

- **The average vehicle speed is not displayed if the driving distance is less than 50 meters (0.03 miles) or the driving time is less than 10 seconds since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.**
- **Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average vehicle speed keeps going while the engine is running.**

Elapsed Time(3)

- The elapsed time is the total driving time since the last elapsed time reset.
  - Time range (hh:mm): 00:00 ~ 99:59

To reset elapsed time, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

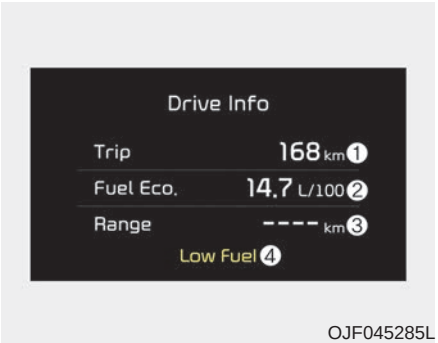
Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the elapsed time keeps going while the engine is running.

Digital speedometer

OJF045222L

This mode displays the current speed of the vehicle.

One time driving information mode



OJF045285L

This display shows trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2) and the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel (3).

This information is displayed for a few seconds when you turn off the engine and then goes off automatically. The information provided is calculated according to each trip.

If the estimated distance is below 1km (1mi.), the range (3) will display as "---".

When low fuel warning light ( ) illuminates in the cluster, the refuel message will appear(4).

Turn By Turn Mode (if equipped)

OJF045223L

This mode displays the state of the navigation.

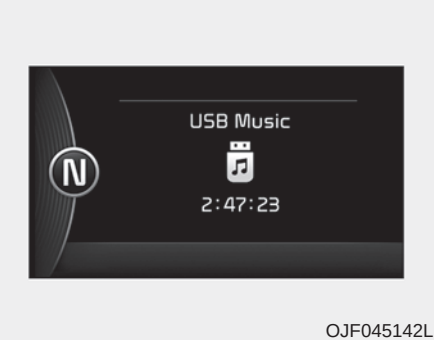
ASCC/LDWS Mode (if equipped)

OJF045296L

This mode displays the state of the Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) and Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).

For more information, refer to "Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC)" and "Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)" in chapter 6.

A/V Mode (if equipped)



OJF045142L

This mode displays the state of the A/V system.

Warning Messages

Shift to P position (for smart key system)

OJF045160L

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.
- At this time, the Engine Start/Stop Button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button once more, it will turn to the ON position).

Low Key Battery (for smart key system)

OJF045154L

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Press start button while turn steering (for smart key system)

OJF045286L

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the Engine Start/Stop Button while turning the steering wheel right and left.

Steering wheel unlocked (for smart key system)

OJF045287L

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)

OJF045288L

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system)

OJF045164L

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.

Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)

OJF045150L

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
- It means that you should always have the smart key with you.

Key not detected (for smart key system)

OJF045152L

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.

Press start button again (for smart key system)

OJF045156L

- This warning message illuminates if you can not operate the Engine Start/Stop Button when there is a problem with the Engine Start/Stop Button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/ Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the Engine Start/Stop Button, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Press start button with key (for smart key system)

OJF045158L

- This warning message illuminates if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button while the warning message “Key not detected” is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks.

Check fuse BRAKE SWITCH (for smart key system)

OJF045169L

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

Shift to P or N to start engine (for smart key system)

OJF045162L

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

✻ NOTICE

You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position; however; we recommend that you start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position for your safety.

Door / Hood / Trunk Open

OJF045224L

- It means that any door, hood, or trunk is open.
- The hood warning message will appear on the LCD display when hood is open.

  The warning chime will operate when the vehicle is being driven at or above 3 km/h (2 mph) with the hood open.

Sunroof Open (if equipped)

OJF045216L

- The warning message illuminates if you turn off the engine and then open the driver's door when the sunroof is open.

Icy Road Warning Light (if equipped)

OJF045226L

This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the following conditions occur, the warning light (including Outside Temperature Gauge) blinks 5 times and then illuminates, and also warning chime sounds once.

- The temperature on the Outside Temperature Gauge is below approximately 4°C (40°F).

✻ NOTICE

If the icy road warning light appears while driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

Align steering wheel (if equipped)

OJF045176L

- This warning message illuminates if you start the engine when the steering wheel is turned to more than 90 degrees to the left or right.
- It means that you should turn the steering wheel and make the angle of the steering wheel be less than 30 degrees.

Low Washer Fluid (if equipped)

OJF045146L

- This warning message illuminates on the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

Turn on FUSE SWITCH

OJF045166L

- This warning message illuminates if the fuse switch on the fuse box is OFF.
- It means that you should turn the fuse switch on.

For more details, refer to "Fuses" in chapter 8.

Low Fuel

OJF045290L

This warning message illuminates if the fuel tank is nearly empty.

- When the low fuel level warning light is illuminated.
- When the trip computer displays "--- km (or mile)" as range.

Add fuel as soon as possible.

Check high beam assist system (if equipped)

OJF045194L

This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction (burned-out bulb or circuit malfunction) with the headlamp. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Check headlight

OJF045178L

This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction (burned-out bulb except LED lamp or circuit malfunction) with the headlamp. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **When replacing the bulb, use the same wattage bulb.**
  For more information, refer to "BULB WATTAGE" in chapter 9.
- **If different wattage bulb is equipped with the vehicle, this warning message is not displayed.**

Check AEB system (if equipped)

OJF045291L

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system. In this case, have your vehicle be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system" in chapter 6.

Check Smart Phone Wireless Charger (if equipped)

OJF045312L

If a smart phone is still left on the wireless charging pad unattended, even when the ignition is in ACC OFF and the instrument panel's one time driving information mode has finished, a warning message will light up on the instrument panel.

For more details, refer to "Smart Phone Wireless Charger" in this chapter.

WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

Warning lights

✻ NOTICE - Warning lights

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Air bag Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Seat Belt Warning Light

This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

For more details, refer to the “Seat Belts” in chapter 3.

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in reservoir is low.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (For more details, refer to “Brake Fluid” in chapter 8).

Then check all brake components for fluid leaks. If any leaks in the brake system are still found, the warning light remains on, or the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle.

In this case, have your vehicle towed to an authorized Kia dealer and inspected.

Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light illuminate with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS (The normal braking system will still be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system).

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

These two warning lights illuminate at the same time while driving:

- When the ABS and regular brake system may not work normally.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking thereby increasing the risk of a crash and injury. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking. Have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

✻ NOTICE - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When the ABS Warning Light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or trip-meter may not work. Also, the EPS Warning Light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.
In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

Electronic Power Steering (EPS) Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPS.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with the emission control system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION - Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control systems which could affect drivability and/or fuel economy.

⚠ CAUTION - Catalytic Converter Damage

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

Charging System Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

   If the belt is adjusted properly, there may be a problem in the electrical charging system.

   In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When the engine oil pressure is low.

If the engine oil pressure is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more details, refer to “Engine Oil” in chapter 8). If the level is low, add oil as required.

   If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION - Engine damage

If the engine is not stopped immediately after the engine oil pressure warning light is illuminated and stays on while the engine is running, serious engine damage may result.

If the warning light stays on while the engine is running, it indicates that there may be serious engine damage or malfunction. In this case,

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level.
3. Start the engine again. If the warning light stays on after the engine is started, turn the engine off immediately. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated.

  For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” in chapter 7.

This warning light remains on after blinking for approximately 60 seconds or repeats blinking and off at the intervals of approximately 3 seconds:

- When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

  For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” in chapter 7.

⚠ WARNING - Low tire pressure

- **Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.**
- **Continued driving or low pressure tires will cause the tires to overheat and fail.**

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light (if equipped)

EPB

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPB.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE - Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability control (ESC) Indicator Light comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).

Master Warning light (if equipped)

- This warning light informs the driver of the following situations
  - Blind Spot Detection (BSD) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) malfunction (if equipped)
  - High Beam Assist(HBA) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Lamp malfunction and so on.

The Master Warning Light illuminates when more than one of the above warning situations occur. At this time, the LCD Modes Icon will change from (⚙) to (⚠).

If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will be turned off and the LCD Modes Icon will be changed back to its previous icon (⚙).

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) Warning light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction with the AEB.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) Warning Light (if equipped)

AFLS

This warning light blinks:

- Once you set the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the AFLS.

If there is a malfunction with the AFLS:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and restart the engine. If the warning light remains on, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

LED Headlamp Warning Light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the LED headlamp.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

This warning light blinks:

- When there is a malfunction with a LED headlamp related part.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION - LED Headlamp Warning Light

Continuous driving with the LED Headlamp Warning Light on or blinking can reduce LED headlamp (low beam) life.

Indicator Lights

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

While the ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 6.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 6.

Immobilizer Indicator Light (Without Smart Key)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the vehicle detects the immobilizer in your key properly while the ignition switch is ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks:

- When there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Immobilizer Indicator Light (With Smart Key)

This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

- When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle properly while the Engine Start/Stop Button is ACC or ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

- When the smart key is not in the vehicle.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine.

This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

- When the vehicle can not detect the smart key which is in the vehicle while the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON.

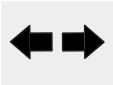
  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to “Starting the Engine” in chapter 6).
- When there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Turn Signal Indicator Light



This indicator light blinks:

- When you turn the turn signal light on.

If any of the following occurs, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

- The indicator light does not blink but illuminates.
- The indicator light blinks more rapidly.
- The indicator light does not illuminate at all.

High Beam Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

High beam assist indicator (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates :

- When the high-Beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO light position.
- If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, the High beam assist system will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more details, refer to "High beam assist" in this chapter.

Light ON Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the tail lights or headlights are on.

Cruise Indicator Light (if equipped)

CRUISE

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the cruise control system is enabled.

For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in chapter 6.

Cruise SET Indicator Light (if equipped)

SET

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the cruise control speed is set.

For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in chapter 6.

AUTO HOLD Indicator Light (if equipped)

AUTO HOLD

This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When you activate the auto hold system by pressing the AUTO HOLD button.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with the auto hold system activated.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the auto hold system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

❈ For more details, refer to “Auto Hold” in chapter 6.

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When the lane departure warning system does not detect the lane line.
- [Green] When you activate the lane departure warning system by pressing the LDWS button.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the lane departure warning system.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

❊ For more details, refer to “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)” in chapter 6.

ECO Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates :

- When the Active ECO system is activated by pressing the DRIVE mode button.
- The ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.

For more details, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 6.

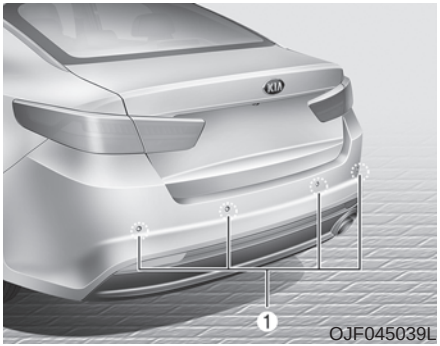
SPORT Mode Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select “SPORT” mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to “Drive Mode” in chapter 6.

REAR PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



The rear parking assist system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm. (47 in) behind the vehicle.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors (①) are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a rear parking assist system.

⚠ WARNING - Rear parking assist system

Never rely solely on the rear parking assist system. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction. Stop immediately if you are aware of a child anywhere near your vehicle. Some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's size or material.

Operation of the rear parking assist system

Operating condition

- This system will activate when the indicator on the rear parking assist OFF button is not illuminated. If you desire to deactivate the rear parking assist system, press the rear parking assist OFF button again. (The indicator on the button will illuminate.) To turn the system on, press the button again. (The indicator on the button will go off.)

  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 5 km/h (3 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.

- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition switch ON.

  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 5 km/h (3 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.
- The sensing distance while the back-up warning system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (47 in.) at the rear bumper center area, 60 cm (23.5 in.) at the rear bumper both side area.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

Types of warning sound

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47 in. to 24 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (24 in. to 12 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 40 cm (16 in.) of the rear bumper:

  Buzzer sounds continuously.

Non-operational conditions of rear parking assist system

The rear parking assist system may not operate properly when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally once the moisture clears.
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient).
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing

The detecting range may decrease when:

1. The sensor is covered with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, sound absorbent material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in.) in height and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

Rear parking assist system precautions

- The rear parking assist system may not sound consistently depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The rear parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 40 cm (15 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or covered with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the material is removed using a soft cloth.
- To prevent damage, do not push, scratch or strike the sensor.

✻ NOTICE

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors. It cannot detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.
Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

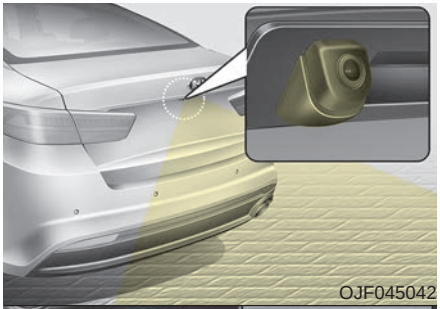
Self-diagnosis

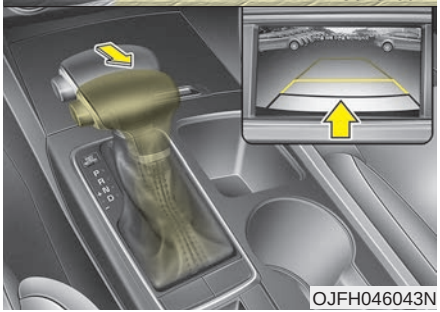
If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in the rear parking assist system. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

✻ NOTICE

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to a rear parking assist system malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.

REARVIEW CAMERA





The rearview camera will activate with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.

This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the rearview display mirror while backing up unless equipped with a navigation system, then will display on the screen.

The rearview camera may be turned off by pressing the ON/OFF button when the rearview camera is activated.

To turn the camera on again, press the ON/OFF button again when the ignition switch is on and the shift lever is in R (Reverse). Also, the camera will turn on automatically whenever the ignition switch is turned off and on again.

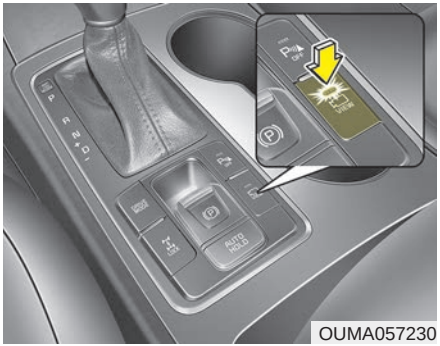
- This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirrors and the area behind the vehicle before and while backing up because there is a dead zone that can't be seen by the camera.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.

❈ If your vehicle is equipped with AVN (Audio, Video and Navigation) system, rearview display will show behind the vehicle through the AVN monitor while backing-up. Refer to a separately supplied manual for detailed information.

⚠ WARNING - Backing & using camera

Never rely solely on the rear view camera when backing. You must always use methods of viewing the area behind you including looking over both shoulders as well as continuously checking all three rear view mirrors. Due to the difficulty of ensuring that the area behind you remains clear, always back slowly and stop immediately if you even suspect that a person, and especially a child, might be behind you.

360° CAMERA MONITORING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



OUMA057230

The 360° camera monitoring system is not a substitute for proper and safe parking procedures. The 360° camera monitoring system may not detect every object surrounding the vehicle. Always drive safely and use caution when parking.

The 360° camera monitoring system can assist in parking by allowing the driver to see around the vehicle. Push the button into the [ON] position to operate the system.

To cancel the system, push the button again.

Operating conditions

- When the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON position
- When the transaxle is on D, N or R
- When the vehicle speed is not over 15 km/h (9 mph)

- When the vehicle speed is over 15 km/h (9 mph), the 360° camera monitoring system is turned off. If the vehicle speed is not over 15 km/h (9 mph) after turning off the 360° camera monitoring system by over speed, the 360° camera monitoring system is not turned on. To operate again, push the button.
- When the vehicle moves backwards, regardless of On/Off of button and vehicle speed, the 360° camera monitoring system is operated.
- When the liftgate and driver/passenger door are opened and the outside mirror is folded, the warning is illuminated in 360° camera monitoring system.
- If the 360° camera monitoring system is not operating normally, the system should be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.
- When the vehicle moves over 15 km/h (9 mph) forward after moving backward, the 360° camera monitoring system screen will be turned off.

⚠ WARNING

This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area around the vehicle before and while moving.

LIGHTING

Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged if the lights are left in the ON position. The system automatically shuts off the parking lights 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is opened and closed.
- With this feature, the parking lights will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of the road at night and opens the driver's side door.

  If necessary, to keep the parking lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following:

  1) Open the driver-side door.

  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

Daytime running light

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn the dedicated lamp OFF when:

1. The headlight switch is ON.
2. The engine is OFF.

Lighting control

OJF045045

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

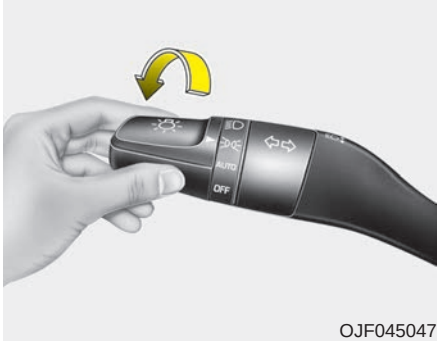
(1) OFF position

(2) Auto light position

(3) Parking & Tail light

(4) Headlight position

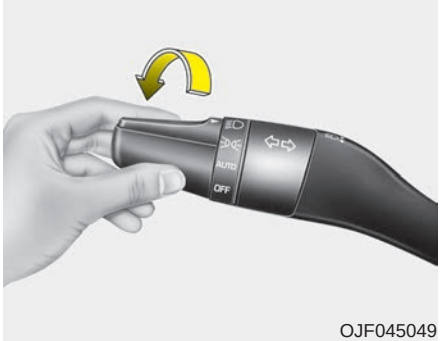
Parking & Tail light ( )



OJF045047

When the light switch is in the parking light position, the tail, license and instrument panel lights will turn ON.

Headlight position ( )



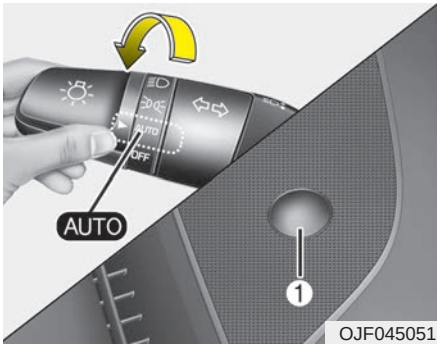
OJF045049

When the light switch is in the headlight position, the head, tail, license lights will turn ON.

✻ NOTICE

The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.

Auto light position



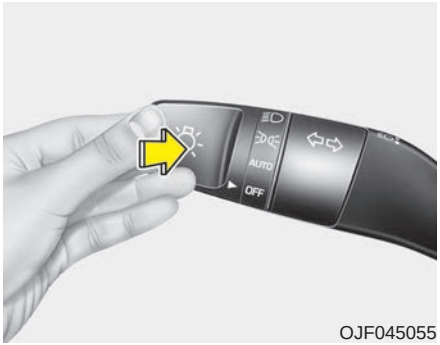
OJF045051

When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will turn ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

When the light switch is positioned at an auto light position, at first, the wiper will turn on and then, after 5 seconds the head lamp will turn on automatically.

If the head lamp has been turned on due to this function of the vehicle, the head lamp will turn off 60 seconds after the wiper has been turned off.

High beam operation



OJF045055

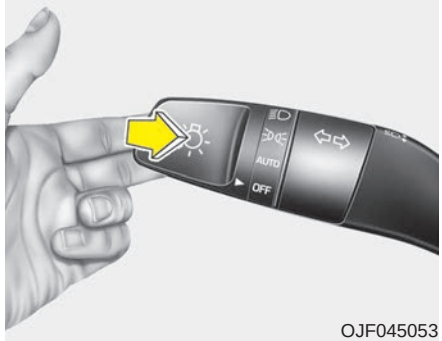
To turn on the high beam headlamp, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time while the engine is not running.

⚠ WARNING - High beams

Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.



OJF045053

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

High Beam Assist (if equipped)

OJFA045357

The High Beam Assist is a system that automatically adjusts the headlamp range (switches between high beam and low beam) according to the brightness of other vehicles and road conditions.

Operating condition

1. Place the light switch in the AUTO position.
2. Turn on the high beam by pushing the lever away from you.

   The High Beam Assist ( ) indicator will illuminate.
3. The High Beam Assist will turn on when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25mph).
   - If the lever is pushed away when the High Beam Assist is operating, the High Beam Assist will turn off and the high beam will be on continuously. The High Beam Assist ( ) indicator will turn off.
   - If the lever is pulled towards you when the High Beam Assist is operating, the High Beam Assist will turn off.
4. If the light switch is placed to the headlamp position, the High Beam Assist will turn off and the low beam will be on continuously.

The high beam switches to low beam in the below conditions.

- When the High Beam Assist is off.
- When the light switch is not in the AUTO position.
- When the headlamp is detected from the on-coming vehicle.
- When the tail lamp is detected from the front vehicle.
- When the surrounding is bright enough high beams are not needed.
- When streetlights or other lights are detected.
- When vehicle speed is below 24 km/h (15 mph).

The system may not operate normally in the below conditions.

- When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, hidden from sight, etc.
- When the lamp of the on-coming or front vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.
- When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, etc.
- When the front window is covered with foreign matters such as ice, dust, fog, or is damaged.
- When there is a similar shape lamp with the front vehicle's lamps.

- When it is hard to see because of fog, heavy rain or snow.
- When the headlamp is not repaired or replaced at an authorized dealer.
- When headlamp aiming is not properly adjusted.
- When driving on a narrow curved road or rough road.
- When driving downhill or uphill.
- When only part of the vehicle in front is visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- When there is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror.
- When the road conditions are bad such as being wet or covered with snow.
- When the front vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps on.
- When a vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- When the vehicle is tilted from a flat tire or being towed.
- When the LDWS (lane departure warning system) warning light illuminates. (if equipped)

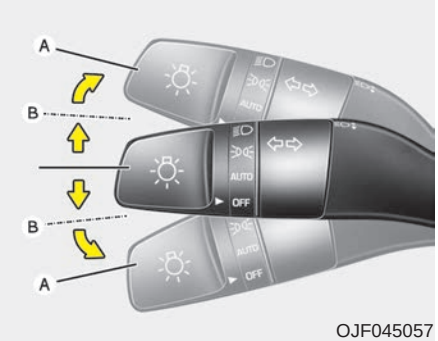
✻ NOTICE

- **Do not place any accessories, stickers or tint the windshield.**
- **Have the windshield glass replaced from an authorized dealer.**
- **Do not remove or damage related parts of the High Beam Assist system.**
- **Be careful that water doesn't get into the High Beam Assist unit.**
- **Do not place objects on the dashboard that reflect light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may malfunction if sunlight is reflected.**
- **At times, the High Beam Assist system may not work properly, always check the road conditions for your safety. When the system does not operate normally, manually change between the high beam and low beam.**

Warning light and message

When the High Beam Assist system is not working properly, the warning message will come on for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light will illuminate. Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

Turn signals and lane change signals



OJF045057

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). The green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating.

They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

✻ NOTICE

If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, a bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.

Check headlight

OJFA055274

This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction (burned-out bulb except LED lamp or circuit malfunction) with the headlamp. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **When replacing the bulb, use the same wattage bulb.**
  For more information, refer to "BULB WATTAGE" in chapter 9.
- **If the different wattage bulb is equipped with the vehicle, this warning message is not displayed.**

Headlight leveling device (if equipped)

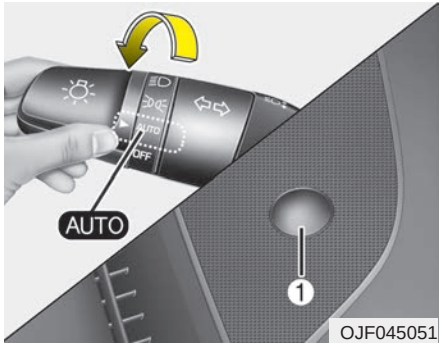
Automatic type

To ensure the proper headlight beam is used under various conditions, the headlight beam levels are automatically adjusted depending on the number of passengers, the weight in the trunk, and other driving conditions.

✻ NOTICE

If it does not work properly even though your car is inclined backward according to passenger's posture, or the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, have the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.
Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) (if equipped)



OJF045051

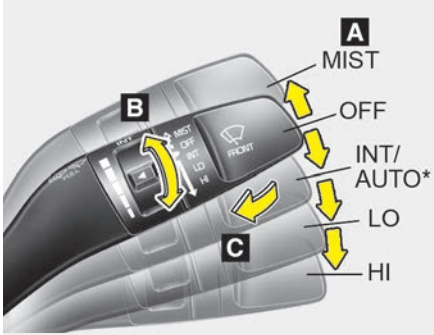
Adaptive front lighting system uses the steering angle and vehicle speed, to keep your field of vision wide by swiveling and leveling the headlamp.

Change the switch to the AUTO position when the engine is running. The adaptive front lighting system will operate when the headlamp is ON. To turn off the AFLS, change the switch to other positions. After turning the AFLS off, headlamp swiveling no longer occurs, but leveling operates continuously.

If the AFLS malfunction indicator comes on, the AFLS is not working properly. Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, have the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

WIPERS AND WASHERS

Windshield wiper/washer



OJF045231L

A : Wiper speed control (front)

- MIST – Single wipe
- OFF – Off
- INT – Intermittent wipe
  AUTO* – Auto control wipe
- LO – Low wiper speed
- HI – High wiper speed

B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment

C : Wash with brief wipes (front)*

* : if equipped

Windshield wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

MIST : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this (MIST) position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

OFF : Wiper is not in operation

INT : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

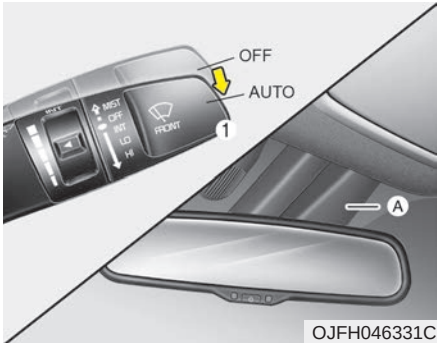
LO : Normal wiper speed

HI : Fast wiper speed

✻ NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation.

Auto control (if equipped)



OJFH046331C

The rain sensor (A) located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wipers stop.

To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (1).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the engine start/stop button is in the ON position, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to OFF position when the wiper is not in use.

⚠ CAUTION

When the engine start/stop button is in the ON position and the windshield wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid damaging the rain sensors on the windshield:

- ***Do not touch the upper end of the windshield glass facing the rain sensor.***
- ***Do not wipe the upper end of the windshield glass with a damp or wet cloth.***
- ***Do not put pressure on the windshield glass.***

⚠ CAUTION

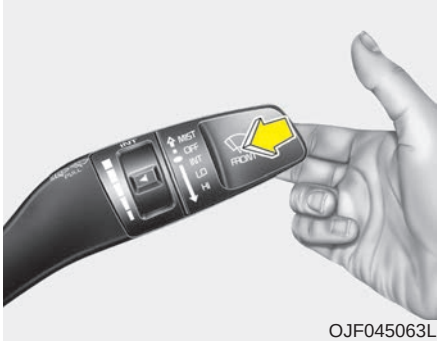
- ***When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF position to stop the auto wiper operation.***
- ***The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode while washing the vehicle.***
- ***Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the OFF position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windshield wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windshield properly prior to operating the windshield wipers.***
- ***When tinting the windshield, be careful of any fluid getting into the sensor located in the top center of the front windshield. It may damage the related parts.***

Front windshield washers



OJF045063L

In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windshield is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windshield washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the passenger side.

⚠ CAUTION - Washer pump

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

⚠ WARNING - Obscured visibility

Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windshield with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windshield and obscure your vision.

⚠ CAUTION - Wipers & windshields

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

INTERIOR LIGHTS

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.

It may cause battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING - Interior Lights

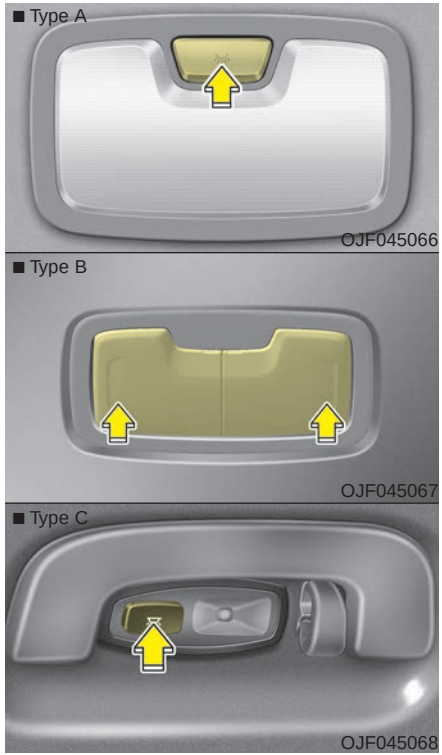
Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.

Automatic turn off function

The interior lights automatically turn off approximately 20 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off, if the lights are in the ON position.

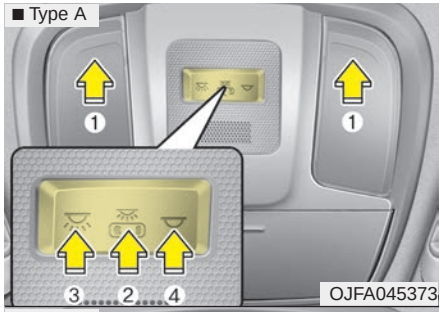
If your vehicle is equipped with the theft alarm system, the interior lights automatically turn off approximately 3 seconds after the system in armed stage.

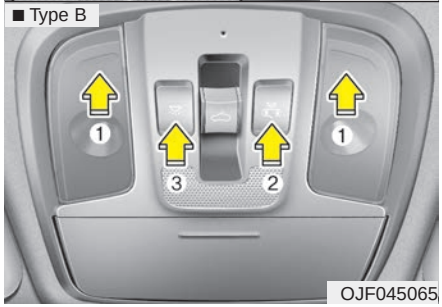
Room lamp



• : The light stays on at all times.

Map lamp





- Press the lens (1) to turn ON the map lamp.

  To turn the map lamp OFF press the lens (1) again.

- (2) : DOOR mode
  - The map lamp and room lamp come on when a door is opened. The lamps go out after approximately 30 seconds.
  - The map lamp and room lamp come on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with a transmitter or smart key as long as the doors are not opened.
  - The map lamp and room lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes if a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK/OFF position.
  - The map lamp and room lamp will stay on continuously if the door is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position.
  - The map lamp and room lamp will go out immediately if the ignition switch is changed to the ON position or all doors are locked.
  - To turn off the DOOR mode, press the DOOR button (2) once again (not pressed).

✻ NOTICE

The DOOR mode and ROOM mode can not be selected at the same time.

Front Room Lamp:

- Type A

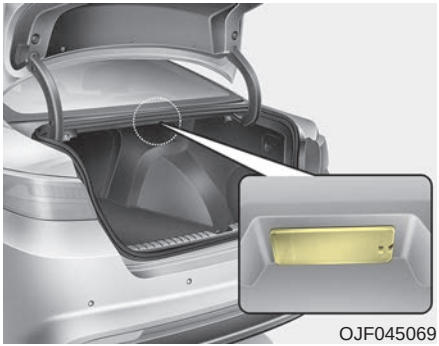
(3): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps on.

(4): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps off.

- Type B

(3): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps on and off.

Trunk room lamp (if equipped)

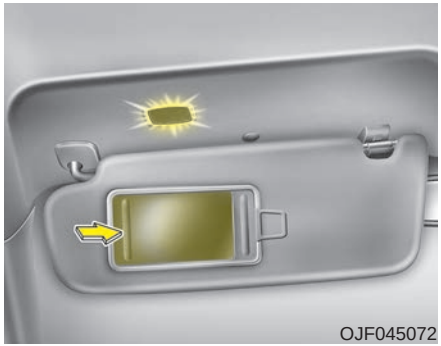


The trunk room lamp comes on when the trunk is opened.

✻ NOTICE

The trunk room lamp comes on as long as the trunk lid opens. To prevent unnecessary battery drain, close the trunk lid securely after using the trunk room.

Vanity mirror lamp



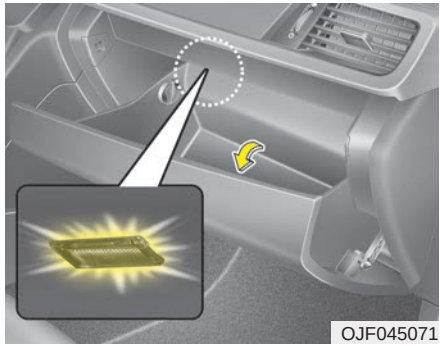
Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror light.

* The actual sunvisor lamp in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp

Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.

Glove box lamp (if equipped)



The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

To prevent unnecessary battery drain, close the glove box securely after using the glove box.

WELCOME SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Headlight (Headlamp) escort function

The headlights (and/or taillights) remain on for approximately 5 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter or smart key twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and trunk) are locked and closed, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

Pocket lamp (if equipped)

When all doors are locked and closed, the pocket lamp will come on for 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

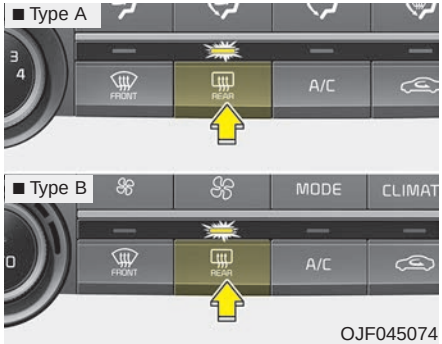
DEFROSTER

⚠ CAUTION - Conductors

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

If you want to defrost and defog the front windshield, refer to “Windshield defrosting and defogging” in this section.

Rear window defroster



The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the rear window, while the engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

Outside rearview mirror defroster (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

Wiper deicer (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the wiper deicer, it will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

1. Fan speed control knob
2. Front windshield defroster button
3. Rear window defroster button
4. Air conditioning button
5. Air intake control button
6. Mode selection button
7. Temperature control button

✻ NOTICE

Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

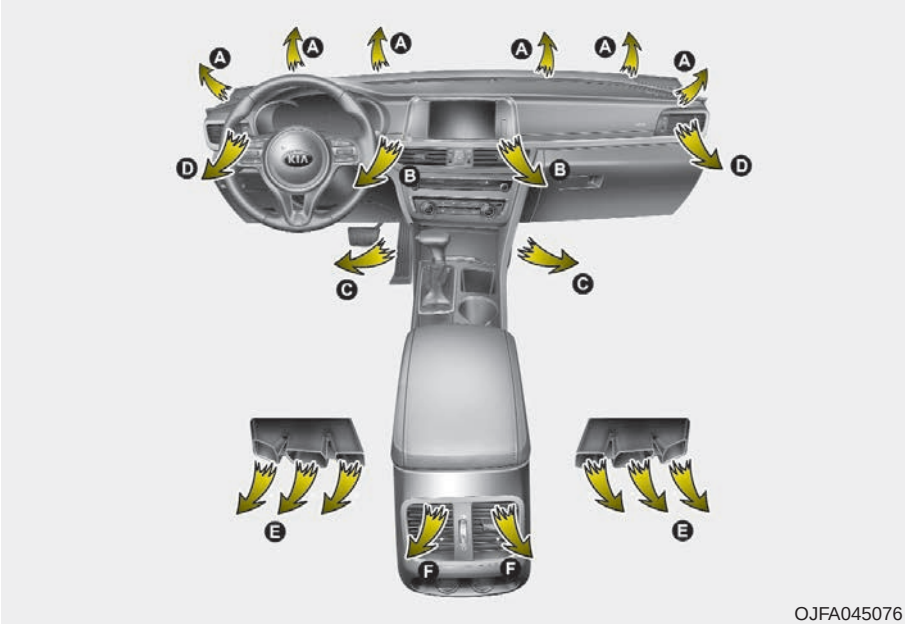
OJF045059

Heating and air conditioning

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

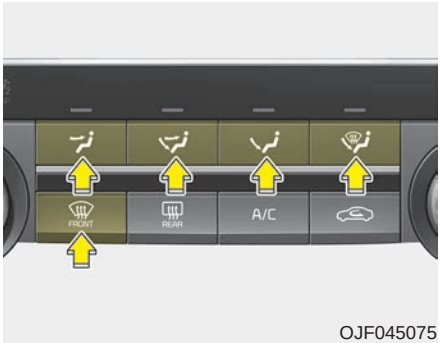
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;

   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position (if equipped).
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.



OJFA045076

Mode selection



OJF045075

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windshield. Five symbols are used to represent MAX A/C, Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air position.

The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

Face-Level (B, D)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Bi-Level (B, C, D, E, F)

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

Floor-Level (A, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

Defrost-Level (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

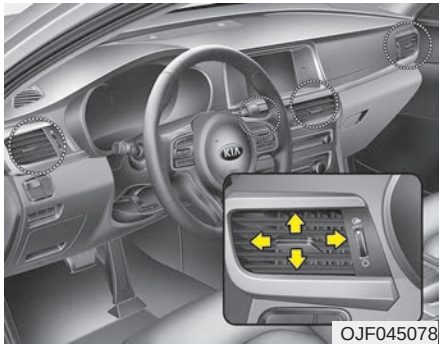
MAX A/C selection

OJF045077

The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

In this mode, the air conditioning and the recirculated air position will be selected automatically.



OJF045078

Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumb-wheel (if equipped).

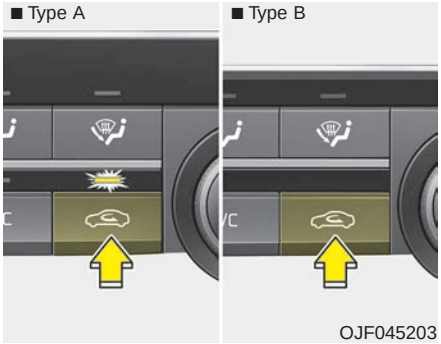
Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

Temperature control

OJF045079

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob to the right position for warm and hot air or left position for cooler air.

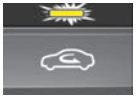
Air intake control



The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position

With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)

If the sunroof opens while the heater or Air Conditioning system operates, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically for ventilating the car. Then, if you select the recirculated air position, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically after 3 minutes.

If you close the sunroof, the intake mode will be changed to the previous selected mode.

⚠ WARNING - Reduced visibility

Continued use of the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.

⚠ WARNING - Sleeping with AC on

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on as this may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.

⚠ WARNING - Recirculated air

Continued use of the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.

Fan speed control

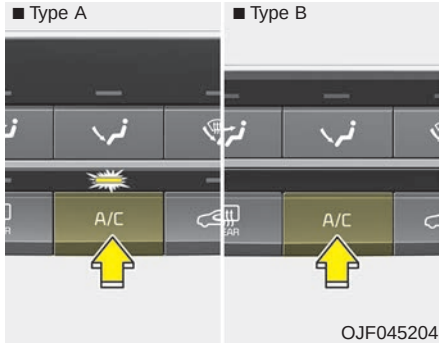
OJF045081

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.

The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.

Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.

Air conditioning



OJF045204

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with R-1234yf refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.
- The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.
- The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators should be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.

⚠ **CAUTION - Excessive AC**

When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.

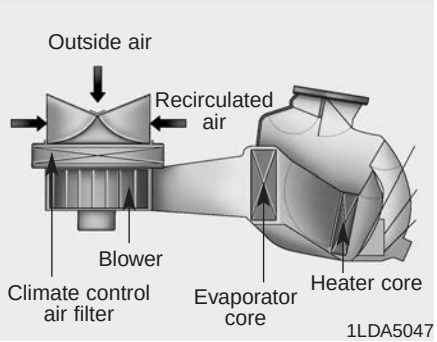
✻ **NOTICE**

When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

Climate control air filter (if equipped)



The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system should be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a negative influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

The oil and refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is under very high pressure. If proper service procedures are not followed an explosion may result. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

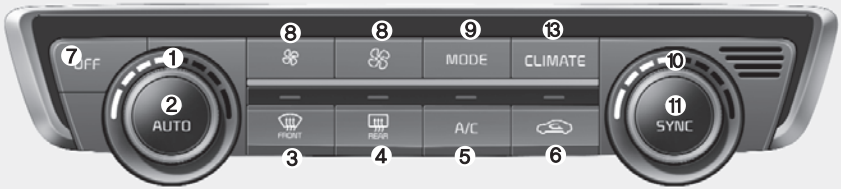
⚠ CAUTION - AC Repair

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used, otherwise damage to the vehicle may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Type A**

■ **Type B**



1. Driver's temperature control knob
2. AUTO (automatic control) button
3. Front windshield defroster button
4. Rear window defroster button
5. Air conditioning button
6. Air intake control button
7. OFF button
8. Fan speed control button
9. Mode selection button
10. Passenger's temperature control knob
11. Dual temperature control selection button
12. Climate control display
13. Climate information screen selection button

✻ NOTICE

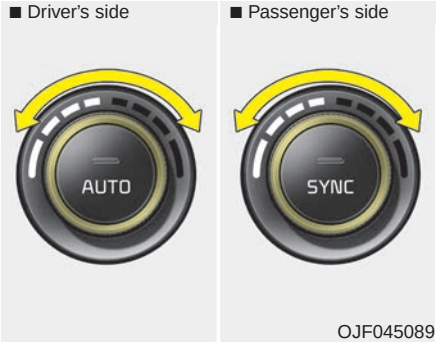
Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

OJF045083/OJF045084

Automatic heating and air conditioning

OJF045085

1. Press the AUTO button. The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by setting the temperature.



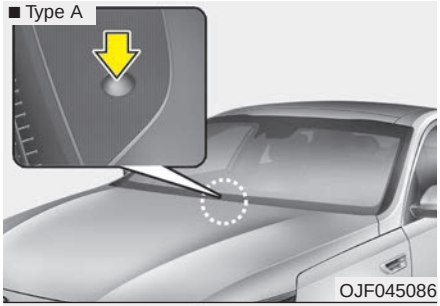
OJF045089

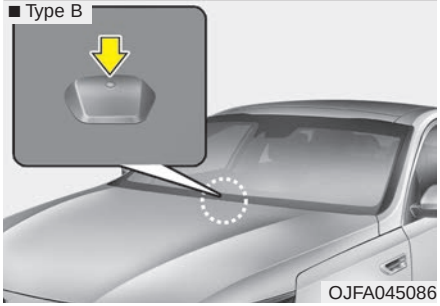
2. Turn the temperature control knob to the desired temperature.

✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button or switch of the following:**
  - **Mode selection button**
  - **Air conditioning button**
  - **Front windshield defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windshield defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)**
  - **Air intake control button**
  - **Fan speed control switch**

  The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 23°C (73°F).**





✻ NOTICE

Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons or turning knob(s) other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons or knob(s) selected.

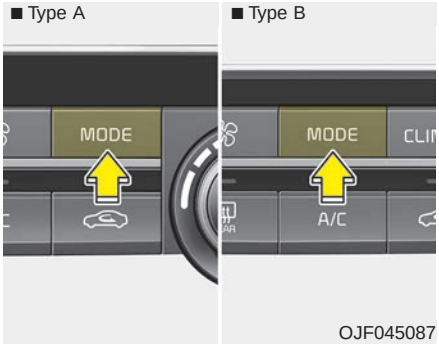
1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;

   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.

Mode selection



The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:

Refer to the illustration in the “Manual climate control system”.

Face-Level

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Bi-Level

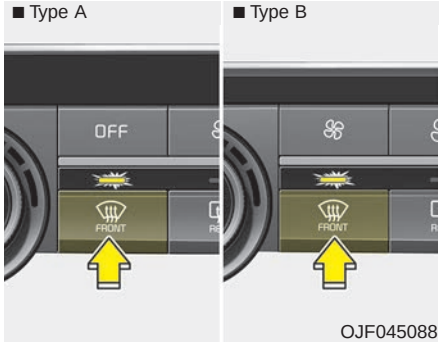
Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

Floor-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

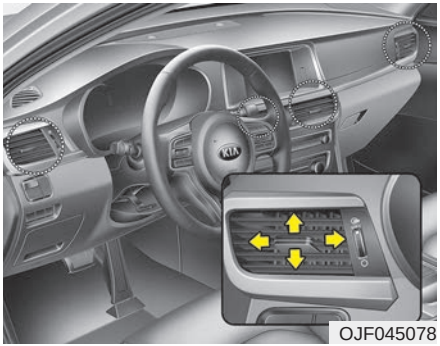
Floor/Defrost-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.



Defrost-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.



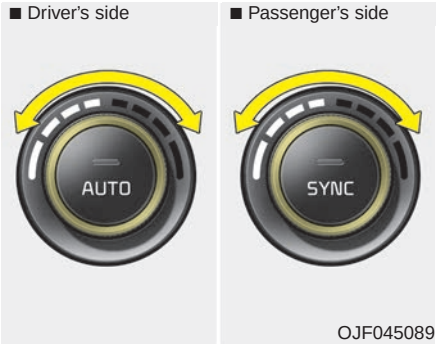
OJF045078

Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumb-wheel (if equipped).

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

Temperature control



OJF045089

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the extreme right.

The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the extreme left.

When turning the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

OJF045090

Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally

- Press the "SYNC" button to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature equally.

  The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side temperature.
- Turn the driver side temperature control knob. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually

- Press the “SYNC” button again to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature individually. The illumination of button turns off.
- Operate the driver side temperature control knob to adjust the driver side temperature.
- Operate the passenger side temperature control knob to adjust the passenger side temperature.

Temperature conversion

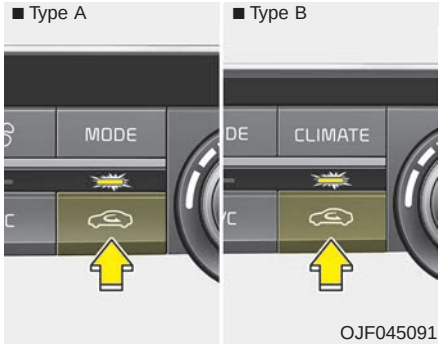
You can switch the temperature mode from Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

While pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Fahrenheit.

Air intake control



This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

Outside (fresh) air position

With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Recirculated air position

With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

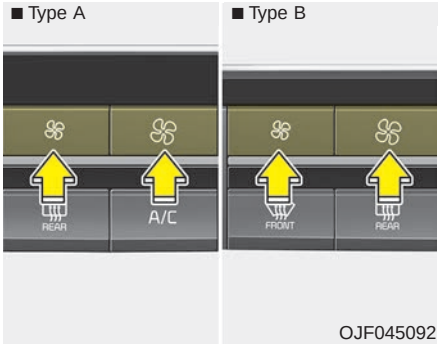
In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)

If the sunroof opens while the heater or Air Conditioning system operates, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically for ventilating the car. Then, if you select the recirculated air position, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically after 3 minutes.

If you close the sunroof, the intake mode will be changed to the previous selected mode.

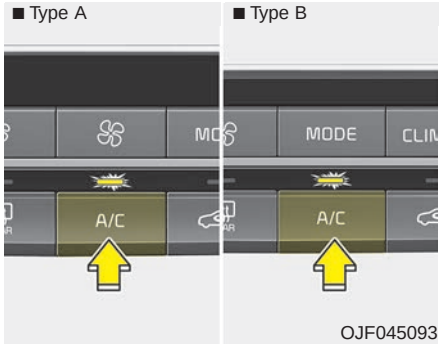
Fan speed control



The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control button.

To change the fan speed, press (✤) the button for higher speed, or push (✤) the button for lower speed. To turn the fan speed control off, press the front blower OFF button.

Air conditioning



Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

⚠ WARNING - Reduced Visibility

Continuous use of the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.

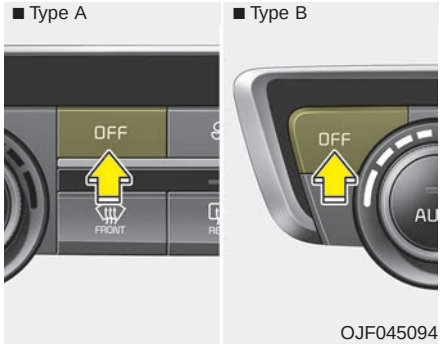
⚠ WARNING - Recirculated Air

Continued use of the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.

⚠ WARNING - Sleeping with AC on

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating on as this may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.

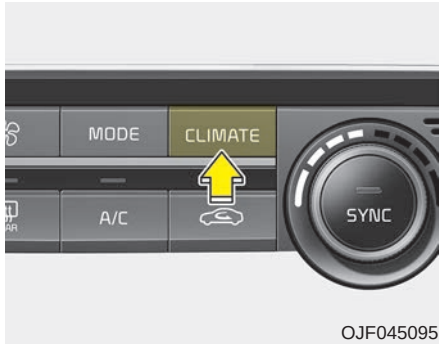
OFF mode



OJF045094

Press the front blower OFF button to turn off the front air climate control system. However, you can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

Climate information screen selection (if equipped)



OJF045095

Press the climate information screen selection button to display climate information on the screen.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

Air conditioning (if equipped)

All Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with R-1234yf refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Press the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the extreme left position, set the mode control to the MAX A/C position, then set the fan speed control to the highest speed.

⚠ **CAUTION - Excessive A/C Use**

When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.

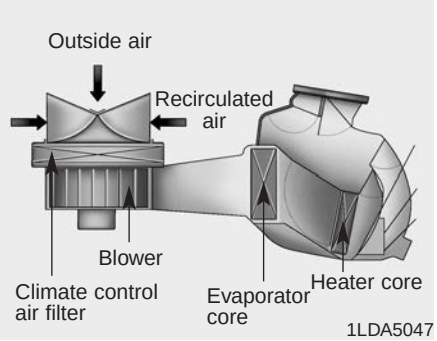
✻ NOTICE

When opening the windows in humid weather, air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

Climate control air filter (if equipped)



The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, have the climate control air filter replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles) or once a year.**
  If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent air conditioner filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, the system should be checked at an authorized Kia dealer.**

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a negative impact on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

The oil and refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is under very high pressure. If proper service procedures are not followed an explosion may result. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

⚠ CAUTION

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used, otherwise damage to the vehicle may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

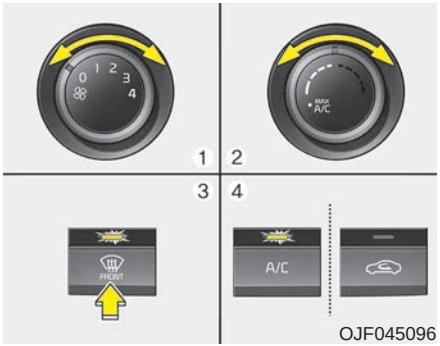
⚠ WARNING - Windshield heating

Do not use the or position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.

Manual climate control system

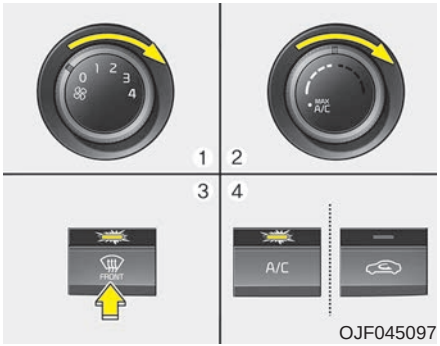
To defog inside windshield



1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the or position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

To defrost outside windshield

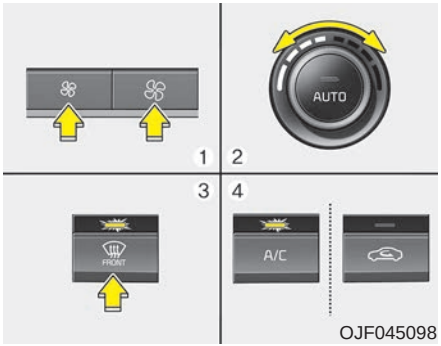


1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning is not selected automatically press the corresponding button manually.

Automatic climate control system

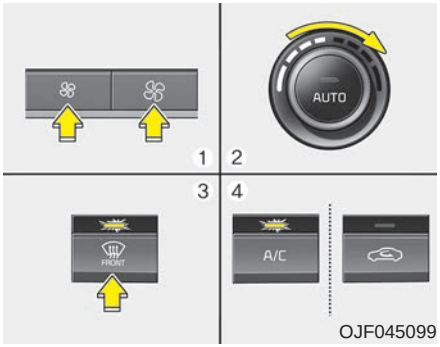
To defog inside windshield



1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

To defrost outside windshield



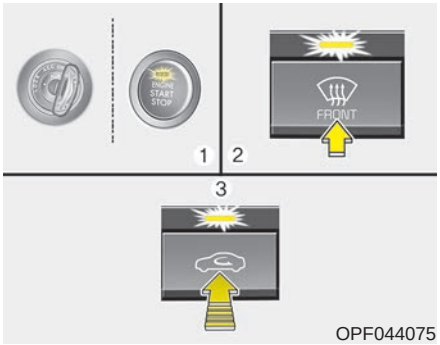
OJF045099

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

Defogging logic

To reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield, the air intake or air conditioning is controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or position. To cancel automatic defogging logic or return to the automatic defogging logic, do the following.

Manual climate control system

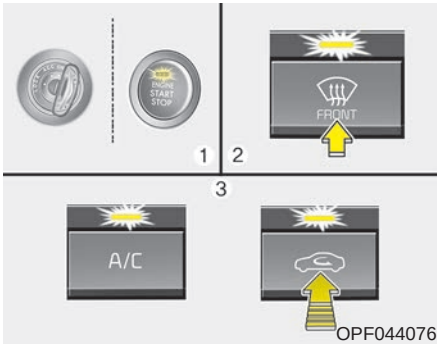


OPF044075

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button ( ).
3. Within 3 seconds after pressing the defroster button, press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

Automatic climate control system



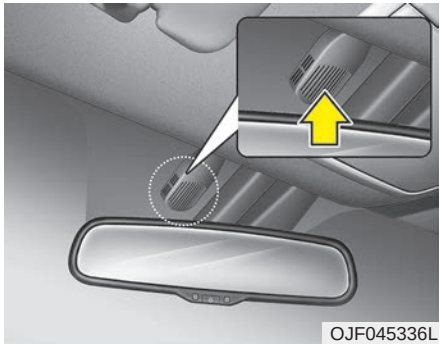
OPF044076

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button ( ).
3. While pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The recirculation indicator blinks 3 times with 0.5 second of interval. It indicates that the defogging logic is canceled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

Auto defogging system (if equipped)


OJF045336L

Auto defogging reduces the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield by automatically sensing the moisture of inside the windshield.

The auto defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture on the inside of the windshield and operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, higher steps operate as follow. For example if auto defogging does not defog inside the windshield at step 1 Outside air position, it tries to defog again at step 2 Operating the air conditioning.

Step 1 : Outside air position

Step 2 : Operating the air conditioning

Step 3 : Blowing air flow toward the windshield

Step 4 : Increasing air flow toward the windshield

To cancel or reset the Auto Defogging System

Press the front windshield defroster button for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is in the ON position. When the Auto Defogging System is canceled, ADS OFF symbol will blink 3 times and the ADS OFF will be displayed on the climate control information screen.

When the Auto Defogging System is reset, ADS OFF symbol will blink 6 times without a signal.

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to the system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Automatic Ventilation (if equipped)

When the ignition is ON or when the engine is running and the outside temperature is below 59°F (15°C), the automatic ventilation feature will activate if the recirculated air intake position is selected for more than 5 minutes while A/C is off and floor mode is selected. In this condition the air intake position will automatically switch to the outside (fresh) air intake position.

To cancel or reset the Automatic Ventilation

When the air conditioning system is on, select Face Level mode and while pressing the A/C button, press the recirculated air position button five times within three seconds.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

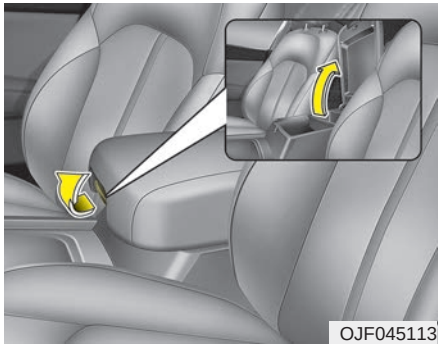
These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

- To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.
- Always keep the storage compartment covers closed while driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover can not close securely.

⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials

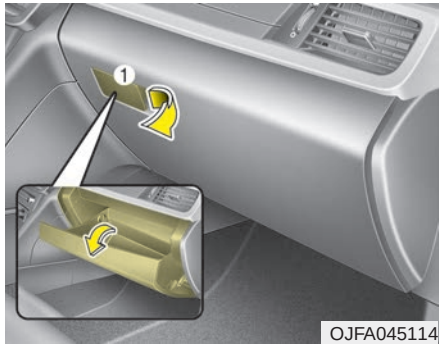
Do not store, propane cylinders or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

Center console storage



To open the center console storage, pull up the lever.

Glove box



The glove box can be locked and unlocked with a master key. (if equipped)

To open the glove box, pull the lever (1) and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

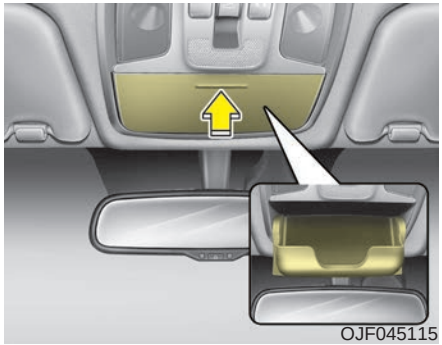
⚠ WARNING - Glove Box

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.

✻ NOTICE

If the temperature control knob is in the warm or hot position, warm or hot air will flow into the glove box.

Sunglass holder



To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses with the lenses facing out.

To close the sunglass holder push it up.

⚠ WARNING - Sunglass holder

Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Heavier objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers.

INTERIOR FEATURES

Cup holder

⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids

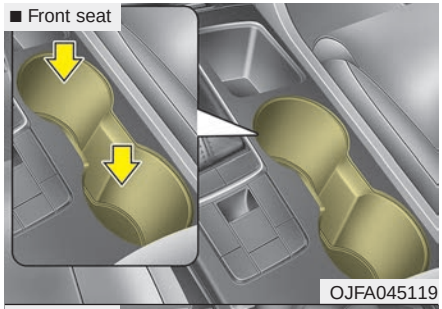
Do not place uncovered cups with hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you may burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

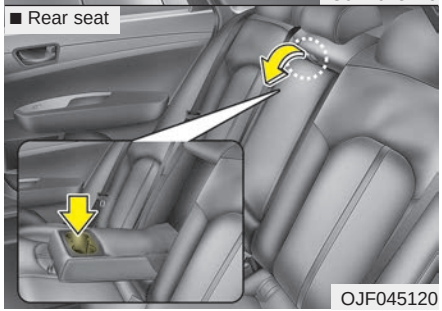
⚠ CAUTION

Keep your drinks sealed while driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.

✻ NOTICE

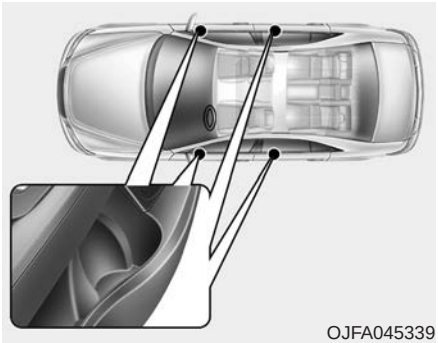
When cleaning spilled liquids, do not use heat to dry the cup holders. This may damage the cup holder.





Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

Bottle holder

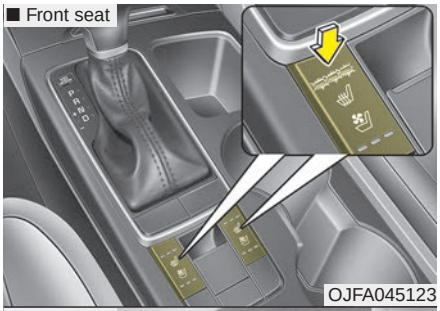


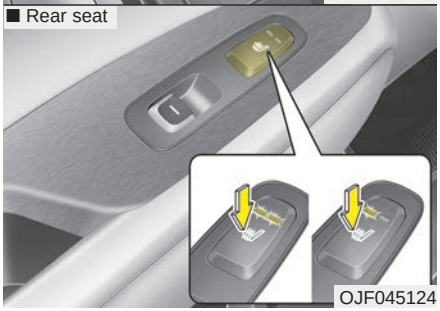
Bottles may be placed in the holder.

✻ NOTICE

Only bottles should be placed in the holder labeled "Bottles Only."

Seat warmer (if equipped)





The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat will change as follows :

■ Front seat

OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

■ Rear seat

OFF→HIGH( )→LOW( )

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

✻ NOTICE

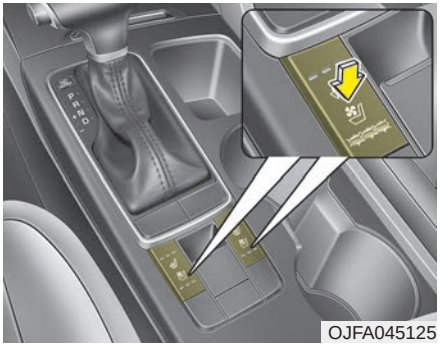
With the seat warmer switch in the ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.

⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns

The seat warmer may cause burns, even at low temperatures, if used over a long period of time. Never allow passengers who may not be able to take care of themselves to be exposed to the risk of seat heater burns. These include:

1. **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

Air ventilation seat (if equipped)



The temperature setting of the seat changes according to the switch position.

- If you want to ventilate your seat cushion, press the switch (blue color).
- Each time you press the button, the airflow will change as follows:

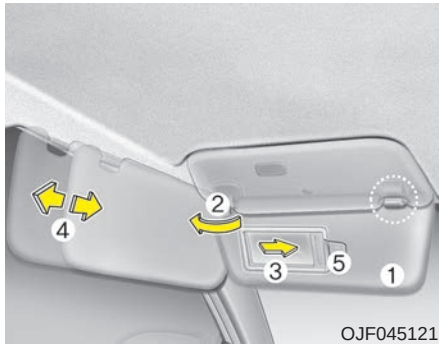
OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

- The seat warmer (with air ventilation) defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

⚠ CAUTION - Seat damage

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the air ventilation seat.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat. Those things may damage the air ventilation seat.***
- ***Be careful not to spill liquid such as water or beverages on the seat. If you spill some liquid, wipe the seat with a dry towel. Before using the air ventilation seat, dry the seat completely.***

Sunvisor



Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor extension forward or backward (4).

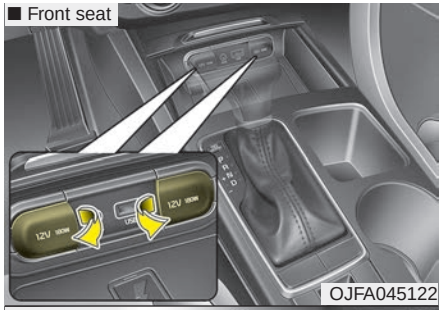
The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket.

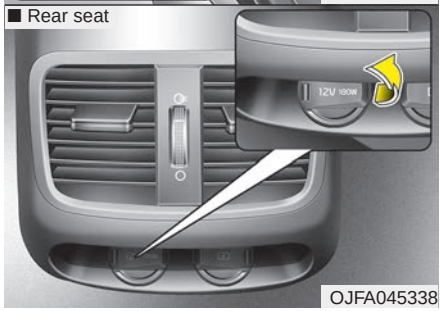
* The actual sunvisor lamp in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

⚠ **CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp**

If you use the vanity mirror lamp, turn off the lamp before returning the sunvisor to its original position, otherwise it could result in battery discharge and possible sunvisor damage.

Power outlet (if equipped)





The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

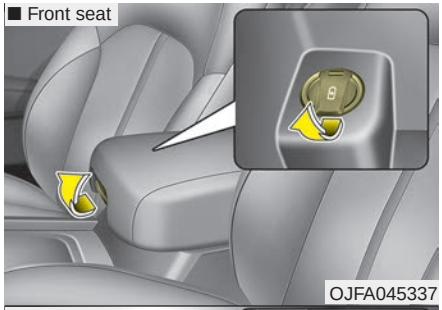
- Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.
- Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.
- Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
- Close the cover when not in use.
- Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.
- Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.

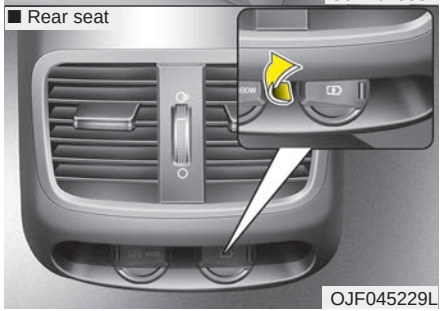
- Plug in battery equipped electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.

⚠ WARNING - Electric shock

Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pen, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may receive an electric shock.

USB charger (if equipped)





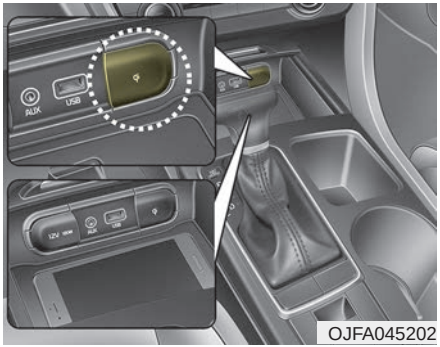
The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electrical devices using a USB cable. The electrical devices can be recharged when the Engine Start/Stop button is in ACC/ON/START position.

The battery charging state may be monitored on the electrical device.

Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.

- Some devices are not supported for fast charging but will be charged with normal speed.
- Use the USB charger when the engine is running to prevent battery discharge.
- Only devices that fit the USB port can be used.
- The USB charger can be used only for battery charging purposes.
- Battery chargers cannot be charged.

Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)



OJFA045202

A wireless smart phone charging system located in front of the center console

Firmly close all doors, and turn the ignition to ACC or IGN ON. To start wireless charging, place the smart phone equipped with wireless charging function on the wireless charging pad.

For best wireless charging results, place the smart phone on the center of the charging pad.

The wireless charging system is designed for one smart phone equipped with QI per single usage only. Please refer to the smart phone accessory cover or the smart phone manufacturer homepage to check whether your smart phone supports QI function.

Wireless smart phone charging

1. Remove any object on the smart phone charging pad including the smart key. If there is any foreign object on the pad other than a smart phone, the wireless charging function may not operate properly.
2. Place the smart phone on the center of the wireless charging pad.
3. The indicator light will change to orange once the wireless charging begins. After the charging is complete, the orange light will change to green.
4. You can choose to turn the wireless charging function to either ON or OFF by selecting the USM on the instrument cluster. (Please refer to “Instrument Cluster” for details).

If the wireless charging does not work, gently move your smart phone around the pad until the charging indicator light turns yellow. Depending on the smart phone, the charging indicator light may not turn green even after the charging is complete.

If the wireless charging is not functioning properly, the orange light will blink and flash for ten seconds then turn off. In such cases, remove the smart phone from the pad and replace it on the pad again, or double check the charging status.

If you leave the smart phone on the charging pad when the vehicle ignition is in OFF, the vehicle will alert you through warning messages and sound (applicable for vehicles with voice guidance function) after the 'Good bye' function on the instrument cluster ends.

⚠ WARNING - Distracted driving

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION - Liquid in Wireless Smart Phone Charger

Securely close the tray cover when charging your phone to prevent liquid from damaging the wireless smart phone charging system.

⚠ CAUTION - Metal in Wireless Charging System

If any metallic object such as coins is located between the wireless charging system and the smart phone, the charging may be disrupted. Also, the metallic object may heat up and potentially damage the charging system. If there is any metallic object between the smart phone and the charging pad, immediately remove the smart phone. Remove the metallic object after it has cooled down.

✻ NOTICE

- **If it is not possible to close the tray cover due to the size of your smart phone or because the tray cover has been broken, do not use the wireless smart phone charging function.**
- **When the interior temperature of the wireless charging system rises above a set temperature, the wireless charging will cease to function. After the interior temperature drops below the threshold, the wireless charging function will resume.**
- **The wireless charging may not function properly when there is a heavy accessory cover on the smart phone.**
- **The wireless charging will stop when using the wireless smart key search function to prevent radio wave disruption.**
- **The wireless charging will stop when the smart key is moved out of the vehicle with the ignition in ON.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

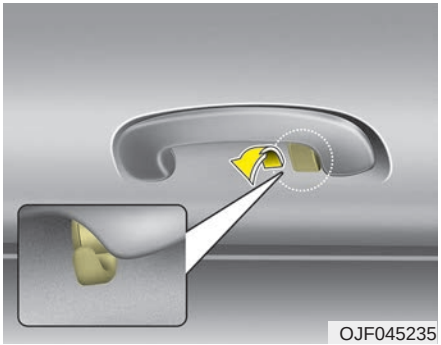
- **The wireless charging will stop when any of the doors is opened (applicable for vehicles equipped with smart keys).**
- **The wireless charging will stop when the vehicle is turned OFF.**
- **The wireless charging will stop when the smart phone is not in complete contact with the wireless charging pad.**
- **Items equipped with magnetic components such as credit card, telephone card, bankbook, any transportation ticket and such may become damaged during wireless charging.**
- **Place the smart phone on the center of the charge pad for best results. The smart phone may not charge when placed near the rim of the charging pad. When the smart phone does get charged, it may heat up excessively.**
- **For smart phones without built-in wireless charging system, an appropriate accessory has to be equipped.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Smart phones of some manufacturers may display messages on weak current. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and does not imply a malfunction on wireless charging function.**
- **The indicator light of some manufacturers' smart phones may still be yellow after the smart phone is fully charged. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.**
- **When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.**

Coat hook (if equipped)



❊ This actual feature may differ from the illustration.

To use the coat hook, pull down the upper portion of coat hook.

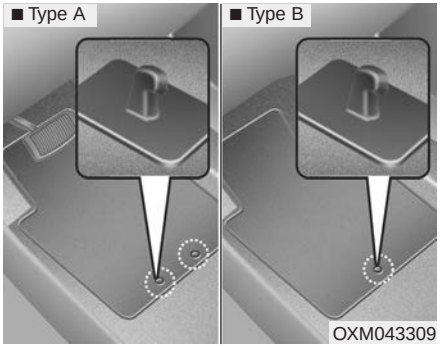
⚠ CAUTION - Hanging clothing

Do not hang heavy clothes, since those may damage the hook.

⚠ WARNING

Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothe pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

Floor mat anchor (s) (if equipped)



When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

⚠ WARNING - After market floor mat

Do not install aftermarket floor mats that are not capable of being securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.

Unsecured floor mats can interfere with pedal operation.

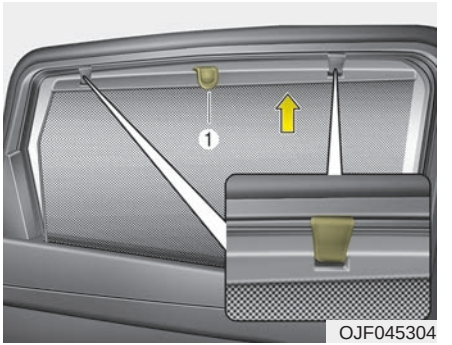
The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.

✻ NOTICE

Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Kia recommends that only the Kia floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

Side curtain (if equipped)



To use the side curtain:

1. Lift the curtain by the handle (1).
2. Hang the curtain on the hooks on both sides of the handle.

To avoid injury or damage to the side curtain and door moldings, lower side curtain by the handle all the way back to the stowed position. Do not release handle after disengaging from the hooks on the door.

Audio system

Audio System 5-2
- Antenna 5-2
- Steering wheel audio controls. 5-3
- AUX, USB port 5-4
- How vehicle audio works 5-5

Audio (Without Touch Screen) 5-8
- Features of Your Audio 5-9
- Radio Mode 5-22
- SiriusXM Radio Mode 5-24
- Media Mode 5-26
- Phone Mode 5-32
- Voice Recognition Mode 5-37
- Setup Mode 5-46

Audio (With Touch Screen). 5-57
- Features of Your Audio 5-58
- Radio Mode 5-69
- SiriusXM Radio Mode 5-72
- Media Mode 5-74
- Phone Mode 5-89
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology. 5-90
- Voice Recognition Mode 5-97
- Setup Mode 5-105

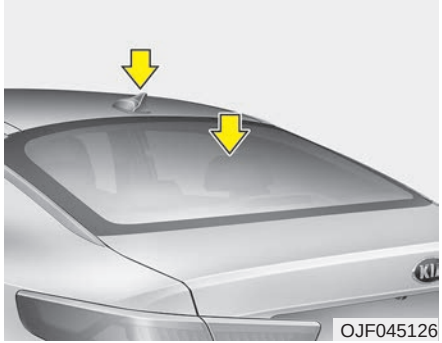
Declaration of Conformity. 5-114
- IC. 5-114

AUDIO SYSTEM

✻ NOTICE

If you install an after market HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.

Antenna



Glass antenna (if equipped)

When the radio power switch is turned on while the ignition switch is in either the "ON" or "ACC" position, your car will receive both AM and FM broadcast signals through the antenna in the rear window glass.

Shark fin antenna (if equipped)

The shark fin antenna will receive the transmit data.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not clean the inside of the rear window glass with a cleaner or use a scraper to remove foreign deposits as this may cause damage to the antenna elements.***
- ***Avoid adding metallic coatings such as Ni, Cd, and so on. These can disturb receiving AM and FM broadcast signals.***
- ***To prevent damage to the rear glass antenna, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window. Clean the inside surface of the rear glass window with a piece of soft cloth.***

(Continued)

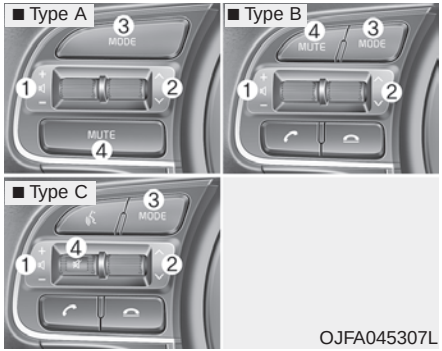
(Continued)

- ***When putting a sticker on the inside surface of the rear window, be careful not to damage to the rear glass antenna.***
- ***Do not put sharp instruments nearby the rear glass antenna.***

✻ NOTICE

Tinted rear window may affect the proper functioning of the antenna.

Steering Wheel Audio Controls (if equipped)



The steering wheel may incorporate audio control buttons.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOLUME (+ / –) (1)

- Press the lever upward (+) to increase the volume.
- Press the lever downward (–) to decrease the volume.

SEEK/PRESET (∧ / ∨) (2)

The SEEK/PRESET button has different functions based on the system mode. For the following functions the button should be pressed for 0.8 seconds or more.

RADIO mode

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button.

CD/USB/iPod® mode

It will function as the FF/REW button.

If the SEEK/PRESET button is pressed for less than 0.8 seconds, it will work as follows in each mode.

RADIO mode

It will function as the PRESET STATION buttons.

CD/USB/iPod® mode

It will function as TRACK UP/DOWN button.

MODE (3)

Press the button to change audio source.

FM(1~2) ➞ AM ➞ SAT(1~3) ➞ CD ➞ USB (iPod®) ➞ AUX ➞ MY MUSIC ➞ BT Audio ➞ FM...

In addition to mode change, Power on/off can be made by pressing this button when the ignition switch is on ACC or ON.

- Power ON: Press the button when the audio is off
- Power OFF: Press the button for more than 0.8 seconds when the audio is on.

MUTE (4, if equipped)

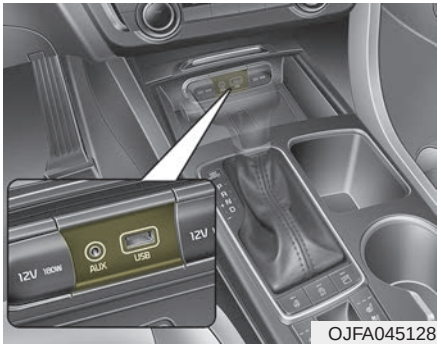
- Press the button to mute the sound.
- Press the button to turn off the microphone during a telephone call.

Detailed information for audio control buttons are described in the following pages in this section.

⚠ WARNING - Distracted driving

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

AUX, USB port



OJFA045128

If your vehicle has an AUX and/or USB(universal serial bus) port, you can use the AUX port to connect audio devices and the USB port to plug in a USB device or iPod®.

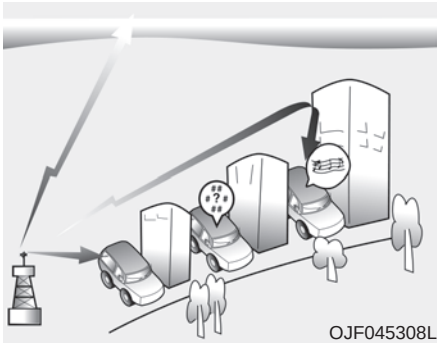
✻ NOTICE

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.

* iPod® is a Registered trademark of Apple Inc.

How Vehicle Audio Works

FM reception

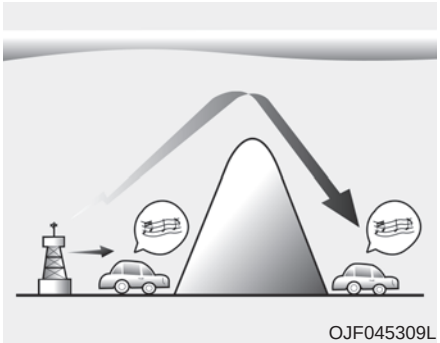


AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then processed by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

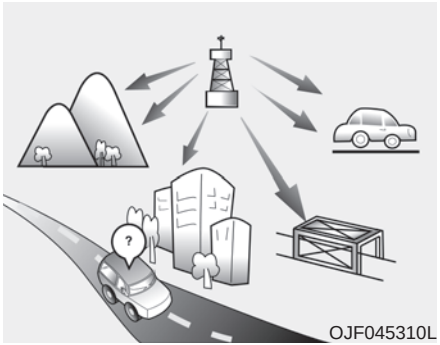
This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

AM reception



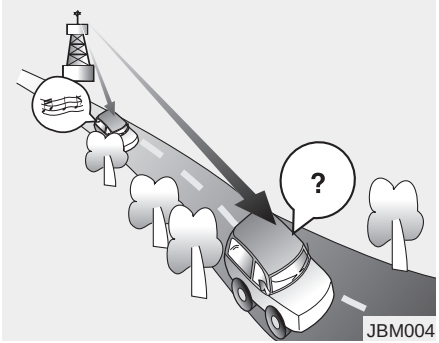
AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long distance,low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight. In addition, they curve around obstructions resulting in better signal coverage.

FM radio station



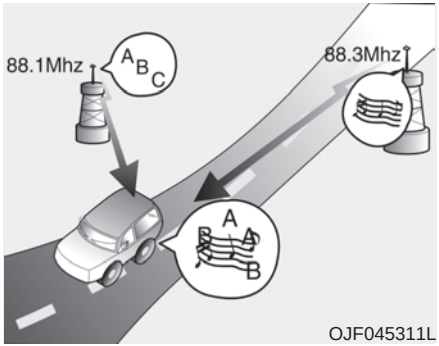
OJF045310L

FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade within short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, and obstructions. This can lead to undesirable or unpleasant listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:



JBM004

- Fading - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another station with a stronger signal.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



OJF045311L

- Station Swapping - As an FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, try to operate mobile devices as far from the audio equipment as possible.

When using a communication system such as a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Cell phone use

Do not use a cellular phone while driving. Stop at a safe location to use a cellular phone.

AUDIO (Without Touch Screen)

■ Type B

(With *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology)

D5H3G0000EC

Features of Your Audio

Head unit

❊ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **EJECT**

- Ejects the disc.

(2) **RADIO**

- Changes to FM/AM/SiriusXM mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➞ FM2 ➞ AM ➞ SAT1 ➞ SAT2 ➞ SAT3.
- In Setup>Display, the radio pop up screen will be displayed when [Mode Pop up] is turned [On]. When the pop up screen is displayed, use the **TUNE** knob or Preset buttons to select the desired mode.

(3) **MEDIA**

- Changes to CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music, BT Audio mode.
- Each time button is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music, BT (Bluetooth®) Audio.
- In Setup>Display, the media pop up screen will be displayed when [Mode Pop up] is turned [On]. When the pop up screen is displayed, use the **TUNE** knob or Preset buttons to select the desired mode.

(4) **PHONE**

- Operates Phone Screen.
- When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(5) **SEEK TRACK**

- Radio mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode
  - Shortly press the button : Moves to next or previous song (file).
  - Press and hold the button : Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.
- Bluetooth® Audio mode : Moves to next or previous song(file).
  - The Play/Pause feature may operate differently depending on the mobile phone.

(6) **POWER/VOL** knob

- Power knob : Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob : Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

(7) **[1] ~ [6]** (Preset)

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels) or receives saved frequencies (channels).
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode
  - **[RPT]** : Repeat
  - **[RDM]** : Random

In the Radio, Media, Setup, and Menu pop up screen, the number menu is selected.

(8) **DISP**

- Each time the button is shortly pressed, sets the Screen Off ➞ Screen On ➞ Screen Off.
- Audio operation is maintained and only the Screen will be turned Off.
- In the Screen Off state, press any button to turn the Screen On again.

(9) **SCAN**

- Radio mode
  - Shortly press the button : Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each.
  - Press and hold the button : Previews the broadcasts saved in Preset **[1]** ~ **[6]** for 5 seconds each.
  - Press the **[SCAN]** button again to continue listening to the current frequency.
  - SAT Radio does not support the Preset scan feature.
- CD, USB, My Music mode
  - Shortly press the button : Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.
  - Press the **[SCAN]** button again to continue listening to the current song (file).

(10) **SETUP/CLOCK**

- Moves to the Display, Sound, Clock, Phone, System setting modes.

(11) **MENU**

- Displays menus for the current mode.
- iPod® List : Move to parent category.

(12) **CAT/FOLDER**

- Radio mode
  - SiriusXM RADIO : Category Search.
- MP3 CD, USB mode
  - Folder Search

(13) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode : Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode : Searches songs (files) by turning the knob left/right.

  When the desired song is displayed, press the knob to play the song.
- Moves focus in all selection menus and selects menus.

✻ NOTICE - Using Compact Discs

- If the temperature inside the car is too high, open the car windows to ventilate before using the system.
- It is illegal to copy and use MP3/WMA files without permission. Use CDs that are created only by lawful means.
- Do not apply volatile agents, such as benzene and thinner, normal cleaners and magnetic sprays made for audio cassettes onto CDs.
- To prevent the disc surface from getting damaged, hold CDs by the edges or the center hole only.
- Clean the disc surface with a piece of soft cloth before playback (wipe it from the center to the outside edge).
- Do not damage the disc surface or attach pieces of sticky tape or paper.
- Make certain only CDs are inserted into the CD player (Do not insert more than one CD at a time).
- Keep CDs in their cases after use to protect them from scratches or dirt.
- Depending on the type of CD-R/CD-RW CDs, certain CDs may not operate normally depending on manufacturing company or recording methods.

✻ NOTICE - Playing an Incompatible Copy Protected Audio CD

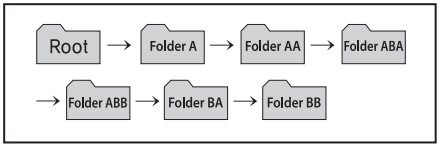
Some copy protected CDs, which do not comply with international audio CD standards (Red Book), may not play on your car audio. Please note that inabilities to properly play a copy protected CD may indicate that the CD is defective, not the CD player.

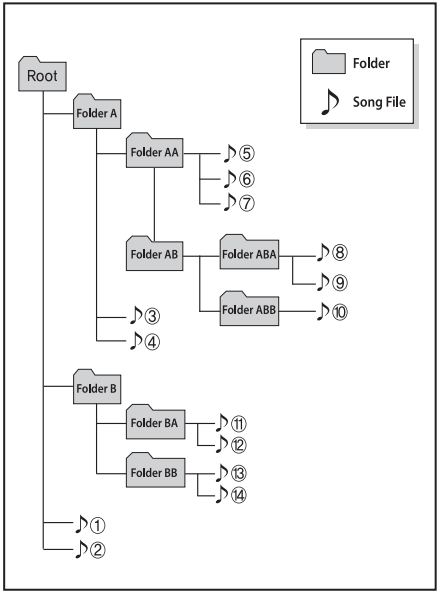
NOTE:

Order of playing files (folders) :

1. **Song playing order : ① to ⑭ sequentially.**
2. **Folder playing order :**

✻ If no song file is contained in the folder, that folder is not displayed.





WARNING
- Audio System Safety Warnings

- Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.
- Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.
- Using the phone while driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.
- Exercise caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.
- Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.
- Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.

WARNING - Distracted Driving

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance center. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.**
- **Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.***
- ***When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration***
- ***Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.***
- ***Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.***

✻ NOTICE

In case of product malfunction, please contact your dealer or vehicle service center.

✻ NOTICE - Using USB Devices

- To use an external USB device, make sure the device is not connected when starting up the vehicle. Connect the device after starting up.
- If you start the engine when the USB device is connected, it may damage the USB device. (USB flashdrives are very sensitive to electric shock.)
- If the engine is started up or turned off while the external USB device is connected, the external USB device may not work.
- The System may not play unauthenticated MP3 or WMA files.
  1) It can only play MP3 files with the compression rate between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps.
  2) It can only play WMA music files with the compression rate between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps.
- Take precautions for static electricity when connecting or disconnecting the external USB device.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- An encrypted MP3 PLAYER is not recognizable.
- Depending on the condition of the external USB device, the connected external USB device can be unrecognizable.
- When the formatted byte/sector setting of External USB device is not either 512BYTE or 2048BYTE, then the device will not be recognized.
- Use only a USB device formatted to FAT 12/16/32.
- USB devices without USB I/F authentication may not be recognizable.
- Make sure the USB connection terminal does not come in contact with the human body or other objects.
- If you repeatedly connect or disconnect the USB device in a short period of time, it may break the device.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- You may hear a strange noise when connecting or disconnecting a USB device.
- If you disconnect the external USB device during playback in USB mode, the external USB device can be damaged or may malfunction. Therefore, disconnect the external USB device when the audio is turned off or in another mode. (e.g, Radio)
- Depending on the type and capacity of the external USB device or the type of files stored in the device, there is a difference in the time for recognition the device.
- Do not use the USB device for purposes other than playing music files.
- Playing videos through the USB is not supported.
- Use of USB accessories such as rechargers or heaters using USB I/F may lower performance or cause trouble.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- If you use devices such as a USB hub purchased separately, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB device. In that case, connect the USB device directly to the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.
- If the USB device is divided by logical drives, only the music files on the highest-priority drive are recognized by car audio.
- Devices such as MP3 Player/ Cellular phone/Digital camera can be unrecognizable by standard USB I/F.
- Charging through the USB may not be supported in some mobile devices.
- USB HDD or USB types liable to connection failures due to vehicle vibrations are not supported. (i-stick type)
- Some non-standard USB devices (METAL COVER TYPE USB) can be unrecognizable.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some USB flash memory readers (such as CF, SD, micro SD, etc.) or external-HDD type devices can be unrecognizable.
- Music files protected by DRM (DIGITAL RIGHTS MANAGEMENT) are not recognizable.
- The data in the USB memory may be lost while using this audio. Always back up important data on a personal storage device.
- Please avoid using USB memory products which can be used as key chains or cellular phone accessories as they could cause damage to the USB jack. Please make certain only to use plug type connector products.

✻ NOTICE - Using iPod® Device

iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple inc.

- Some iPod® models may not support communication protocol and files may not play properly.
  Supported iPod® models :
  - iPhone® 3GS/4
  - iPod® touch 1st~4th generation
  - iPod® nano 1st~6th generation
  - iPod® classic
- The order of search or playback of songs in the iPod® can be different from the order searched in the audio system.
- If the iPod® is disabled due to its own malfunction, reset the iPod®. (Reset : Refer to iPod® manual)
- An iPod® may not operate normally on low battery.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Some iPod® devices, such as the iPhone®, can be connected through the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology interface. The device must have audio *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology capability (such as for stereo headphone *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology). The device can play, but it will not be controlled by the audio system.**
- **To use iPod® features within the audio mode, use the cable provided upon purchasing an iPod® device.**
- **Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.**
- **If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, only iPod® mode will be supported during Bluetooth® Audio Streaming. To use Bluetooth® Audio Streaming, disconnect iPod® cable with iPhone®.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When connecting iPod® with the iPod® Power Cable, insert the connector to the multimedia socket completely. If not inserted completely, communications between iPod® and audio may be interrupted.**
- **When adjusting the sound effects of the iPod® and the audio system, the sound effects of both devices will overlap and might reduce or distort the quality of the sound.**
- **Deactivate (turn off) the equalizer function of an iPod® when adjusting the audio system's volume, and turn off the equalizer of the audio system when using the equalizer of an iPod®.**
- **When not using iPod® with car audio, detach the iPod® cable from iPod®. Otherwise, iPod® may remain in accessory mode, and may not work properly.**
- **Use an iPod®/iPhone® USB cable shorter than 1 meter in length, longer cables cannot be recognized.**

✻ NOTICE - Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Cellular Phone

- ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phones through the audio system.**
- ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology allows devices to be connected in a short distance, including hands-free devices, stereo headsets, wireless remote controllers, etc. For more information, visit the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology website at www.Bluetooth.com. Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features.**
- **The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. A Bluetooth® enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.**
  - **Answering and placing *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree calls**
  - **Menu operation during call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Outgoing volume)**
  - **Download Call History**
  - **Download Mobile Phone book**
  - **Phone book/Call History Auto Download**
  - ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology device auto connection**
  - ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology Audio**
- **Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features of the audio system, refer your phone's User's Manual for phone-side *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology operations.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The phone must be paired to the audio system to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features.**
- **Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone will work only when the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology option within your mobile phone has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the mobile phone.)**
- **Do not use a cellular phone or perform *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology settings (e.g. pairing a phone) while driving.**
- **Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology power prior to searching/connecting with the car audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the cellular service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in an underground location, in a mountainous area, etc.).**
- **If the cellular phone signal is poor or the vehicle's interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.**
- **Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology system or cellular service stations can be disturbed.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**
- **Some cellular phones or other devices may cause interference noise or a malfunction to the audio system. In this case, storing the device in a different location may resolve the condition.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **While a phone is connected through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology-related operations.**
- **If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone, try the following.**

1) **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your mobile phone.**
2) **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **To turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system, go to [SETUP/CLOCK] > [Phone] and [turn off] the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.**

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.**

1) **Turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone off/on and try again.**
2) **Turn the mobile phone power Off/On and try again.**
3) **Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then again.**
4) **Reboot the audio system and try again.**
5) **Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.**

- **It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices to the car system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)
- Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.
- The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.
- Only one *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.
- In some mobile phones, starting the ignition while talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected. (Switch the call back to your mobile phone when starting the ignition.)
- If the mobile phone is not paired or connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. Once a phone is paired or connected, the guidance screen will be displayed.
- Bluetooth® Handsfree may not be supported in some mobile phones.

✻ NOTICE

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree is a feature that enables drivers to practice safe driving. Connecting the car audio system with a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phone book. Before using the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.

⚠ WARNING

- Excessive use or operations while driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents.
- Do not operate the device excessively while driving.
- Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time while driving is dangerous and may lead to accidents.

✻ NOTICE - Using Voice Recognition

- **When using the voice recognition feature, only commands listed within the user's manual are supported.**
- **Be aware that during the operation of the voice recognition system, pressing any button other than the button terminates voice recognition mode.**
- **For optimal voice recognition performance, position your head below the microphone above the driver's seat and maintain proper position when speaking voice commands.**
- **Within the following situations, voice recognition may not function properly due to external sound.**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the blower AC/heater is set to high**
  - **When entering and passing through tunnels**
  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads**
  - **During severe rain (heavy rains, windstorms)**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Phone related voice commands can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected.**
- **When making calls by stating a name, the corresponding contact must be downloaded and stored within the audio system.**
- **After downloading the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, it takes some times to convert the phone book data into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not properly operate.**
- **Pronounce the voice commands naturally and clearly as if in a normal conversation.**

Radio Mode

With the Radio Mode Button

SEEK

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button.

- Shortly pressing the button : Automatically searches for the next station.
- Pressing and holding the button : While holding the button, frequency changes without stopping. When the button is released, automatically searches for the next frequency from that point.

Preset SEEK

Press the **[1]** ~ **[6]** button.

- Shortly pressing the button : Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button : Pressing and holding the desired button from **[1]** ~ **[6]** will save the currently playing broadcast to the selected button and sound a BEEP.

SCAN

Press the **[SCAN]** button.

- Shortly pressing the button : The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.
- Pressing and holding the button : Previews the broadcasts saved in Preset **[1]** ~ **[6]** for 5 seconds each.

Selecting through manual search

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to adjust the frequency.

MENU : Radio

Within **[MENU]** button is the A.Store (Auto Store).

A.Store (Auto Store) : [1] Button

Select A.Store (Auto Store) to save frequencies with superior reception to presets **[1]** ~ **[6]**. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

SiriusXM® Satellite Radio information

Satellite Radio channels :

Enjoy SiriusXM Satellite Radio with a 3-month trial subscription to the Sirius Select package. You'll get over 140 channels, including commercial-free music, plus all your favorite sports, exclusive talk, entertainment, and a selection of premium programming. For more information and a complete list of SiriusXM channels, visit siriusxm.com in the United States, siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite Radio reception factors :

To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance :

- Antenna obstructions : For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

SiriusXM Satellite Radio service :

SiriusXM is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming to radio receivers, which are available for installation in motor vehicles or factory installed, as well as for the home, portable and wireless devices, and through an Internet connection on a personal computer.

Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SiriusXM Satellite Radio system include :

- Hardware and an introductory trial subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.
- For a small upgrade fee, access to SiriusXM music channels, and other select channels over the Internet using any computer connected to the Internet (U.S. customers only).

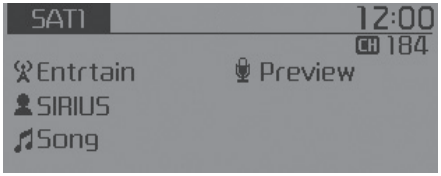
For information on extended subscription terms, contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

NOTE :

SiriusXM services require a subscription sold separately, or as a package, by Sirius XM Radio Inc. If you decide to continue service after your trial, the subscription plan you choose will automatically renew thereafter and you will be charged according to your chosen payment method at then-current rates. Fees and taxes apply. To cancel you must call SiriusXM at 1-866-635-2349. See SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at www.siriusxm.com. SiriusXM U.S. satellite and data services are available only in the 48 contiguous states, DC and Puerto Rico (with coverage limitations). SiriusXM satellite service is also available in Canada; see www.siriusxm. ca. All fees and programming subject to change. Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc.

SiriusXM Radio Mode

Using SiriusXM Satellite Radio



Your Kia vehicle is equipped with a 3-month trial subscription to SiriusXM so you have access to over 140 channels of music, information, and entertainment programming.

Activation

In order to extend or reactivate your Sirius Select subscription, you will need to contact SiriusXM Customer Care at 1-800-643-2112. Have your 12-digit RID (Radio Identification Number) / ESN (Electronic Serial Number) ready. To retrieve the RID / ESN, turn on the radio, press the **[RADIO]** button, and tune to channel zero.

Please note that the vehicle will need to be turned on, in Sirius mode, and have an unobstructed view of the sky in order for the radio to receive the activation signal.

SEEK

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button.

- Shortly pressing the button : Select previous or next channel.
- Pressing and holding the button : Continuously move to previous or next channel.
- If the “Category” icon is displayed, channels are changed within the current category.

SCAN

Press the **[SCAN]** button.

- Shortly pressing the button : Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each.
- Press the **[SCAN]** button again to continue listening to the current frequency.
- If the “Category” icon is displayed, channels are changed within the current category.

Category

Press the **[CAT/FOLDER]** button.

- The display will indicate the category menus, highlight the category that the current channel belongs to.
- In the Category List Mode, press the **[CAT/FOLDER]** button to navigate category list.
- Press the tune knob to select the lowest channel in the highlighted category.
- If channel is selected by selecting category, then the “CATEGORY” icon is displayed at the top of the screen.

Preset

Press the **[1]** ~ **[6]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : Plays the channel saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button : Pressing and holding the desired button from **[1]** ~ **[6]** will save the current broadcast to the selected button and sound a BEEP.

✻ Troubleshooting

1. Antenna Error

If this message is displayed, the antenna or antenna cable is broken or unplugged. Please consult with your Kia dealership.

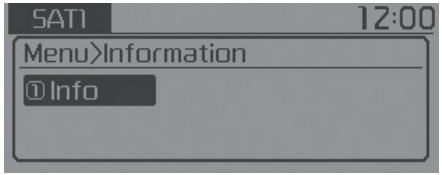
2. No Signal

If this message is displayed, it means that the antenna is covered and that the SiriusXM Satellite Radio signal is not available. Ensure the antenna is uncovered and has a clear view of the sky.

Tune

- Rotate **TUNE** knob : Changes the channel number or scrolls category list.
- Press **TUNE** knob : Selects the menu.

Menu : SiriusXM Radio



Press the **[MENU]** button.

Info (Information) : [1] Button

Displays the Artist/Song info of the current song.

Media Mode

With the Media Mode Button

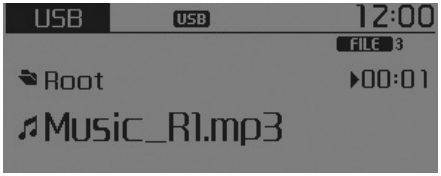
Press the **[MEDIA]** button to change the mode in order of CD ➞ USB(iPod®) ➞ AUX ➞ My Music ➞ BT Audio.

The folder/file name is displayed on the screen.

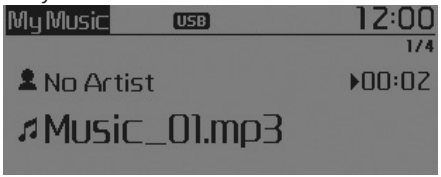
■ Audio CD Mode

■ MP3 CD Mode

■ USB Mode



■ My Music Mode



The CD is automatically played when a CD is inserted.

The USB music is automatically played when a USB is connected.

Repeat

While song (file) is playing ▶ **[RPT]** button

Audio CD, MP3 CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode : RPT on screen

- To repeat one song (press the button) : Repeats the current song.

MP3 CD, USB mode : FLD.RPT on screen

- To repeat folder (press the button twice) : repeats all files within the current folder.

Press the **[RPT]** button again to turn off repeat.

Random

While song (file) is playing ▶ **[RDM]** button

Audio CD, My Music mode: RDM on screen

- Random (press the button) : Plays all songs in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode : FLD.RDM on screen

- Folder Random (press the button) : Plays all files within the current folder in random order.

iPod® mode : ALL RDM on screen

- All Random (press the button) : Plays all files in random order.

MP3 CD, USB : ALL RDM on screen

- All Random (press the button twice) : Plays all files in random order.

Press the **[RDM]** button again to turn off random.

Changing Song/File

While song (file) is playing ▶ **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : Plays the current song from the beginning.

If the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button is pressed again within 2 seconds, the previous song is played.

- Pressing and holding the button : Rewinds the song.

While song (file) is playing ▶ **[SEEK TRACK ∧]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the button : Fast forwards the song.

Scan

While song (file) is playing ▶ **[SCAN]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : Scans all songs from the next song for 10 seconds each.
- Press the **[SCAN]** button again to turn off.
- The SCAN function is not supported in iPod® mode.

Folder Search (Only MP3 CD, USB mode)

While file is playing ▶ **[FOLDER ∧]** button

- Searches the next folder.

While file is playing ▶ **[FOLDER ∨]** button

- Searches the parent folder.

If a folder is selected by pressing the **TUNE** knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

In iPod® mode, moves to the Parent Folder.

Searching Songs/Files

- Turning **TUNE** knob : Searches for songs (files)
- Pressing **TUNE** knob : Plays selected song (file).

MENU : Audio CD

Press the Audio CD mode **[MENU]** button to set the Repeat, Random, Information features.

Repeat : [1] Button

Repeat the current song.

Press RPT again to turn off.

Random : [2] Button

Randomly play songs within the current CD.

Press RDM again to turn off.

Information : [3] Button

Display information of the current song.

Press the **[MENU]** button to turn off info display.

MENU : MP3 CD / USB

Press the MP3 CD / USB mode **[MENU]** button to set the Repeat, Folder Random, Folder Repeat, All Random, Information, and Copy features.

Repeat : [1] Button

Repeat the current song.

Press RPT again to turn off.

Folder Random : [2] Button

Randomly play songs within the current folder.

Press F.RDM again to turn off.

Folder Repeat : [3] Button

Repeat songs within the current folder.

Press F.RPT again to turn off.

All Random : [4] Button

Randomly play all songs within the CD/USB.

Press A.RDM again to turn off.

Information : [5] Button

Display information of the current song.

Press the **[MENU]** button to turn off info display.

Copy : [6] Button

This is used to copy the current song into My Music. You can play the copied Music in My Music mode.

If another button is pressed while copying is in progress, a pop up asking you whether to cancel copying is displayed.

If another media is connected or inserted (USB, CD, iPod®, AUX) while copying is in progress, copying is canceled.

Music will not be played while copying is in progress.

MENU : iPod®

In iPod® mode, press the **[MENU]** button to set the Repeat, Random, Information and Search features.

Repeat : [1] Button

Repeat the current song.

Press RPT again to turn repeat off.

Random : [2] Button

Plays all songs within the currently playing category in random order.

Press RDM again to turn off.

Information : [3] Button

Displays information for the current song.

Press the **[MENU]** button to turn off info display.

Search : [4] Button

Displays iPod® category list.

While in iPod® category sublists, press the **[MENU]** button to move up to the parent category.

MENU : AUX

AUX is used to play external MEDIA currently connected with the AUX terminal.

AUX mode will automatically start when an external device is connected with the AUX terminal.

If an external device is connected, you can also press the **[MENU]** button to change to AUX mode.

AUX mode cannot be started unless there is an external device connected to the AUX terminal.

✻ NOTICE - Using the AUX

Fully insert the AUX cable into the AUX terminal for use.

MENU : My Music

In My Music mode, press the **[MENU]** button to set the Repeat, Random, Information, Delete, Delete All and Delete Selection features.

Repeat : [1] Button

Repeats the currently playing song.

Press RPT again to turn repeat off.

Random : [2] Button

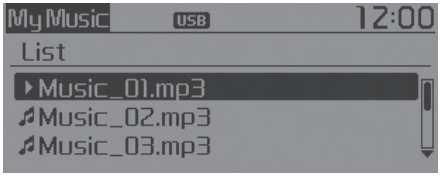
Plays all songs in random order.

Press RDM again to turn random off.

Information : [3] Button

Displays information for the current song.

Press the **[MENU]** button to turn off info display.



Delete : [4] Button

Deletes currently playing file

In the play screen, pressing delete will delete the currently playing song.

Deletes file from list

① Select the file you wish to delete by using the **TUNE** knob.

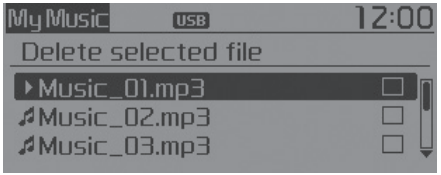
② Press the **[MENU]** button and select [Delete] from the menu to delete the selected file.

Delete All : [5] Button

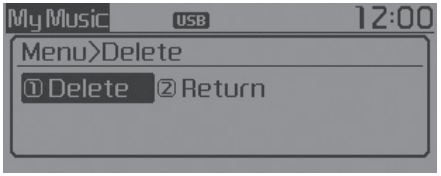
Deletes all songs of My Music.

Delete Selection : [6] Button

Songs within My Music are selected and deleted.



① Select the songs you wish to delete from the list.



② After selecting, press **[MENU]** button and select [Delete] from the menu.

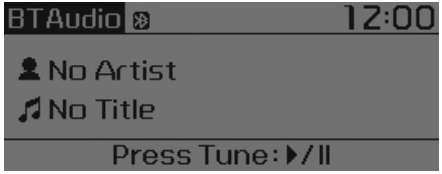
✻ NOTICE - Using the My Music

- **Even if memory is available, a maximum of 6,000 songs can be stored.**
- **The same song can be copied up to 1,000 times.**
- **Memory info can be checked in the System menu of Setup.**

MENU : Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Audio

If BT Audio is selected, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio will start playing.

Audio may not automatically start playing in some mobile phones.



• Play / Stop :

Press the **TUNE** knob to play and pause the current song.

The title / artist info may not be supported in some mobile phones.

When it is not supported, no title or artist will be displayed.

• Previous / Next song

Press **[SEEK TRACK]** button to play previous or next song.

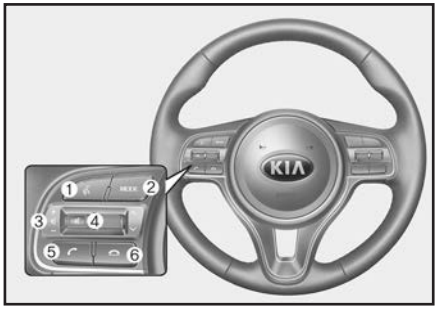
The previous song / next song / play / pause functions may not be supported in some mobile phones.

⚠ WARNING - Distracted Driving

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

Phone Mode

Making a call using the Steering wheel controls



❊ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) Activates voice recognition.

(2) Press the button to change audio source.

FM1 ➞ FM2 ➞ AM ➞ SAT1 ➞ SAT2 ➞ SAT3 ➞ CD ➞ USB(iPod®) ➞ AUX ➞ My Music ➞ BT Audio.

(3) Raises or lowers speaker volume.

(4) Mutes audio volume.

(5) Places and transfers calls.

- Check call history and making calls
  - Shortly press the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel controls.
  - The call history list will be displayed on the screen.
  - Press the **[CALL]** button again to connect a call to the selected number.
- Redialing the most recently called number
  - Press and hold the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel controls.
  - The most recently called number is redialed.

(6) Ends calls or cancels functions.

❊ If call history does not exist, a screen asking whether to download call history is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Pairing on the Steering wheel controls

1. Press the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel controls.
2. Select [OK] button to enter the Pair Phone screen.

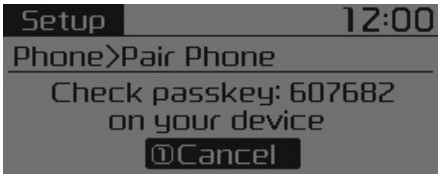
- Vehicle Name : Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device
- Passkey : Passkey used to pair the device

3. From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.

❊ SSP : Secure Simple Pairing

Non SSP supported device :

4. After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered. Enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.



SSP supported device :

4. After a few moments, a screen is displayed that has the 6 digit passkey from any nearby SSP device that is found. Check the passkey on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

Some phones (i.e., iPhone®, Android ™ and Blackberry® phones) may offer an option to allow acceptance of all future Bluetooth® connection requests by default.

- If *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel control displays the following screen. Select [Pair] button to pair a new device or select [Connect] to connect a previously paired device.

MENU : Phone

With a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected, press the **[PHONE]** button to display the Phone menu screen.

Favorite : [1] Button

Up to 20 frequently used contacts can be saved for easy access.

Call History : [2] Button

Displays the call history list screen.

If you select the [Call History] button but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks to download call history data.

Contacts : [3] Button

Displays the Contacts list screen.

If you select the [Contacts] button but there is no contacts data stored, a prompt is displayed which asks to download contacts data.

Setup : [4] Button

Displays Phone related settings.

This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone's user manual.

Answering a Call

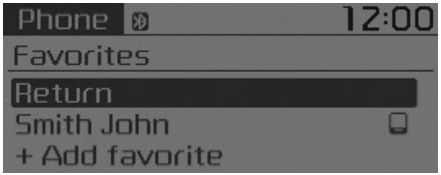
Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.

To accept the call, press **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel while the call is incoming.

- Caller : Displays the other party's name when the incoming caller is saved within your contacts
- Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number

✻ NOTICE

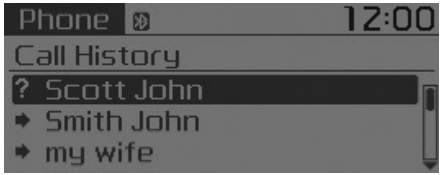
- **When an incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features are disabled. Only the call volume will operate.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**



Favorites

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Select [Favorites]

- Saved favorite contact : Connects call upon selection.
- To add favorite : Downloaded contacts can be saved as favorite.
- To save Favorite, contacts should be downloaded.
- Contact saved in Favorites will not be automatically updated if the contact has been updated in the phone. To update Favorites, delete the Favorite and create a new Favorite.

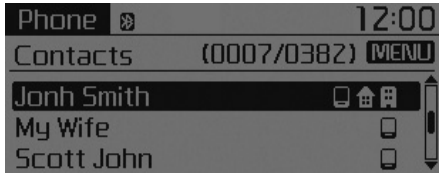


Call History

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Select [Call History]

A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

- Call history may not be saved in the call history list in some mobile phones.
- Calls received with hidden caller ID will not be saved in the call history list.
- Calling through the call history is not possible when there is no call history stored or a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone is not connected.
- Up to 50 received, dialed and missed calls are stored in Call History.
- Time of received/dialed calls and call time information are not stored in Call History.



Contacts

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Select [Contacts]

The list of saved phone book entries is displayed.

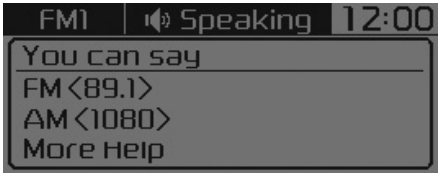
NOTE:

Find a contact in alphabetical order, press the [MENU] button.

- Up to 1,000 contacts saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone can be downloaded into the car contacts. Contacts that have been downloaded to the car cannot be edited or deleted on the phone.
- Mobile phone contacts are managed separately for each paired *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (max 5 devices x 1,000 contacts each). Previously downloaded data is maintained even if the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device has been disconnected. (However, the contacts and call history saved to the phone will be deleted if a paired phone is deleted.)
- It is possible to download contacts during Bluetooth® streaming audio.
- When downloading contacts, the icon will be displayed within the status bar.
- It is not possible to begin downloading a contact list when the contact download feature has been turned off within the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device. In addition, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download contacts. If downloading does not normally occur, check the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device settings or for notifications on the screen.
- The contacts download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information of supported Bluetooth® devices and function support, refer to your phone's user manual.

Voice Recognition Mode

Using Voice Recognition



Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls. Say a command

If prompt feedback is in [ON], then the system will say “Please say a command after the beep (BEEP)”

- If prompt feedback is in [OFF] mode, then the system will only say “(BEEP)”
- To change Prompt Feedback [On]/[Off], go to **[SETUP/CLOCK]** ▶ [System] ▶ [Prompt Feedback]
- For proper recognition, say the command after the voice instruction and beep tone.

Contact List Best Practices

- Use full names vs. short or single syllable names (“John Smith” vs. “Dad”, “Smith Residence” vs. “Home”)
- Avoid using special characters or hyphens (@, &, #, /, -, *, +, etc.)
- Avoid using acronyms (“In Case of Emergency” vs. “ICE”)
- Spell words completely, no abbreviations (“Doctor Goodman” vs. “Dr. Goodman”)

Skipping Prompt Messages

While prompt message is being stated ▶ Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls

The prompt message is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

Re-starting Voice Recognition

While system waits for a command ▶ Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls

The command wait state is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

Ending Voice Recognition

While Voice Recognition is operating ▶ Press and hold the button on the steering wheel controls.

- While using voice command, pressing any steering wheel controls or a different button will end voice command.
- When the system is waiting for a voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.
- When the system is waiting for a voice command, press and hold the button on the steering wheel to end voice command.

Voice Recognition and Phone Contact Tips :

The Kia Voice Recognition System may have difficulty understanding some accents or uncommon names. When using Voice Recognition to place a call, speak in a moderate tone, with clear pronunciation.

To maximize the use of Voice Recognition, consider these guidelines when storing contacts :

- Use full names vs. short or single syllable names (“John Smith” vs. “Dad”, “Smith Residence” vs. “Home”)
- Avoid using special characters or hyphens (@, &, #, /, -, *, +, etc.)
- Avoid using acronyms (“In Case of Emergency” vs. “ICE”)
- Spell words completely, no abbreviations (“Doctor Goodman” vs. “Dr. Goodman”)

Illustration on Using Voice Recognition

Starting Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :

Please say a command after the beep (BEEP)

Beep~

More Help

More Help
Here are some examples of mode commands.
You can say a radio type like ‘FM’, ‘AM’, or ‘Satellite’.
You can also say a media source like ‘USB’, ‘My Music’, or ‘iPod®’.
Additionally, there are phone commands like ‘Contacts’, ‘Call History’, or ‘Dial Number’.
You can find more detailed commands in the user's manual.
Please say a command after the beep.

Skipping Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :

Please say a... while guidance message is being stated

Shortly pressing the button :

(BEEP)

More Help

More Help
Here are some examples of mode commands.
You can say a radio type like ‘FM’, ‘AM’, or ‘Satellite’.
You can also say a media source like ‘USB’, ‘My Music’, or ‘iPod®’.
Additionally, there are phone commands like ‘Contacts’, ‘Call History’, or ‘Dial Number’.
You can find more detailed commands in the user's manual.
Please say a command after the beep.

Ending Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :

Please say a command after the beep (BEEP)

Contacts

Please say the contact name you want to call.

Cancel

Voice Command List

Common Commands

These commands can be used in most operations.
(However a few commands may not be available during certain operations)

Command	Function
More Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system.
Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode.
Call<Name>	Calls <Name> saved in Contacts. Ex) Call “John Smith”
Call <Name> on Mobile	Calls <Name> to the number that is saved as “Mobile” in Contacts. Ex) Call “John Smith” on Mobile
Call <Name> in Office	Calls <Name> to the number that is saved as "Office" in Contacts. Ex) Call "John Smith" in Office
Call <Name> at Home	Calls <Name> to the number that is saved as "Home" in Contacts Ex) Call "John Smith" at Home
Call <Name> on Other	Calls <Name> to the number that is saved as "Other" in Contacts Ex) Call "John Smith" on Other
Phone	Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Favorites”,“Call History”, “Contacts” or ”Dial Number” execute corresponding functions.
Favorites	Displays the Favorite screen.

Command	Function
Call History	Displays the Call History screen.
Contacts	Displays the Contacts screen. After saying this command, say the name of a contact saved in the Contacts to automatically connect the call.
Dial Number	Displays the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number that you want to call.
Redial	Connects the last dialed call number.
Tutorial	Provides guidance on how to use voice recognition and Bluetooth® connections
Radio	• When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟FM2➟AM➟SAT1➟SAT2➟SAT3➟FM1) • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen. • When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state. • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen.
FM1(FM One)	Displays the FM1 screen.
FM2(FM Two)	Displays the FM2 screen.
AM	Displays the AM screen.

Command	Function
FM Preset 1~6	Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6.
AM Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6.
FM 87.5~107.9	Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency.
AM 530~1710	Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency.
SIRIUS (Satellite)	• When listening to the SiriusXM®, maintains the current state. • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played SiriusXM® screen.
SIRIUS (Satellite) 1~3	Displays the selected SiriusXM® screen.
SIRIUS Channel 0~223	Plays the selected SiriusXM® channel.
Media	Moves to the most recently played media screen.
CD	Plays the music on the CD.
USB	Plays music on the USB device.
iPod®	Plays music on the iPod®.
My Music	Plays music saved in My Music.

Command	Function
AUX (Auxiliary)	Plays the connected external device.
Bluetooth® Audio	Plays the music saved in connected Bluetooth® device.
Mute	Mutes the sound.
Cancel (Exit)	Ends voice command.

FM/AM Radio Commands

Commands available during FM, AM radio operation.

Command	Function
Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast station saved in Preset 1~6.
Scan	Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each.
Preset Scan	Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each.

Satellite radio Commands

Commands that can be used while listening to Satellite Radio.

Command	Function
Channel 0~223	Plays the selected Satellite Radio channel.
Scan	Scans receivable channels from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each.
Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6.
Information	Displays the information of the current broadcast.

Audio CD Commands

Commands available during Audio CD operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the tracks within the CD.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current track.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order.
Track 1~30	Plays the desired track number.

MP3 CD / USB Commands

Commands available during USB and MP3 CD operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the files within the current folder.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Next Folder	Plays the first file in the next folder.
Previous Folder	Plays the first file in the previous folder.

iPod® Commands

Commands available during iPod® operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the songs within the current category.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current song.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order.

My Music Commands

Commands available during My Music operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays all saved files.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Delete	Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.

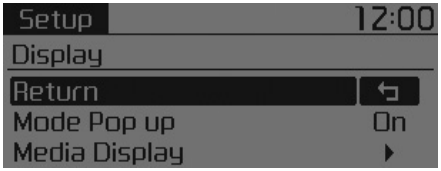
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Audio Commands

Commands available during *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio streaming from mobile phone operation Command Operation.

Command	Function
Play	Plays the currently paused song.
Pause	Pauses the current song.

Setup Mode

With the Display Button



Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Display]

Mode Pop up

[Mode Pop up] ▶ Changes [On] selection mode

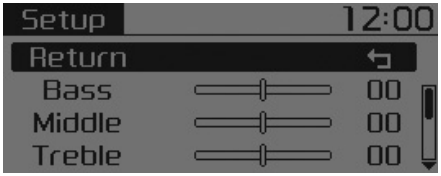
- During On state, press the **[RADIO]** or **[MENU]** button to display the mode change pop up screen.

Media Display

When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from ‘Folder/File’ or ‘Album/Artist/Song’.

With the Sound Button

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Sound]

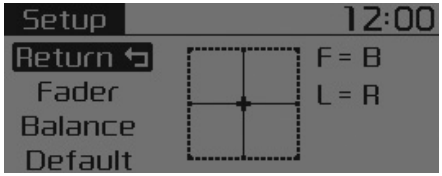


Tone

This menu allows you to set the Bass, Middle, Treble.

Select [Tone]

- Return : While adjusting values, pressing the **TUNE** knob will restore the parent menu.
- Bass, Middle, Treble : Selects the sound tone.
- Default : Restores default settings.



Position

This menu allows you to set the Fader, Balance.

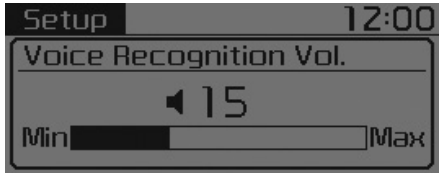
Select [Position]

- Return : While adjusting values, pressing the **TUNE** knob will restore the parent menu.
- Fader, Balance : Selects the sound fader and balance.
- Default : Restores default settings.

Speed Dependent Volume Control

This feature is used to automatically control the volume level according to the speed of the vehicle.

Select [Speed Dependent Vol.] ▶ Set [Off/On]

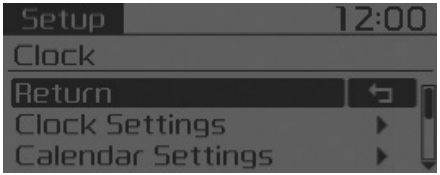


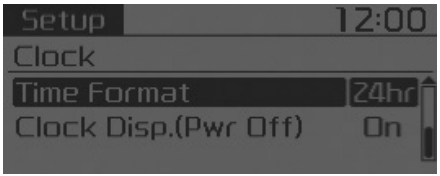
Voice Recognition Volume

Adjusts voice recognition volume.

Select [Voice Recognition Vol.]

With the Clock Button





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Clock]

⚠ WARNING - Clock Setting Distraction

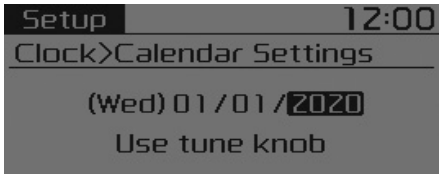
Adjusting the clock setting while driving can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death.

Clock Settings

This menu is used to set the time.

Select [Clock Settings]

Adjust the number currently in focus to set the [hour] and press the **TUNE** knob to set the [minute] and [AM/PM].



Calendar Settings

This menu is used to set the date.

Select [Calendar Settings]

Adjust the number currently in focus to make the settings and press the **TUNE** knob to move to the next setting.

Time Format

This function is used to set the 12/24 hour time format of the audio system.

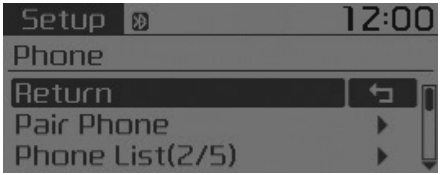
Select [Time Format] ▶ Set 12hr / 24hr.

Clock Display when Power is OFF

Select [Clock Disp.(Pwr Off)] ▶ Set [On/Off]

- [On] : Displays time/date on screen
- [Off] : Turn off.

With the Phone Button



Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone]

Pair Phone

The following steps are the same as those described in the section "Pairing on the Steering wheel controls" on the previous page.

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.
  - Outgoing/Incoming Handsfree calls
  - Operations during a call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, MIC on/off)
  - Downloading Call History
  - Downloading Mobile Contacts
  - *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device auto connection
  - Bluetooth® Audio Streaming
- Up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices can be paired to the Car Handsfree system.
- Only one *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.
- Other devices cannot be paired while a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device is connected.
- Only *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree and Bluetooth® audio related features are supported.
- Bluetooth® related operations are possible only within devices that support Handsfree or audio features, such as a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone or a Bluetooth® audio device.
- If a connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected due to being out of communication range, turning the device OFF, or a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology communication error, corresponding *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and reconnected.

- If the system becomes unstable due to communication errors between the car Handsfree and the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device, reset the device by turning off and back on again. Upon resetting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device, the system will be restored.
- After pairing is complete, a contacts download request is sent once to the mobile phone. Some mobile phones may require confirmation upon receiving a download request, ensure your mobile phone accepts the connection. Refer to your phones user's manual for additional information regarding phone pairing and connections.

Phone List

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Phone List]

1) Connected Phone : Device that is currently connected
2) Paired Phone : Device that is paired but not connected

- Connecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and select [Connect].

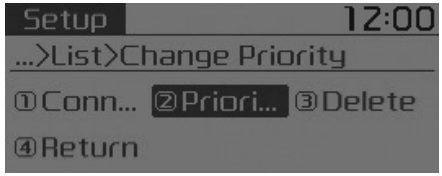
- Disconnecting a Device

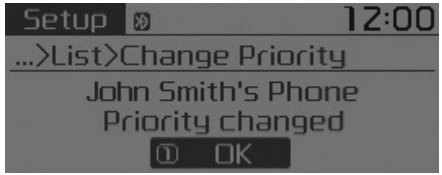
From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and select [Disconnect] button.

- Changing Priority

What is Priority?

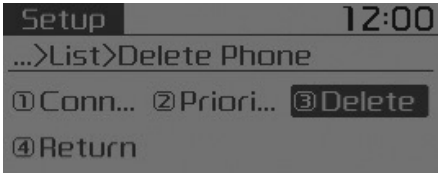
It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. The "Change Priority" feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones.





From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to switch to the highest priority, then select [Change Priority] button from the Menu. The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.

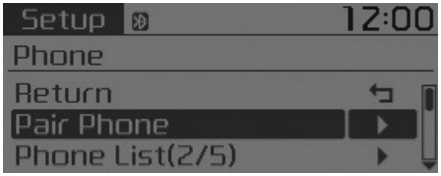
Priority icon will be displayed when the selected phone is set as a priority phone.



- Deleting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and select [Delete] button.

- When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.
- If a paired *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and contacts data will also be deleted.
- To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.



Pairing a New Device

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Pair Phone]

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the "Pairing through Phone Setup" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

Viewing Paired Phone List

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Phone List]

This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.

For more information, refer to the "Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

1) Connect/Disconnect Phone : Connect/ disconnects currently selected phone
2) Change Priority : Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority
3) Delete : Deletes the currently selected phone
4) Return : Moves to the previous screen

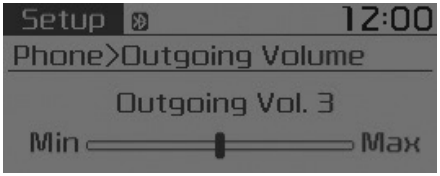
- To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports contact downloads, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.
- The contacts for only the connected phone can be downloaded

Downloading Contacts

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Contacts Download]

As the contacts are downloaded from the mobile phone, a download progress bar is displayed.

- Upon downloading phone contacts, the previous corresponding data is deleted.
- This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.
- Voice Recognition may not operate while contacts are being downloaded.

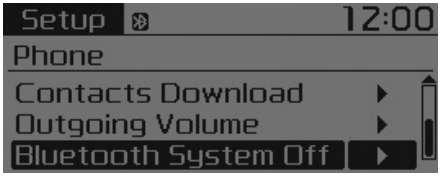


Outgoing Volume

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Outgoing Volume]

Use **TUNE** knob to adjust the outgoing volume level.

- While on a call, the volume can be changed by using the **[SEEK TRACK]** button.



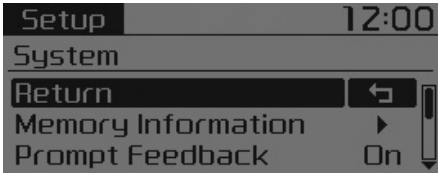
Turning Bluetooth System Off

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Bluetooth System Off]

Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.

- To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to **[SETUP/CLOCK]** ▶ [Phone] and select “Yes”.

With the System Button



Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [System]

Memory Information

Displays currently used memory and total system memory.

Select [Memory Information] ▶ OK

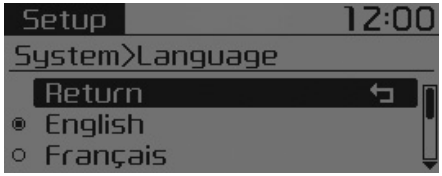
The currently used memory is displayed on the left side while the total system memory is displayed on the right side.

Prompt Feedback

This feature is used to change voice command feedback between Normal and Expert modes.

Select [Prompt Feedback] ▶ Set through **TUNE** knob

- On : This mode is for beginner users and provides detailed instructions during voice command operation.
- Off : This mode is for expert users and omits some information during voice command operation. (When using Expert mode, guidance instructions can be heard through the [Help] or [Menu] commands.



Language

This menu is used to set the display and voice recognition language.

Select [Language]

The system will reboot after the language is changed.

- Language support by region
  English, Français, Español

iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. iPod® mobile digital device sold separately. The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. SiriusXM services require a subscription sold separately, or as a package, by Sirius XM Radio Inc. If you decide to continue service after your trial, the subscription plan you choose will automatically renew thereafter and you will be charged according to your chosen payment method at then-current rates. Fees and taxes apply. To cancel you must call SiriusXM at 1-866-635-2349. See SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at www.siriusxm.com. SiriusXM U.S. satellite and data services are available only in the 48 contiguous states, DC and Puerto Rico (with coverage limitations). SiriusXM satellite service is also available in Canada; see www.siriusxm.ca. All fees and programming subject to change.

Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. Android™ is a trademark of Google, Inc. BlackBerry is a registered trademark of Research In Motion Limited (RIM). All other marks, channel names and logos are the property of their respective owners. All rights reserved.

AUDIO (With Touch Screen)

■ Type B

(With *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology)

D5H3G0000EC

Features of Your Audio

Head unit

❊ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **EJECT**

- Ejects the disc.

(2) **RADIO**

- Changes to FM/AM/SiriusXM mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in the order of FM1 ➞ FM2 ➞ AM ➞ SAT1 ➞ SAT2 ➞ SAT3.

(3) **MEDIA**

- Changes to CD/USB(iPod®)/AUX/My Music/Bluetooth® Audio mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in the order of CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music, BT(Bluetooth®) Audio.

(4) **PHONE**

- Changes to Phone mode.
- When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(5) **SEEK TRACK**

- When pressed briefly
  - Radio mode : plays previous/next frequency.
  - Media (CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : changes the track, Song(file)
- When pressed and held
  - Radio mode : continuously changes the frequency. Upon release, plays the current frequency.
  - Media(CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : rewinds or fast forwards the track or file
  - During a Handsfree call, controls the call volume.

(6) **POWER/VOL** knob

- Power knob : Press to turn power on/off.
- Volume knob : Turn left/right to control volume.

(7) **DISP**

• Turns the monitor display on/off.

(8) **SCAN**

- Radio mode : previews all receivable broadcasts for 5 seconds each
- Media (CD/USB/My Music) modes : previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.

(9) **SETUP**

- Changes to Setup mode.

(10) **CLOCK**

- When pressed briefly : Display time screen
- When pressed and held : Move to the time setting mode

(11) **CAT/FOLDER**

- SiriusXM RADIO : Category Search
- MP3 CD/USB mode : Search Folder

(12) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode : turn to change broadcast frequencies.
- Media (CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : turn to search Tracks/channels/files.

✻ NOTICE - Using Compact Discs

- This device has been manufactured to be compatible with software bearing the following logo marks.
- Do not clean discs with chemical solutions, such as record sprays, antistatic sprays, antistatic liquids, benzene, or thinners.
- After using a disc, put the disc back in its original case to prevent disc scratches.
- Hold discs by their edges or within the center hole to prevent damage to disc surfaces.
- Do not introduce foreign substances into the disc insert/eject slot. Introducing foreign substances could damage the device interior.
- Do not insert two discs simultaneously.
- When using CD-R/CD-RW discs, differences in disc reading and playing times may occur depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method used.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Clean fingerprints and dust off the disc surface (coated side) with a soft cloth.
- The use of CD-R/CD-RW discs attached with labels may result in disc slot jams or difficulties in disc removal. Such discs may also result in noise while playing.
- Some CD-R/CD-RW discs may not properly operate depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method used. If problems persist, trying using a different CD.Continued as continued use may result in malfunctions.
- The performance of this product may differ depending on the CD-RW Drive Software.
- Copy-protected CDs such as S-type CDs may not function in the device. DATA discs cannot be played. (However, such discs may still operate but will do so abnormally.)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not use abnormally shaped discs (8cm, heart-shaped, octagon-shaped) as such discs could lead to malfunctions.
- If the disc is straddled on the disc slot without removal for 10 seconds, the disc will automatically be re-inserted into the disc player.
- Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure. (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)

✻ NOTICE - Using USB Devices

- Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on. The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.
- Be careful for static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.
- Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.
- When connecting an external USB device, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB depending on what firmware is used by USB device or what files are on the USB.
- Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.
- This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.
- Avoid contact between the USB connector and bodily parts or foreign objects.
- Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.
- A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.
- Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.
- The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored on the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.
- The vehicle audio system only supports USB devices designed to play music files.
- USB images and videos are not supported.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Doing so may lead to worsened performance or damage to the audio system.
- The audio system may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB device directly with the USB port of the vehicle.
- When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.
- Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed on the USBs.
- The audio system may not operate normally if MP3 Players, cellular phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the audio system.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.**
- **The device may not support an abnormal USB memory device (miniature, keychain, etc.) For best results, use a standard USB device that has a metal case.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.**
- **The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.)**
- **USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.**
- **The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.**
- **Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX/BT or Audio/ USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.**

✻ NOTICE - Using an iPod®

- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- In order to use the iPod® with your vehicle's audio system, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)
- If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle while it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.
- When the vehicle ignition is set to ACC or ON, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.
- When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When the EQ features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, EQ effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the EQ feature within the external device when it is connected to the audio system.
- Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.
- When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).
- iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to versions that do not support communication protocols.
- For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.
- The search/play order shown within the iPod® device may differ from the orders shown within the audio system.
- If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some iPod® products may not sync with the System depending on the version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPad® charging is not supported.)
- Use an iPod® cable shorter than 1 meter in length such as the one originally supplied with a new iPod®, longer cables may lead to the audio system not recognizing the iPod®.

✻ NOTICE - Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Mode

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Mode can be used only when a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone has been connected.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.
- If a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Phone is being used to play music and receives an incoming or outgoing phone call, then the music will stop.
- Moving the Track up/down while playing *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio mode may result in pop noises with some mobile phones.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When returning to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.
- Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call while playing *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio may result in audio interference.

✻ NOTICE - Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Cellular Phone

- ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phones through the audio system.**
- ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology allows devices to be connected in a short distance, including hands-free devices, stereo headsets, wireless remote controllers, etc. For more information, visit the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology website at www.Bluetooth.com. Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features.**
- **The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. A Bluetooth® enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.**
  - **Answering and placing *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree calls**
  - **Menu operation during call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Outgoing volume)**
  - **Download Call History**
  - **Download Mobile Phone book**
  - **Phone book/Call History Auto Download**
  - ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology device auto connection**
  - ***Bluetooth®*** **Wireless Technology Audio**
- **Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features of the audio system, refer your phone's User's Manual for phone-side *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology operations.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The phone must be paired to the audio system to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features.**
- **Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone will work only when the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology option within your mobile phone has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the mobile phone.)**
- **Do not use a cellular phone or perform *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology settings (e.g. pairing a phone) while driving.**
- **Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology has been deactivated. Disable the hidden state or activate the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology prior to searching/connecting with the car audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the cellular service area. (e.g. in a tunnel, in an underground area, in a mountainous area, etc.)
- If the cellular phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.
- Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology system or cellular service stations can be disturbed.
- Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.
- Some cellular phones or other devices may cause interference noise or malfunctions to the audio system. In this case, storing the device in a different location may resolve the condition.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- While a phone is connected through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology-related operations.
- If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone, try the following.

1) Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your mobile phone.
2) Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- To turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system, go to **[SETUP]** > [Phone] and [turn off] the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.

1) Turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone off/on and try again.
2) Turn the mobile phone power Off/On and try again.
3) Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then try again.
4) Reboot the audio system and try again.
5) Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.

- It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices to the car system.

(Continued)

(Continued)
- Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.
- The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.
- Only one *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.
- In some mobile phones, starting the ignition while talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected. (Switch the call back to your mobile phone when starting the ignition.)
- If the mobile phone is not paired or connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. Once a phone is paired or connected, the guidance screen will be displayed.
- Bluetooth® Handsfree may not be supported in some mobile phones.

✻ NOTICE

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Handsfree is a feature that enables drivers to practice safe driving. Connecting the car audio system with a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phone book. Before using the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.

⚠ WARNING

- Excessive use or operations while driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents.
- Do not operate the device excessively while driving.
- Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time while driving is dangerous and may lead to accidents.

✻ NOTICE - Using Voice Recognition

- When using the voice recognition feature, only commands listed within the user's manual are supported.
- Be aware that during the operation of the voice recognition system, pressing any button other than the button will terminate voice recognition mode.
- For optimal voice recognition performance, position your head below the microphone above the driver's seat and maintain proper position when speaking voice commands.
- Within the following situations, voice recognition may not function properly due to external sound.
  - When the windows and sunroof are open
  - When the blower AC/heater is set to high
  - When entering and passing through tunnels
  - When driving on rugged and uneven roads
  - During severe rain (heavy rains, windstorms)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Phone related voice commands can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected.
- When making calls by stating a name, the corresponding contact must be downloaded and stored within the audio system.
- After downloading the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, it takes some time to convert the phone book data into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not properly operate.
- Pronounce the voice commands naturally and clearly as if in a normal conversation.

Radio Mode

Radio Mode Display Controls

(1) Mode Display

Displays current operating mode.

(2) Frequency

Displays the current frequency.

(3) Preset

Displays current preset number [1] ~ [6].

(4) Preset Display

Displays preset buttons.

(5) A.Store

Automatically saves frequencies with superior reception to Preset buttons.

With the Radio Mode Button

Pressing the **[RADIO]** button will change the operating mode in order of FM1 ➞ FM2 ➞ AM ➞ SAT1 ➞ SAT2 ➞ SAT3

If [Mode Pop up] is turned on within **[SETUP]** ▶ [Display], then pressing the **[RADIO]** button will display the Radio Mode Pop up screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

SEEK

Press the [**SEEK TRACK]** button to play the previous/next frequency.

TUNE

Turn the **TUNE** knob to select the desired frequency.

Selecting Presets/Saving Presets

Press the [Preset] button to display the broadcast information for the frequency saved to each button.

Press the [1] ~ [6] buttons to play the desired preset.

While listening to a frequency you want to save as a preset, press and hold one of the [1] ~ [6] preset buttons to save the current frequency to the selected preset.

A.Store(Auto Store)

Press the [A.Store] button to automatically save receivable frequencies to Preset buttons.

Scan

Press the **[SCAN]** button to preview frequencies with superior reception for 5 seconds each.

Press and hold the **[SCAN]** button to preview presets for 5 seconds each.

Once scan is complete, the previous frequency will be restored. While Scan is operating, pressing **[SCAN]** button will cancel the scanning.

SiriusXM® Satellite Radio information

Satellite Radio channels :

Enjoy SiriusXM Satellite Radio with a 3-month trial subscription to the Sirius Select package. You'll get over 140 channels, including commercial-free music, plus all your favorite sports, exclusive talk, entertainment, and a selection of premium programming. For more information and a complete list of SiriusXM channels, visit siriusxm.com in the United States, siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite Radio reception factors:

To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance :

- Antenna obstructions : For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
- Terrain : Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

SiriusXM Satellite Radio service :

SiriusXM is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming to radio receivers, which are available for installation in motor vehicles or factory installed, as well as for the home, portable and wireless devices, and through an Internet connection on a personal computer.

Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SiriusXM Satellite Radio system include :

- Hardware and an introductory trial subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.
- For a small upgrade fee, access to SiriusXM music channels, and other select channels over the Internet using any computer connected to the Internet (U.S. customers only).

For information on extended subscription terms, contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

NOTE :

SiriusXM services require a subscription sold separately, or as a package, by Sirius XM Radio Inc. If you decide to continue service after your trial, the subscription plan you choose will automatically renew thereafter and you will be charged according to your chosen payment method at then-current rates. Fees and taxes apply. To cancel you must call SiriusXM at 1-866-635-2349. See SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at www.siriusxm.com. SiriusXM U.S. satellite and data services are available only in the 48 contiguous states, DC and Puerto Rico (with coverage limitations). SiriusXM satellite service is also available in Canada; see www.siriusxm.ca. All fees and programming subject to change. Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc.

SiriusXM Radio Mode

Radio Mode Display Controls

(1) Mode Display

Displays current operating mode.

(2) Channel Information

Displays the category, channel number, channel name, artist and title information.

(3) Preset

Displays current playing preset number [1] ~ [6].

(4) Preset Display

Displays saved presets.

(5) Info

Displays detailed information about the current broadcast.

Using SiriusXM Satellite Radio

Your Kia vehicle is equipped with a 3-month trial subscription to SiriusXM so you have access to over 140 channels of music, information, and entertainment programming.

Activation

In order to extend or reactivate your Sirius Select subscription, you will need to contact SiriusXM Customer Care at 1-800-643-2112. Have your 12-digit RID (Radio Identification Number) / ESN (Electronic Serial Number) ready. To retrieve the RID / ESN, turn on the radio, press the **[RADIO]** button, and tune to channel zero.

Please note that the vehicle will need to be turned on, in Sirius mode, and have an unobstructed view of the sky in order for the radio to receive the activation signal.

SEEK

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to play the previous/next channel.

✻ If the “Category” icon is displayed, channels are changed within the current category.

Tune

Turn the **TUNE** knob to select the desired channel.

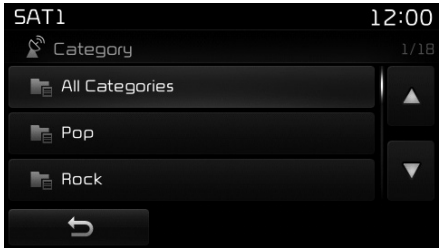
SCAN

Press the **[SCAN]** button to scan all channels with superior reception for 5 seconds each.

Once scan is complete, the previously played channel will be restored.

During Scan, pressing the **[SCAN]** button again will cancel the scan operation and restore the previously played channel.

If the “Category” icon is displayed, channels are changed within the current category.



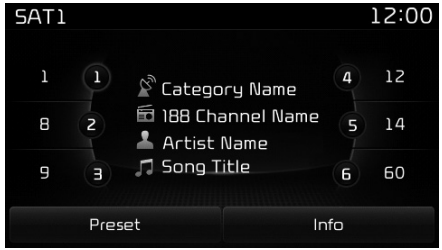
Searching Categories

Select the category by using the **[CAT/FOLDER]** button and press the **TUNE** knob to select.

Channels for the selected category are played.

✻ Troubleshooting

1. **Antenna Error**
   If this message is displayed, the antenna or antenna cable is broken or unplugged. Please consult with your Kia dealership.
2. **No Signal**
   If this message is displayed, it means that the antenna is covered and that the SiriusXM Satellite Radio signal is not available. Ensure the antenna is uncovered and has a clear view of the sky.



Selecting Presets/Saving Presets

Press the [Preset] button to display the broadcast information for the channel saved to each button.

Press the [1] ~ [6] buttons to play the desired preset.

While listening to a channel you want to save as a preset, press and hold one of the [1] ~ [6] preset buttons to save the current channel to the selected preset.

Media Mode

Media Mode Screen

Pressing the **[MEDIA]** button will change the operating mode in order of CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.

If [Mode Pop up] is turned on within **[SETUP]** ▶ [Display], then pressing the **[MEDIA]** button will display the Media Mode Pop up screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

The media Mode Pop up screen can be displayed only when there are two or more media modes turned on.

Mode Display on the Status Bar

When a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, iPod®, USB, or AUX device is connected or a CD is inserted, the corresponding mode icon will be displayed.

Icon	Title
	Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
	CD
	iPod®
	USB
	AUX

MENU : Audio CD

Audio CD Mode Display Controls

(1) Mode

Displays current operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the currently operating function.

(3) Track Info

Displays information about the current track.

(4) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(5) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(6) Info

Shows detailed information about the current track.

(7) Shuffle

Turns the Shuffle feature on/off.

(8) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

(9) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for tracks. Once the desired track is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

With the Audio CD Mode

Playing/Pausing CD Tracks

Once an audio CD is inserted, the mode will automatically start and begin playing.

While playing, press the [II] button to pause and press [▶] button to play.

Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)

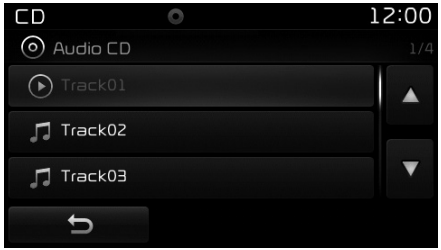
The artist and title information are displayed on the screen if track information is included within the audio CD.

Changing Tracks

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next track.

Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button after the track has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current track from the beginning.

Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button before the track has been playing for 1 second will start the previous track.



Selecting from the List

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired track.

Once you find the desired track, press the **TUNE** knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Tracks

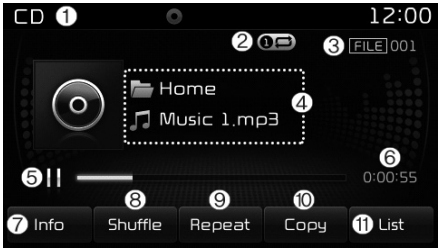
While playing, press and hold the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current track.

Scan

Press the **[SCAN]** button to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

MENU : MP3 CD

MP3 CD Mode Display Controls



(1) Mode

Displays current operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the currently operating function.

(3) File Index

Displays the current file number.

(4) File Info

Displays information about the current file.

(5) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(6) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(7) Info

Shows detailed information about the current file.

When the ‘Folder File’ option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.

When the ‘Album Artist Song’ option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.

The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information is recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.

(8) Shuffle

Turns the Shuffle feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Shuffle Folder ➞ Shuffle All ➞ Off.

- Shuffle Folder : Plays all files within the current folder in shuffle order.
- Shuffle All : Plays all files in shuffle order.

(9) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat ➞ Repeat Folder ➞ Off.

- Repeat : Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder : Repeats all files within the current Folder.

(10) Copy

Copies the current file into My Music.

Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select “Yes”.

(11) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

With the MP3 CD Mode

Playing/Pausing MP3 Files

Once an MP3 disc is inserted, the mode will automatically start and begin playing.

While playing, press the [II] button to pause and press [▶] button to play.

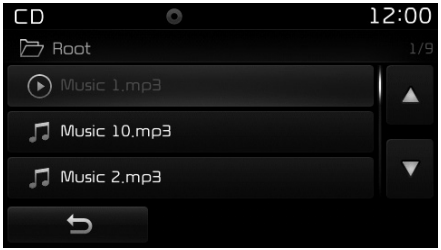
If there are numerous files and folders within the disc, reading time could take more than 10 seconds and the list may not be displayed or song searches may not operate. Once loading is complete, try again.

Changing Files

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next file.

Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.

Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button before the file has been playing for 1 second will start the previous file.



Selecting from the List

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired file.

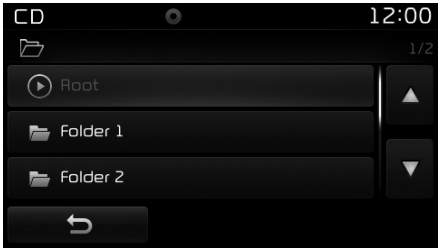
Once you find the desired file, press the **TUNE** knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

While playing, press and hold the [**SEEK TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan

Press the **[SCAN]** button to play the first 10 seconds of each file.



Searching Folders

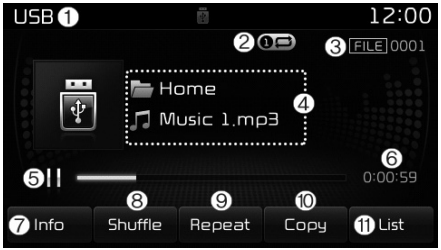
Press the **[CAT/FOLDER]** button to select and search folders.

Once the desired folder is displayed, press the **TUNE** knob to select.

The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

MENU : USB

USB Mode Display Controls



(1) Mode

Displays current operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the currently operating function.

(3) File Index

Displays the current file number.

(4) File Info

Displays information about the current file.

(5) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(6) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(7) Info

Displays detailed information for the current file.

When the ‘Folder File’ option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.

When the ‘Album Artist Song’ option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.

The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such informa tion are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.

(8) Shuffle

Turns the Shuffle feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Shuffle Folder ➞ Shuffle All ➞ Off.

- Shuffle Folder : Plays the files in the current folder in shuffle order.
- Shuffle All : Plays all files in shuffle order.

(9) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat➞ Repeat Folder ➞ Off.

- Repeat : Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder : Repeats all files within the current folder.

(10) Copy

Copies the current file into My Music.

Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select “Yes”.

(11) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

With the USB Mode

Playing/Pausing USB Files

Once a USB is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing a USB file.

While playing, press the [II] button to pause and press [▶] button to play.

Loading may require additional time if there are many files and folders within the USB and may result in a faulty list display or file search. Normal operations will resume once loading is complete.

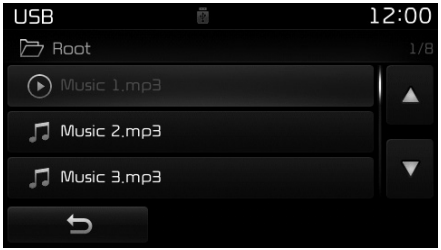
The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides (Metal Cover Type) USB Memory.

Changing Files

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next file.

Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.

Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button before the file has been playing for 1 second will start the previous file.



Selecting from the List

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired file.

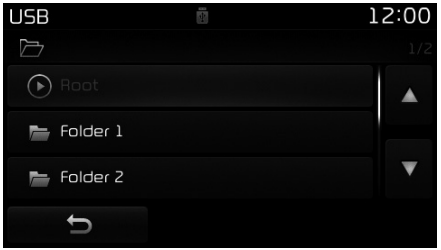
Once you find the desired file, press the **TUNE** knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

While playing, press and hold the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan

Press the **[SCAN]** button to play the first 10 seconds of each file.



Searching Folders

Press the **[CAT/FOLDER]** button to select and search folders.

Once the desired folder is displayed, press the **TUNE** knob to select.

The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

MENU : iPod®

iPod® Mode Display Controls

(1) Mode

Displays current operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Shuffle, displays the currently operating function.

(3) Song Index

Displays the current song/total number of songs.

(4) Song Info

Displays information about the current song.

(5) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(6) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(7) Shuffle

Turns the Shuffle feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Shuffle All ➞ Off.

- Shuffle All : Plays all songs in shuffle order.

(8) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

- Repeat : Repeats the current song

(9) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired category.

Once you find the desired category, press the **TUNE** knob to select and play.

With the iPod® Mode

Playing/Pausing iPod® Songs

Once an iPod® is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing an iPod® song.

While playing, press the [II] button to pause and press [▶] button to play.

iPod® products with unsupported communication protocols may not properly operate in the audio system.

Changing Songs

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next song.

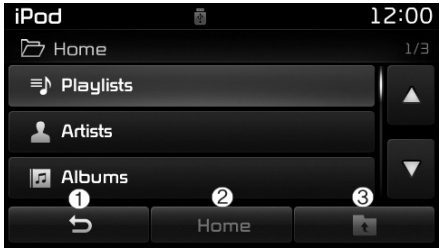
Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button after the song has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current song from the beginning.

Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button before the song has been playing for 1 second will start the previous song.

Slight time differences may exist depending your iPod® product.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Songs

While playing, press and hold the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current song.



Searching Categories

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired category.

Once you find the desired category, press the **TUNE** knob to select and play.

There are eight categories that can be searched, including Playlists, Artists, Albums, Genres, Songs, Composers, Audiobooks and Podcasts.

Category Menu

(1) Displays the play screen

(2) Moves to the iPod® root category screen

(3) Moves to the previous category

If the search mode is accessed while playing a song, the most recently searched category is displayed.

Search steps upon initial connection may differ depending on the type of iPod® device.

MENU : AUX

AUX Mode Display Controls

Press the **[MEDIA]** button ▶ Select [AUX]

An external device can be connected to play music.

Connecting an External Device

External audio players (Camcorders, car VCR, etc.) can be played through a dedicated cable.

If an external device connector is connected with the AUX terminal, then AUX mode will automatically operate. Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.

AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player (camcorder, car VCR, etc.) has been connected.

The AUX volume can be controlled separately from other audio modes.

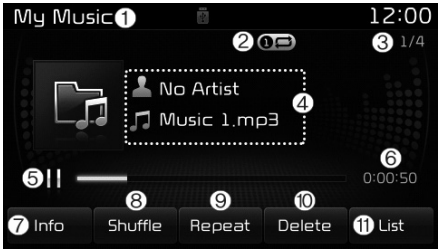
Connecting a connector jack to the AUX terminal without an external device will convert the system to AUX mode, but only output noise. When an external device is not being used, also remove the connector jack.

When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.

Fully insert the AUX cable to the AUX jack upon use.

MENU : My Music

My Music Mode Display Controls



(1) Mode

Displays current operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the currently operating function.

(3) File Index

Displays the current file/total number of files.

(4) File Info

Displays information about the current file.

(5) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(6) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(7) Info

Displays detailed information for the current file.

The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information is recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.

(8) Shuffle

Turns the Shuffle feature on/off.

(9) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

(10) Delete

Deletes the current file.

(11) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

With the My Music Mode

Playing/Pausing My Music Files

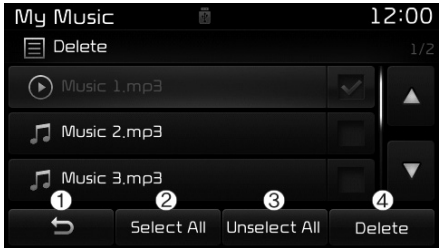
While playing, press the [II] button to pause and press [▶] button to play.

If there are no files saved within My Music, the [My Music] button will be disabled.

Changing Files

Press the [**SEEK TRACK**] button to move to the previous or next file.

Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.
Pressing the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button before the file has been playing for 1 second will start the previous file.



Selecting from the List

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired file.
Once you find the desired file, press the **TUNE** knob to start playing.
From the List screen, it is possible to delete files you previously saved into My Music.

List Menu

(1) Moves to the previous screen.

(2) Selects all files.

(3) Deselects all selected files.

(4) Deletes selected files.

After selecting the files you want to delete, press the [Delete] button to delete the selected files.

If there is memory available, up to 6,000 files can be saved. Identical files cannot be copied more than 1,000 times.

To check memory information, go to **[SETUP]** ▶ [System] ▶ [Memory Information]

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

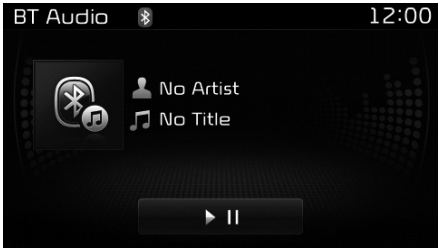
While playing, press and hold the [**SEEK TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan

Press the **[SCAN]** button to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

MENU : *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio

Using Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Audio Mode



Playing/Pausing *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio

Once a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device is connected, the mode will automatically start.

While playing, press the [▶II] button to pause and press [▶II] button to play.

The play/pause feature may operate differently depending on the mobile phone.

Changing Files

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next file.

Setting Connection

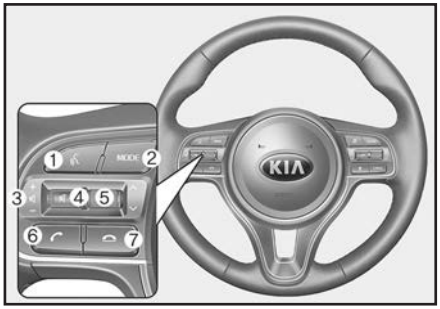
If a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device has not been connected, press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ [Phone] button to display the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology connection screen.

It is possible to use the pair phone, connect/disconnect and delete features from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone.

If music is not yet playing from your mobile device after converting to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio mode, pressing the play button once may start playing the mode. Check to see that music is playing from the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device after converting to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Mode.

Phone Mode

Making a call using the Steering wheel controls



❊ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) When pressed shortly
- Starts voice recognition
- When selecting during a voice prompt, stops the prompt and converts to voice command waiting state

When pressed and held
- Ends voice recognition

(2) Each time this button is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➡ FM2 ➡ AM ➡ SAT1 ➡ SAT2 ➡ SAT3 ➡ CD ➡ USB(iPod®) ➡ AUX ➡ My Music ➡ BT Audio

If the media is not connected or a disc is not inserted, corresponding modes will be disabled.

(3) Used to control volume.

(4) Mutes audio volume.

(5) When pressed shortly
- Radio mode : searches broadcast frequencies saved to presets.
- Media(CD/USB/iPod®/My Music/BT Audio) modes : changes the track, file or chapter.

When pressed and held
- Radio mode, automatically searches broadcast frequencies and channels
- Media(CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes, rewinds or fast forwards the track or song(file)
- BT Audio mode may not be supported in some mobile phones.

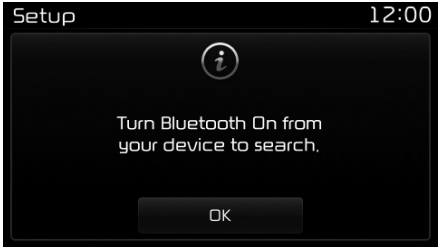
(6) When pressed shortly
- When pressed in the phone screen, displays call history screen
- When pressed in the dial screen, makes a call
- When pressed in the incoming call screen, answers the call
- When pressed during call waiting, switches to waiting call (Call Waiting)

When pressed and held
- When pressed in the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree wait mode, redials the last call
- When pressed during a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree call, switches call back to mobile phone (Private)
- When pressed while calling on the mobile phone, switches call back to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree (Operates only when *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree is connected)

(7) Ends phone call

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

When No Devices have been Paired



① Press the **[PHONE]** button or the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel controls. The following screen is displayed.

② Press the [OK] button to enter the Pair Phone screen.

- Vehicle Name : Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device
- Passkey : Passkey used to pair the device

③ From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.

❊ SSP: Secure Simple Pairing

Non SSP supported device :

④ After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.

Enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.

SSP supported device :

④ After a few moments, a screen is displayed 6 digits passkey.

Check the passkey on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device and confirm.

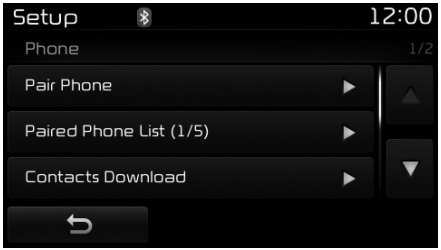
⑤ Once pairing is complete, the following screen is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

If *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the [PHONE] button or the [CALL] button on the steering wheel controls displays the following screen. Press the [Pair] button to pair a new device or press the [Connect] to connect a previously paired device.

Pairing through [PHONE] Setup

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Pair]



Pair Phone

The following steps are the same as those described in the section “When No Devices have been Paired” on the previous page.

Paired Phone List

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Pair Phone List]

- Connected Phone : Device that is currently connected
- Paired Phone : Device that is paired but not connected

Connecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and press the [Connect](1) button.

Disconnecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and press the [Disconnect](2) button.

Deleting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and press the [Delete](3) button.

✻ NOTICE

- **When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.**
- **If a paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and contacts data will also be deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

Changing Priority

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. The "Change Priority" feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones.

From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to switch to the highest priority, then press the [Change priority](4) button from the Menu. The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.

Phone Menu Screen

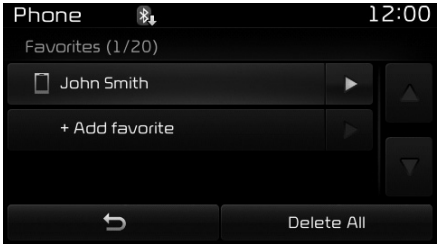
Phone Menus

With a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected, press the **[PHONE]** button to display the Phone menu screen.

- Favorites : Up to 20 frequently used contacts can be saved for easy access
- Call History : Displays the call history list screen
- Contacts : Displays the Contacts list screen
- Dial Number : Displays the dial screen where numbers can be dialed to make calls
- Setup : Displays Phone related settings.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the [Call History] button but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks to download call history data.**
- **If you press the [Contacts] button but there is no contact data stored, a prompt is displayed which asks to download contacts data.**
- **This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**



Favorites

- Saved favorite contact : Connects call upon selection
- To add favorite : Downloaded contacts be saved as favorite.
- Delete All : Deletes all stored favorite contacts

✻ NOTICE

- **To save Favorite, contacts should be downloaded.**
- **Contact saved in Favorites will not be automatically updated if the contact has been updated in the phone. To update Favorites, delete the Favorite and create a new Favorite.**

Call History

A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

- Call History :
  - Displays recent calls (call history)
  - Connects call upon selection
- Download : Download Recent Call History
- Call history may not be saved in the call history list in some mobile phones.
- Calls received with hidden caller ID will not be saved in the call history list.
- Calling through the call history is not possible when there is no call history stored or a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone is not connected.
- Up to 50 received, dialed and missed calls are stored in Call History.
- Time of received/dialed calls and call time information are not saved.

Contacts

The list of saved phone book entries is displayed. Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

- Contacts List :
  - Displays downloaded contact entries.
  - Connects call upon selection.
- Sort by : Find a contact in alphabetical order.
- Download : Download contact entries.

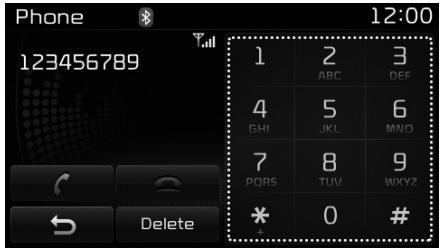
✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 contacts saved in your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone can be downloaded into the car contacts. Contacts that have been downloaded to the car cannot be edited or deleted on the phone.**
- **Mobile phone contacts are managed separately for each paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device (max 5 devices x 1,000 contacts each). Previously downloaded data is maintained even if the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device has been disconnected. (However, the contacts and call history saved to the phone will be deleted if a paired phone is deleted.)**
- **It is possible to download contacts during Bluetooth® streaming audio.**
- **When downloading contacts, the icon will be displayed within the status bar.**

(Continued)

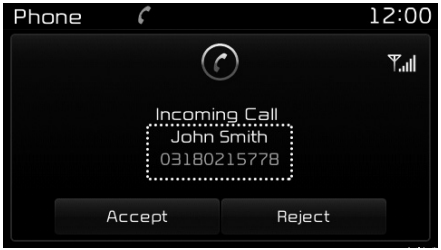
(Continued)

- **It is not possible to begin downloading a contact list when the contact download feature has been turned off within the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device. In addition, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download contacts. If downloading does not normally occur, check the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device settings or the screen state.**
- **The contacts download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information of supported Bluetooth® devices and function support, refer to your phone's user manual.**



Calling by Dialing a Number

- Dial Pad : Used to enter phone number
- Call : If a number has been entered, calls the number, If no number has been entered, switches to call history screen
- End : Deletes the entered phone number
- Delete : Deletes entered numbers one digit at a time



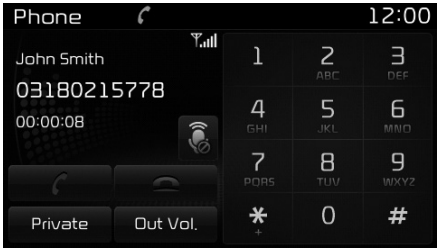
Answering a Call

Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.

- Caller : Displays the other party's name when the incoming caller is saved within your contacts
- Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number
- Accept : Accepts the incoming call
- Reject : Rejects the incoming call

✻ NOTICE

- **When an incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features are disabled. Only the call volume will operate.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**



During a Handsfree Call

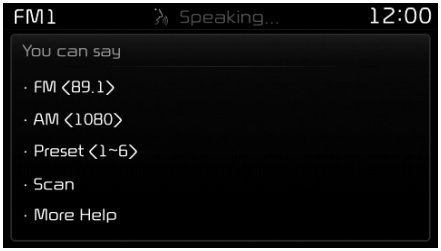
- Caller : Displays the other party's name if the incoming caller is saved within your contacts
- Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number
- Call time : Displays the call time
- End : Ends call
- Private : Converts to Private mode
- Out Vol. : Sets call volume as heard by the other party
- Mute : Turns Mic Mute On/Off

✻ NOTICE

If the mic is muted, the other party will not be able to hear your voice.

Voice Recognition Mode

Using Voice Recognition



Starting Voice Recognition

Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls. Say a command.

If prompt feedback is in [ON], then the system will say “Please say a command after the beep (BEEP)”

- If prompt feedback is in [ON] mode, then the system will only say “(BEEP)”
- To change Prompt Feedback [ON]/[OFF], go to **[SETUP]** ▶ [System] ▶ [Prompt Feedback]

For proper recognition, say the command after the voice instruction and beep tone.

✻ NOTICE

Contact List Best Practices

1) **Do not store single-name entries (e.g., “Bob”, “Mom”, “Kim” etc.). Instead, always use full names (including first and last names) for all contacts (e.g., use “Jacob Stevenson” instead of “Dad”).**
2) **Do not use abbreviations (i.e., use “Lieutenant” instead of “Lt.” or “Sergeant” instead of “Sgt.”).**
3) **Do not use acronyms (i.e., use “County Finance Department” instead of “CFD”).**
4) **Do not use special characters (e.g., “@”, “hyphen -”, “asterisk*”, “ampersand &”).**
5) **If a name is not recognized from the contact list, change it to a more descriptive name (e.g., use “Grandpa Joseph” instead of “Pa Joe”).**

Skipping Prompt Messages

While prompt message is being stated ▶ Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls.

The prompt message is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

Re-starting Voice Recognition

While system waits for a command Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls.

The command wait state is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

Illustration on Using Voice Recognition

Starting Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :

Please say a command after the beep (BEEP)

Beep~

More Help

More Help
Here are some examples of mode commands.
You can say a radio type like ‘FM’, ‘AM’, or ‘Satellite’.
You can also say a media source like ‘USB’, ‘My Music’, or ‘iPod®’.
Additionally, there are phone commands like ‘Contacts’, ‘Call History’, or ‘Dial Number’.
You can find more detailed commands in the user's manual.
Please say a command after the beep.

Skipping Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :

Please say a... while guidance message is being stated

Shortly pressing the button :

(BEEP)

More Help

More Help
Here are some examples of mode commands.
You can say a radio type like ‘FM’, ‘AM’, or ‘Satellite’.
You can also say a media source like ‘USB’, ‘My Music’, or ‘iPod®’.
Additionally, there are phone commands like ‘Contacts’, ‘Call History’, or ‘Dial Number’.
You can find more detailed commands in the user's manual.
Please say a command after the beep.

Ending Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :

Please say a command after the beep (BEEP)

Contacts

Please say the contact name you want to call.

Cancel

Voice Command List

Common Commands

These commands can be used in most operations.
(However a few commands may not be available during certain operations)

Command	Function
More Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system.
Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode.
Call <Name>	Calls <Name> saved in Contacts. Ex) Call “John Smith”
Call <Name> on Mobile	Calls <Name> to the number that is saved as “Mobile” in Contacts. Ex) Call “John Smith” on Mobile
Call <Name> in Office	Calls <Name> to the number that is saved as "Office" in Contacts. Ex) Call "John Smith" in Office
Call <Name> at Home	Calls <Name> to the number that is saved as "Home" in Contacts Ex) Call "John Smith" at Home
Call <Name> on Other	Calls <Name> to the number that is saved as "Other" in Contacts Ex) Call "John Smith" on Other
Phone	Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Favorites”,“Call History”, “Contacts” or ”Dial Number” execute corresponding functions.
Favorites	Displays the Favorite screen.

Command	Function
Call History	Displays the Call History screen.
Contacts	Displays the Contacts screen. After saying this command, say the name of a contact saved in the Contacts to automatically connect the call.
Dial Number	Displays the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number that you want to call.
Redial	Connects the last dialed call number.
Tutorial	Provides guidance on how to use voice recognition and Bluetooth® connections
Radio	• When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➡FM2➡AM➡SAT1➡SAT2➡SAT3➡FM1) • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen. • When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state. • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen.
FM1(FM One)	Displays the FM1 screen.
FM2(FM Two)	Displays the FM2 screen.
AM	Displays the AM screen.

Command	Function
FM Preset 1~6	Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6.
AM Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6.
FM 87.5~107.9	Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency.
AM 530~1710	Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency.
SIRIUS (Satellite)	• When listening to the SiriusXM®, maintains the current state. • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played SiriusXM® screen.
SIRIUS (Satellite) 1~3	Displays the selected SiriusXM® screen.
SIRIUS Channel 0~223	Plays the selected SiriusXM® channel.
Media	Moves to the most recently played media screen.
CD	Plays the music on the CD.
USB	Plays music on the USB device.
iPod®	Plays music on the iPod®.
My Music	Plays music saved in My Music.

Command	Function
AUX (Auxiliary)	Plays the connected external device.
Bluetooth® Audio	Plays the music saved in connected Bluetooth® device.
Mute	Mutes the sound.
Cancel (Exit)	Ends voice command.

FM/AM Radio Commands

Commands available during FM, AM radio operation.

Command	Function
Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast station saved in Preset 1~6.
Scan	Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each.
Preset Scan	Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each.

Satellite Radio Commands

Commands that can be used while listening to Satellite Radio.

Command	Function
Channel 0~223	Plays the selected Satellite Radio channel.
Scan	Scans receivable channels from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each.
Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6.
Information	Displays the information of the current broadcast.

Audio CD Commands

Commands available during Audio CD operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the tracks within the CD.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current track.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order.
Track 1~30	Plays the desired track number.

MP3 CD / USB Commands

Commands available during USB and MP3 CD operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the files within the current folder.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Next Folder	Plays the first file in the next folder.
Previous Folder	Plays the first file in the previous folder.

iPod® Commands

Commands available during iPod® operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the songs within the current category.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current song.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order.

My Music Commands

Commands available during My Music operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays all saved files.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Delete	Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Audio Commands

Commands available during *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio streaming from mobile phone operation Command Operation.

Command	Function
Play	Plays the currently paused song.
Pause	Pauses the current song.

Setup Mode

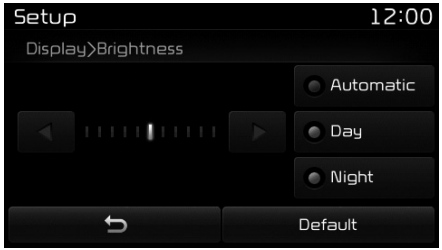
Press the **[SETUP]** button to display the Setup screen.

You can select and control options related to [Display], [Sound], [Clock/Calendar], [Phone] and [System].

With the Display Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Display]

You can select and control options related to [Brightness], [Mode Pop up] and [Media Display].

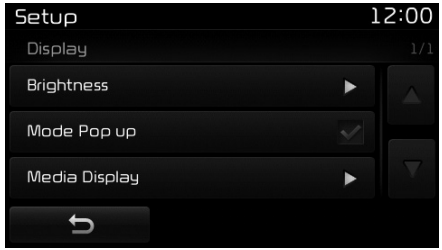


Adjusting the Brightness

Use the [Left/Right] buttons to adjust the screen brightness or set the Brightness on Automatic, Day or Night mode.

Press the [Default] button to reset.

- Automatic : Adjusts the brightness automatically.
- Day : Always maintains the brightness on high.
- Night : Always maintains the brightness on low.



Mode Pop up

This feature is used to display the Mode Pop up screen when entering radio and media modes.

When this feature is turned on, pressing the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button will display the Mode Pop up screen.

✻ NOTICE

The media Mode Pop up screen can be displayed only when two or more media modes have been connected.

Media Display

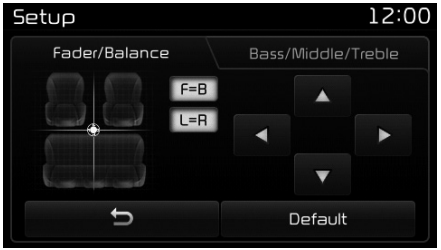
This feature is used to change the information displayed within USB and MP3 CD modes.

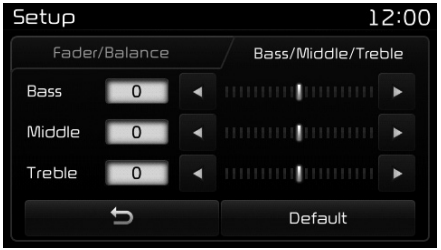
- Folder File : Displays file name and folder name.
- Album Artist Song : Displays album name/artist name/song name.

With the Sound Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Sound]

You can select and control options related to [Sound Settings], [Speed Dependent Vol.], [Voice Recognition Vol.] and [Touch Screen Beep].



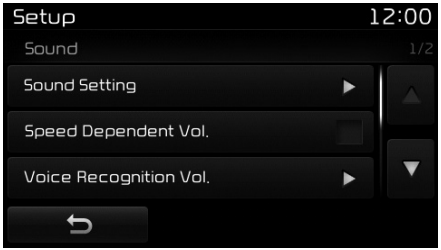


Sound Settings

Use the [Up/Down/Left/Right] buttons to adjust the Fader/Balance settings.

Use the [Left/Right] buttons to adjust the Bass/Middle/Treble settings.

Press the [Default] button to reset.

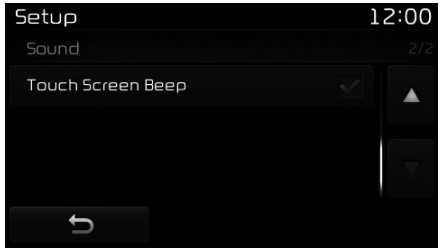


SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)

The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from On/Off.

Voice Recognition Volume

Use the [-], [+] buttons to adjust the Voice Recognition volume.



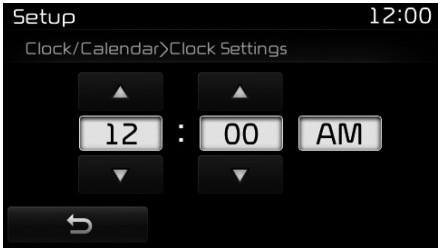
Touch Screen Beep

This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

With the Clock/Calendar Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Clock/Calendar]

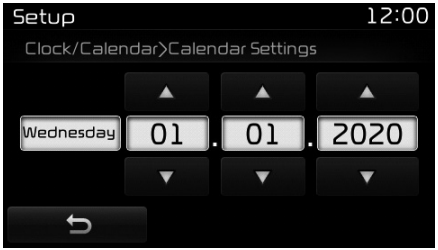
You can select and control options related to [Clock Settings], [Calendar Settings], [Time Format] and [Clock Display].



Clock Settings

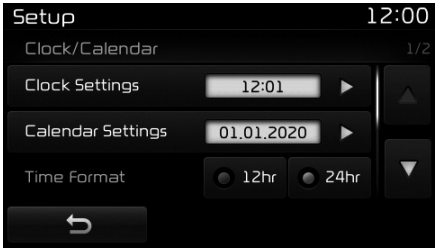
Use the [Up/Down] buttons to set the Hour, Minutes and AM/PM setting.

Press and hold the **[CLOCK]** button to display the Clock/Calendar screen.



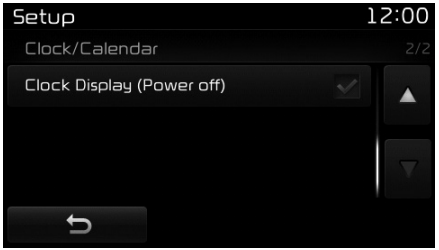
Calendar Settings

Use the [Up/Down] buttons to set the Day, Month and Year setting.



Time Format

This feature is used to change the clock format between 12hr or 24hr.



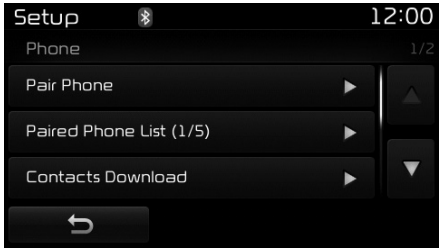
Clock Display

This feature is used to display a clock on the screen when the audio system is turned off.

With the Phone Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone]

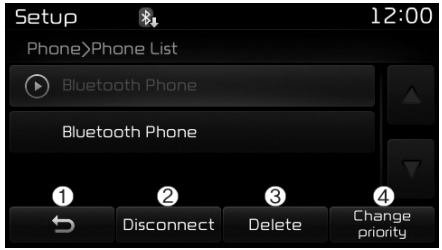
You can select and control options related to [Pair Phone], [Paired Phone List], [Contacts Download], [Auto Download], [Outgoing Volume] and [Bluetooth System Off].



Pairing a New Device

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the "Pairing through Phone Setup" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.



Viewing Paired Phone List

This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.

For more information, refer to the "Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

(1) Moves to the previous screen

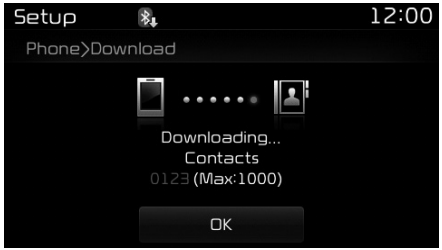
(2) Connect/Disconnect Phone : Connect/ disconnects currently selected phone

(3) Delete : Deletes the currently selected phone

(4) Change priority : Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority

✻ NOTICE - Before Downloading Contacts

- **Only contacts within connected phones can be downloaded. Also check to see that your mobile phone supports the download feature.**
- **To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports contact downloads, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
- **The contacts for only the connected phone can be downloaded.**



Downloading Contacts

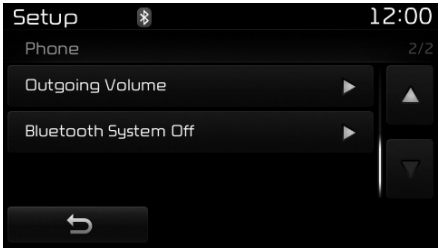
As the contacts are downloaded from the mobile phone, a download progress bar is displayed.

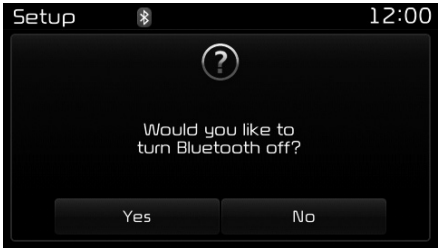
- Upon downloading phone contacts, the previous corresponding data is deleted.
- This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.
- Voice Recognition may not operate while contacts are being downloaded.

Outgoing Volume

Use the [-], [+] buttons to adjust the outgoing volume level.

While on a call, the volume can be changed by using the [**SEEK TRACK]** button.





Turning Bluetooth System Off

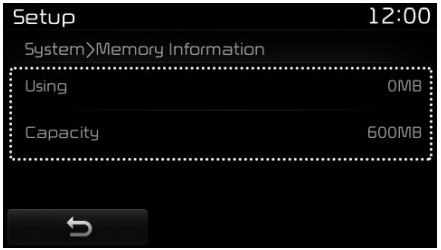
Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.

To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to **[SETUP]** ▶ [Phone] and press “Yes”.

With the System Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [System]

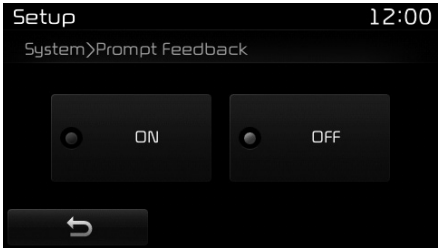
You can select and control options related to [Memory Information], [Prompt Feedback] and [Language].



Memory Information

This feature displays information related to system memory.

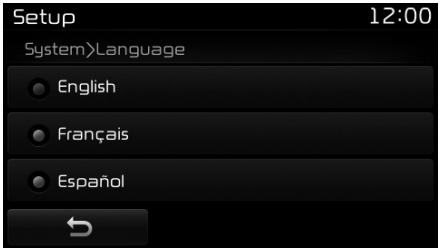
- Using : Displays capacity currently in use
- Capacity : Displays total capacity



Prompt Feedback

This feature is used to select the desired prompt feedback option from ON and OFF.

- ON : When using voice recognition, provides detailed guidance prompts
- OFF : When using voice recognition, omits some guidance prompts



Language

This feature is used to change the system and voice recognition language.

If the language is changed, the system will restart and apply the selected language.

iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. iPod® mobile digital device sold separately. The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. SiriusXM services require a subscription sold separately, or as a package, by Sirius XM Radio Inc. If you decide to continue service after your trial, the subscription plan you choose will automatically renew thereafter and you will be charged according to your chosen payment method at then-current rates. Fees and taxes apply. To cancel you must call SiriusXM at 1-866-635-2349. See SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at www.siriusxm.com. SiriusXM U.S. satellite and data services are available only in the 48 contiguous states, DC and Puerto Rico (with coverage limitations). SiriusXM satellite service is also available in Canada; see www.siriusxm.ca. All fees and programming subject to change.

Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. Android™ is a trademark of Google, Inc. BlackBerry is a registered trademark of Research In Motion Limited (RIM). All other marks, channel names and logos are the property of their respective owners. All rights reserved.

Declaration of Conformity

IC

This device complies with Industry Canada's licence-exempt RSSs.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
(1) This device may not cause interference; and
(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence.
L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Driving your vehicle

Before driving 6-4
- Before entering vehicle 6-4
- Necessary inspections 6-4
- Before starting 6-4

Key positions 6-6
- Illuminated ignition switch 6-6
- Ignition switch position 6-6
- Starting the engine 6-8

ENGINE START/STOP button 6-9
- Illuminated ENGINE START/STOP button 6-9
- ENGINE START/STOP button position 6-9
- Starting the engine with a smart key 6-11

Automatic transaxle 6-13
- Automatic transaxle operation 6-13
- Paddle shifter 6-17
- Shift lock system 6-18
- Good driving practices 6-19

Dual clutch transmission (DCT) 6-20
- Dual clutch transmission operation 6-20
- Good driving practices 6-27

Brake system 6-28
- Power brakes 6-28
- Parking brake – Foot type 6-30
- Electronic parking brake (EPB) 6-31
- Auto hold 6-38
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 6-42
- Electronic stability control (ESC) 6-44
- Vehicle stability management (VSM) 6-48
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) 6-49
- Good braking practices 6-50

Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)/ Forward collision warning (FCW) 6-51
- System setting and activation 6-51
- AEB warning message and system control 6-54
- Brake operation 6-55
- Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front radar) 6-56
- System malfunction 6-57
- Limitations of the system 6-58
- Recognizing pedestrians 6-61

Cruise Control system 6-62
- To set cruise control speed 6-63
- To increase cruise control set speed 6-63
- To decrease the cruising speed 6-64
- To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on 6-64
- To cancel cruise control 6-64
- To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) 6-65
- To turn cruise control off 6-65

Advanced smart cruise control system (ASCC) . . 6-66
• Speed setting (ASCC) 6-67
• Vehicle to vehicle distance setting (ASCC) 6-72
• To adjust the sensitivity of Advanced Smart Cruise Control 6-76
• To convert to cruise control mode: 6-77
• Limitations of the system 6-77
Drive mode integrated control system 6-83
• DRIVE mode 6-83
Blind spot detection system (BSD) 6-86
• BSD (Blind Spot Detection) / LCA (Lane Change Assist) 6-87
• RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 6-90
• Limitations condition 6-92
Lane departure warning system (LDWS) 6-94
• Warning indicator 6-96
• Conditions that cause the LDWS not to operate . . . 6-96
• Conditions that cause missed warnings and false warnings 6-97
Economical operation 6-98
Special driving conditions 6-100
• Hazardous driving conditions 6-100
• Rocking the vehicle 6-100
• Smooth cornering 6-101
• Driving at night 6-101
• Driving in the rain 6-102
• Driving in flooded areas 6-103
• Driving off-road 6-103
• Highway driving 6-103
Winter driving 6-104
• Snowy or icy conditions 6-104
• Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant 6-105
• Check battery and cables 6-105
• Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary 6-105
• Check spark plugs and ignition system 6-105
• To keep locks from freezing 6-105
• Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system 6-105
• Don’t let your parking brake freeze 6-106
• Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath . . . 6-106
• Carry emergency equipment 6-106
• Trailer towing 6-106
Vehicle load limit 6-107
• Tire and loading information label 6-107
• Certification label 6-111
Vehicle weight 6-112

Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.

The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, have the exhaust system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Engine exhaust

Do not inhale exhaust fumes or leave your engine running in a enclosed area for a prolonged time. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

⚠ WARNING - Open trunk

Do not drive with the trunk open. Poisonous exhaust gases can enter the passenger compartment. If you must drive with the trunk open proceed as follows:

1. **Close all windows.**
2. **Open side vents.**
3. **Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at the highest speed.**

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tires.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, at the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in chapter 8, “Maintenance”.

⚠ WARNING - Distracted driving

Focus on the road while driving. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of the vehicle. Use of any handled devices, other equipment or vehicle systems that distract the drive should not be used during vehicle operation.

Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Buckle your seat belt.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

⚠ WARNING - Fire risk

When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.

⚠ WARNING - Check surroundings

Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).

⚠ WARNING - Loose objects

Securely store items in your vehicle. When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident.

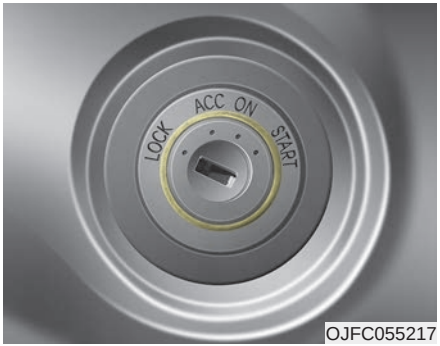
⚠ WARNING - Driving while intoxicated

Do not drive while intoxicated. Drinking and driving is dangerous. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment.

Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous as or more dangerous than driving drunk.

KEY POSITIONS (IF EQUIPPED)

Illuminated ignition switch



OJFC055217

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will illuminate for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on. It will also go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

Ignition switch position

LOCK

OJF055172L

The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position.

ACC (Accessory)

The electrical accessories are operative. If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key while turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

ON

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

START

Turn the ignition switch to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning light can be checked in this position.

The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park) for automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition switch

Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC while the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.

⚠ WARNING - Key holder

Do not attach small purses, multiple keys, or any other heavy accessories to the driver's key chain used to start the vehicle. It is possible for the driver to accidently cause the key inserted in the vehicle to change the ignition position to the ACC position while the vehicle is moving thereby increasing the risk of an accident and causing the deactivation of several safety features.

⚠ WARNING - Leaving the Vehicle

To avoid unexpected or sudden vehicle movement, never leave your vehicle if the transmission is not locked in the P (Park) position and the parking brake is fully engaged. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off.

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING - Proper footwear

Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots, sandals, etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

   It should be started ***without depressing the accelerator.***
4. Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary.

   Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

⚠ WARNING - Steering wheel

Never reach for any controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control.

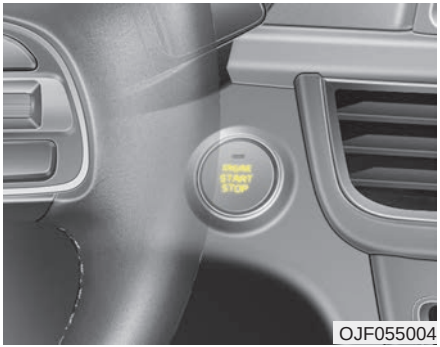
If the engine stalls while you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.

⚠ CAUTION - Starter

Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.

ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)

Illuminated ENGINE START/STOP button



OJF055004

Whenever the front door is opened, the ENGINE START/STOP button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

When all entrances are closed, if you lock the vehicle by using the transmitter or the smart key, the light will go off immediately.

ENGINE START/STOP button position

OFF

Not illuminated

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the ENGINE START/STOP button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

In an emergency situation while the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

ACC(Accessory)

Amber

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button while it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

If the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

ON

Super red

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

START/RUN

Not illuminated

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/ STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

If you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission vehicles, the engine will not start and the ENGINE START/STOP button changes as follow:

OFF ➔ ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC

✻ NOTICE

If you leave the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.

⚠ WARNING - Starting vehicle

Never press the ENGINE START/STOP button while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.

Starting the engine with a smart key

1. Carry the smart key or place it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied
3. Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
4. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button while depressing the brake pedal.

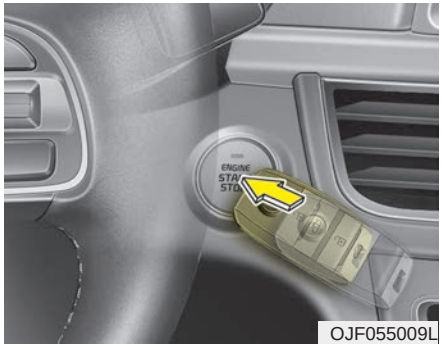
   It should be started without depressing the accelerator.
5. Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary.

   Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, a message "key is not in the vehicle" will appear on the LCD display. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off while the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

⚠ WARNING - Unintended vehicle movement

Never leave the smart key in the vehicle with children or vehicle occupants who are unfamiliar with the vehicle operation. Pushing the ENGINE START/STOP button while the smart key is in the vehicle may result in unintended engine activation and/or unintended vehicle movement.



OJF055009L

- If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.

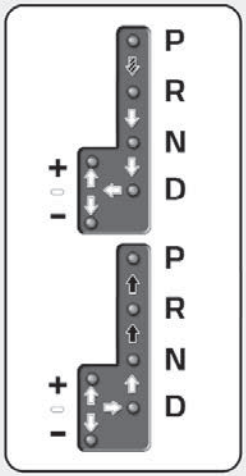
  The side with the lock button should contact the engine start/stop button directly.

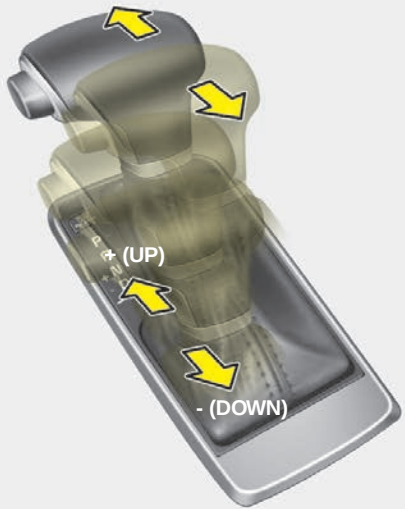
  When you press the engine start/stop button directly with the smart key, the smart key should contact the button at a right angle.

- When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you can't start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button for 10 seconds while it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.

Do not press the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE





Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OJF055012

Automatic transaxle operation

The automatic transaxle has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

✻ NOTICE

The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).

For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING - Leaving Vehicle

Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Do not use the P position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is locked in the P position and set the parking brake fully. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.

⚠ CAUTION - Transaxle

To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on. The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion.

When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle with the engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.

Transaxle ranges

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the drive wheels from rotating.

Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠ CAUTION - Shifting

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion, except when "Rocking the vehicle" explained in this chapter.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

- Parking in N (Neutral) gear

Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After stopping your vehicle, depress the brake pedal and move the transaxle shift lever to [P] with the ignition button in [ON] or while the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied, release the parking brake.
   - For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles, depress the brake pedal with the ignition button in [ON] or while the engine is running to disengage the parking brake. If [AUTO HOLD] function is used while driving (If [AUTO HOLD] indicator is on in the cluster), press [AUTO HOLD] switch and [AUTO HOLD] function should be turn off.
3. While depressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button [OFF].
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to [OFF] only when the shift lever is in [P].
4. Change the gear shift lever to [N] (Neutral) while depressing the brake pedal and pressing down a tool (e.g. flathead screw-driver) into the [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

⚠ WARNING

- **With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in [P] (Park) for safety and apply the parking brake.**
- **Before parking in [N] (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in [N] gear on any slopes or gradients.**

  If parked and left in [N], the vehicle may move and cause serious damage or injury.

✻ NOTICE

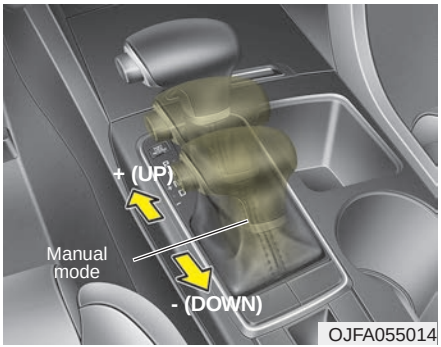
After the ignition switch has been turned off, the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) cannot be released.

For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles with [AUTO HOLD] function used while driving, if the ignition button has been turned [OFF], the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will be engaged automatically. Therefore, [AUTO HOLD] function should be turned off before the ignition button is turned off.

D (Drive)

This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.



Manual mode

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the manual mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

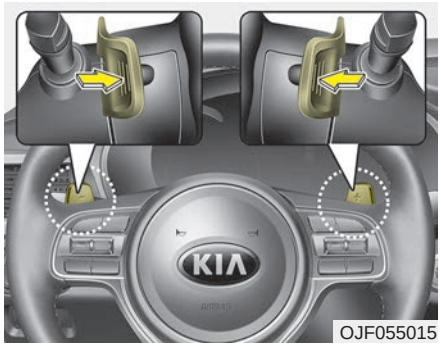
Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

- In manual mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.
- In manual mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.

- In manual mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.
- In manual mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.
- To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.
- When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.

Paddle shifter (if equipped)



OJF055015

The paddle shifter is available when the shift lever is in the D position or the manual mode.

With the shift lever in the D position

The paddle shifter will operate when the vehicle speed is more than 10km/h (6.2mph).

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual mode.

When the vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h (6.2mph), if you depress the accelerator pedal for more than 5 seconds or if you shift the shift lever from D (Drive) to manual mode and shift it from manual mode to D (Drive) again, the system changes from manual mode to automatic mode.

With the shift lever in the manual mode

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

If you pull the [+] and [-] paddle shifters at the same time, you cannot shift the gear.

Shift lock system

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

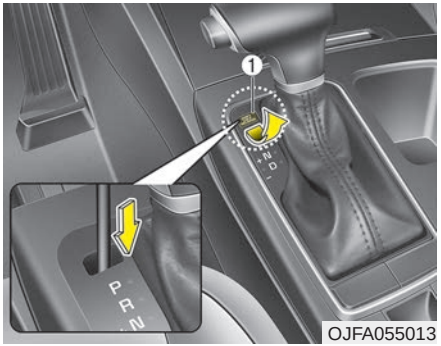
To shift the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise & vibration near the shift lever may be heard. It is a normal condition.

⚠ WARNING - Shifting from park

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and while shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.



Shift-lock override

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g. flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.

5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shiftlock override access hole then install the cap.
7. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Ignition key interlock system

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position. Even if the ignition switch is in the LOCK position, the key cannot be removed.

If your vehicle is equipped with ENGINE START/STOP button, the button will not change to the OFF position unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Good driving practices

- Never move the gear shift lever from P (Park) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the gear shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

✻ NOTICE - Kickdown Mechanism

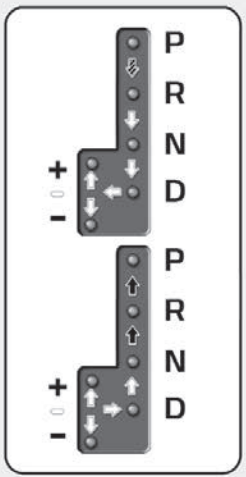
Use the kickdown mechanism for maximum acceleration. Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point. The automatic transaxle will shift to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

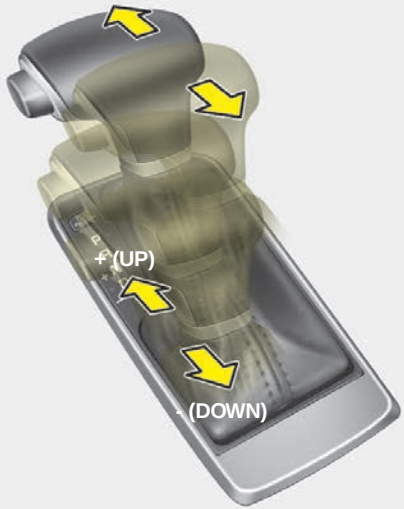
Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually while releasing the service brakes.

When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.

DUAL CLUTCH TRANSMISSION (DCT) (IF EQUIPPED)





Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OJF055012

Dual clutch transmission operation

The dual clutch transmission has seven forward speeds and one reverse speed.

The individual speeds are selected automatically in the D (Drive) position.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

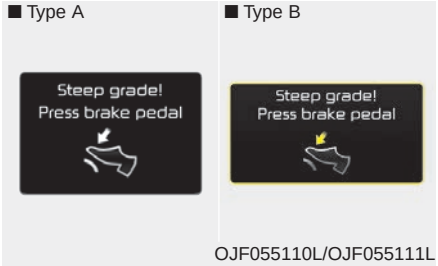
- **ALWAYS check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position, then set the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not use engine braking (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads. The vehicle may slip causing an accident.**

- The Dual Clutch Transmission gives the driving feel of a manual transmission, yet provides the ease of a fully automatic transmission. Unlike a traditional automatic transmission, the gear shifting can be felt (and heard) on the dual clutch transmission
  - Think of it as an automatically shifting manual transmission.
  - Shift into Drive range and get fully automatic shifting, similar to a conventional automatic transmission.
- Dual clutch transmission adopts dry-type dual clutch, which is different from the torque converter of an automatic transmission, and shows better acceleration performance during driving. But, initial launch from a stop might be little bit slower than with an Automatic Transmission.
- The dry-type clutch transfers torque and provides a direct driving feeling which may feel different from a conventional automatic transmission with a torque converter. This may be more noticeable when starting from a stop or low vehicle speed.
- When rapidly accelerating at low vehicle speed, engine could rev at higher rpm than with a comparable Automatic Transmission.
- For smooth launch uphill, press down the accelerator pedal smoothly depending on the current conditions.
- If you release your foot from the accelerator pedal at a low vehicle speed, you may feel strong engine brake, which is similar to a manual transmission.
- When driving downhill, you may use Sports Mode and press the paddle shifters to downshift to a lower gear in order to control your speed without using the brake pedal excessively.
- When you turn the engine on and off, you may hear clicking sounds as the system goes through a self test. This is a normal sound for the Dual Clutch Transmission.

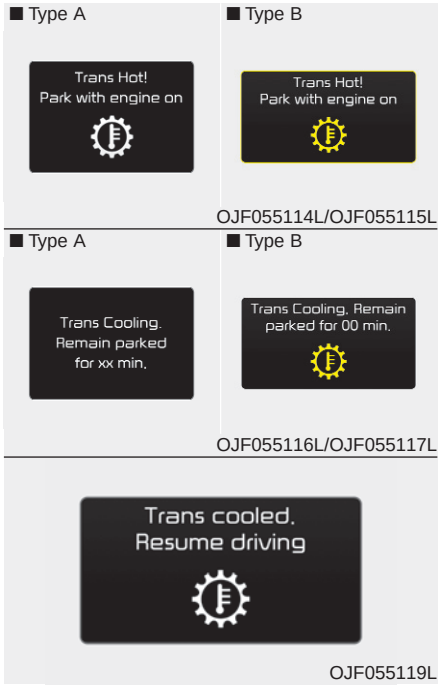


OJF055110L/OJF055111L

- To hold the vehicle on a hill use the foot brake or the parking brake. If the vehicle is held by applying the accelerator pedal on a hill the clutch and transmission will be overheated resulting in damage.

  At this time, a warning message will appear on the LCD display and you may feel a vibration.

- If the clutch becomes overheated by excessive use of the clutch to hold on a hill, you may notice a shuddering feeling and a blinking display on the instrument cluster. When this occurs, the clutch is disabled until the clutch cools to normal temperatures. If this occurs, pull over to a safe location, shift into P (Park) and apply the foot brake with the engine on for a certain time until the warning on the LCD screen disappears.
- If the LCD warning is active, the foot brake must be applied.
- Ignoring the warnings can lead to damage to the transmission.
- If the display continues to blink, for your safety, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.



- Under certain conditions such as repeated launch on steep grades, the clutch in the transmission could overheat.

  At this time, a warning message (“Transmission temp. is high! Stop safely”) will appear on the LCD display.

  When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode engages. If the safe protection mode engages, the gear position indicator on the cluster blinks with a chime sound.

  At this time, a warning message will appear on the LCD display and driving may not be smooth.

  If you ignore this warning, the driving condition may become worse. To return the normal driving condition, stop the vehicle and apply the foot brake for a few minutes before driving off.
- Gear shifts may be more noticeable than a conventional automatic transmission. This is a normal characteristic of this type of dual clutch transmission.
- An overheated Dual clutch transmission may change the gear shifting characteristics, and will illuminate a warning message on the LCD display if the kickdown mechanism is excessively used.

- Do not use the kickdown mechanism to return to normal driving. Also, temporarily stop the vehicle at a safe location, when the warning message illuminates on the LCD display.
- During the first 1,500km (1,000miles), you may feel that the vehicle may not be smooth when accelerating at low speed. During this break-in period, the shift quality and performance of your new vehicle is continuously optimized.
- Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
- Do not put the shift lever in N (Neutral) while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

- Holding the Vehicle Using Accelerator Pedal

Do not attempt to hold your vehicle on a hill by applying the accelerator pedal. This can cause your clutch and transmission to be damaged as a result of overheating.

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift from P (Park), you must depress firmly on the brake pedal and make sure your foot is off the accelerator pedal.

The shift lever must be in P (Park) before turning the engine off.

⚠ WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the shift lever is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the engine off.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake.**

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠ CAUTION

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transmission are not engaged.

Use N (Neutral) if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop with the engine ON. Shift into P (Park) if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

⚠ WARNING

Do not shift into gear unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal. Shifting into gear when the engine is running at high speed can cause the vehicle to move very rapidly. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit people or objects.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral).

The engine brake will not work and may lead to an accident.

- Parking in N (Neutral) gear

Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After stopping your vehicle, depress the brake pedal and move the transaxle shift lever to [P] with the ignition button in [ON] or while the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied, release the parking brake.
   - For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles, depress the brake pedal with the ignition button in [ON] or while the engine is running to disengage the parking brake. If [AUTO HOLD] function is used while driving (If [AUTO HOLD] indicator is on in the cluster), press [AUTO HOLD] switch and [AUTO HOLD] function should be turn off.
3. While depressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button [OFF].
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to [OFF] only when the shift lever is in [P].
4. Change the gear shift lever to [N] (Neutral) while depressing the brake pedal and pressing down a tool (e.g. flathead screw-driver) into the [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

⚠ WARNING

- **With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in [P] (Park) for safety and apply the parking brake.**
- **Before parking in [N] (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in [N] gear on any slopes or gradients.**

  If parked and left in [N], the vehicle may move and cause serious damage or injury.

✻ NOTICE

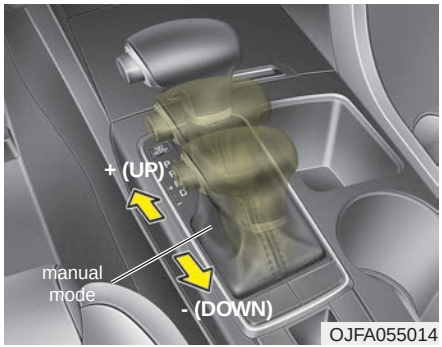
After the ignition switch has been turned off, the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) cannot be released.

For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles with [AUTO HOLD] function used while driving, if the ignition button has been turned [OFF], the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will be engaged automatically. Therefore, [AUTO HOLD] function should be turned off before the ignition button is turned off.

D (Drive)

This is the normal driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a seven-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or driving uphill depress the accelerator pedal further until you feel the transmission downshift to a lower gear.



OJFA055014

Manual mode

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to select the desired range of gears for the current driving conditions.

+ (Up) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

- (Down) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

- **Only the seven forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **Downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **When the engine rpm approaches the red zone the transmission will upshift automatically.**
- **If the driver presses the lever to + (Up) or - (Down) position, the transmission may not make the requested gear change if the next gear is outside of the allowable engine rpm range. The driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine rpms below the red zone.**

Shift lock system

For your safety, the Dual clutch transmission has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

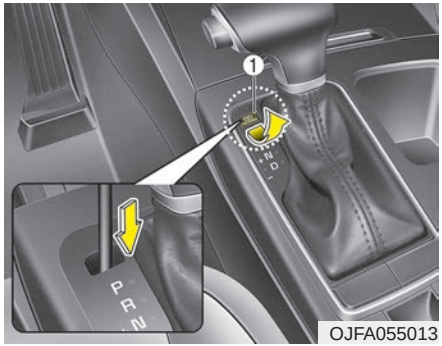
To shift the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise & vibration near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

⚠ WARNING

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and while shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the car.



OJFA055013

Shift-lock override

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g. flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.
5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shiftlock override access hole then install the cap.
7. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the car is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the car out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the car in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow the car.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the car from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

✻ NOTICE - Kickdown Mechanism

Use the kickdown mechanism for maximum acceleration. Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point. The dual clutch transmission will shift to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually while releasing the service brakes.

BRAKE SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

⚠ CAUTION - Brake Pedal

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormally high brake temperatures which can cause excessive brake lining and pad wear.

⚠ WARNING - Steep hill braking

Avoid continuous application of the brakes when descending a long or steep hill by shifting to a lower gear. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.

Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly while maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.

In the event of brake failure

If service brakes fail to operate while the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

Avoid applying the parking brake to stop the vehicle while it is moving except in an emergency situation. Applying the parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.

⚠ CAUTION - Replace brake pads

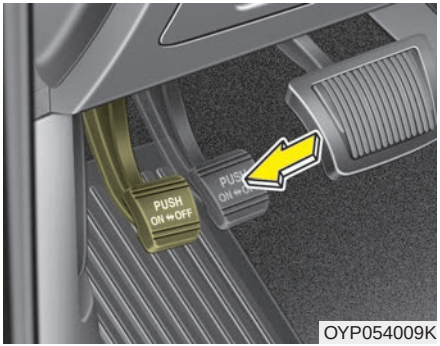
Do not continue to drive with worn brake pads. Continuing to drive with worn brake pads can damage the braking system and result in costly brake repairs.

⚠ WARNING - Brake wear

Do not ignore high pitched wear sounds from your brakes. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

Parking brake – Foot type (if equipped)

Applying the parking brake



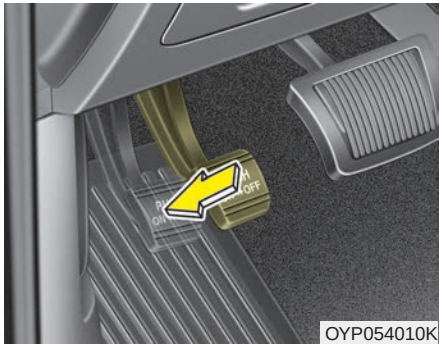
OYP054009K

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then depress the parking brake pedal down as far as possible.

⚠ CAUTION - Parking brake

Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad (or lining) and brake rotor wear.

Releasing the parking brake


OYP054010K

To release the parking brake, depress the parking brake pedal a second time while applying the foot brake. The pedal will automatically extend to the fully released position.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake use

- **Never allow a passenger to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parked to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicles which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

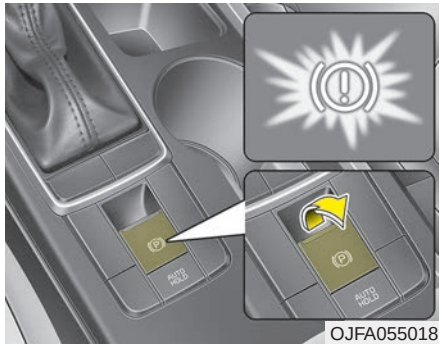
Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

Electronic parking brake (EPB) (if equipped)

Applying the parking brake



To apply the EPB (electronic parking brake):

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the warning light comes on.

- If Auto Hold is operating (Green light), EPB is applied automatically when the engine is turned off.
- If Auto Hold is in ready position (White light), EPB is applied automatically After 1 second from the engine off timing. In this case, if the EPB switch is pressed within 1 second, the EPB will not be applied.

✻ NOTICE

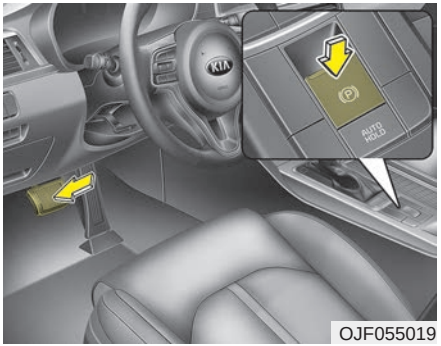
On a steep incline or when pulling a trailer, if the vehicle does not remain at a standstill, do as follows:
1. Apply the EPB.
2. Pull up the EPB switch for more than 3 seconds.

Do not operate the parking brake/ EPB while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation.

✻ NOTICE

A click or electric brake motor whine sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.

Releasing the parking brake



OJF055019

To release the EPB (electronic parking brake), press the EPB switch while doing the following:

- Have the ignition switch or engine start/stop button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- The shift lever must be in P (Park).

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

To release EPB (electronic parking brake) automatically:

- Shift lever in P (Park)

  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Shift lever in N (Neutral)

  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission vehicle

  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine hood and trunk.
  4. Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in R (Rear), D (Drive) or Sports mode.

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

✻ NOTICE

- **For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the ignition switch or engine stop/start button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

Do not follow the above procedure when driving on a flat level ground. The vehicle may suddenly move forward.

✻ NOTICE

If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.

EPB (electronic parking brake) may be automatically applied when:

- The EPB is overheated
- Requested by other systems

✻ NOTICE

If the driver turns the engine off by mistake while Auto Hold is operating, EPB will be automatically applied. (Vehicles equipped with Auto Hold)

System warning

- If you try to drive off depressing the accelerator pedal with the EPB applied, but the EPB doesn't release automatically, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the engine hood, driver's door or trunk is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the above situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

⚠ WARNING - Parking Brake Use

All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parked to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.

- A click or electric brake motor whine sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.
- When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.
- The EPB may malfunction if you drive with the EPB applied.
- When you automatically release EPB by depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.

System warning

■ Type A

OJF055249L

■ Type B

OJF055250L

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

✻ NOTICE

Depress the brake pedal when the above message appears for the Auto Hold and EPB may not activate.

System warning

■ Type A

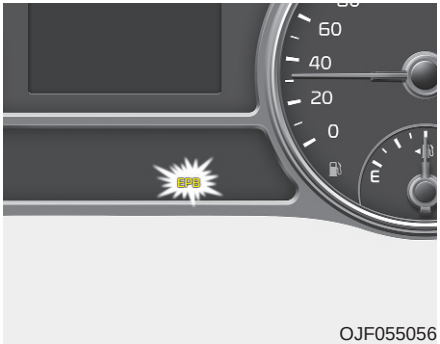
OJF055251L

■ Type B

OJF055252L

If the EPB is applied while Auto Hold is activated because of ESC (Electronic Stability Control) signal, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

EPB malfunction indicator (if equipped)



OJF055056

This warning light illuminates if the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operation normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch or the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

- The EPB warning light may illuminate if the EPB switch operates abnormally. Shut the engine off and turn it on again after a few minutes. The warning light will go off and the EPB switch will operate normally. However, if the EPB warning light is still on, have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.
- If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB is not applied.
- If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, then pull it up. Once more press it back to its original position and pull it back up. If the EPB warning does not go off, have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal while driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only while you are holding the EPB switch.

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the electronic parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. Applying the electronic parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the electronic parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

✻ NOTICE

During emergency braking by the EPB, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

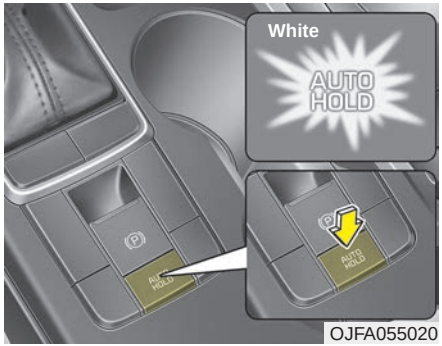
If you notice a continuous noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

When the EPB (electronic parking brake) is not released

If the EPB does not release normally, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

AUTO HOLD (if equipped)

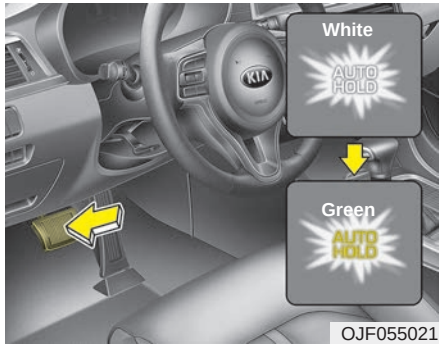
The Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.



OJFA055020

1. Depress the brake pedal, start the engine and then press the Auto Hold button. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on indicating the system is in standby.

   Before the Auto Hold will engage, the driver's door, engine hood must be closed and the driver's seat belt must be fastened.



OJF055021

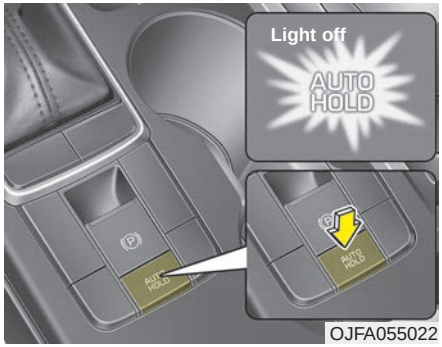
2. When coming to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from white to green indicating the AUTO HOLD is engaged and EPB is applied. The vehicle will remain at a standstill even if you release the brake pedal.
3. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

4. If you press the accelerator pedal with the shift lever in D (Drive) or manual mode, the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The indicator changes from green to white indicating the Auto Hold is in standby and the EPB is released.

When driving off from Auto Hold by depressing the accelerator pedal, always check the surrounding area near your vehicle.

Slowly depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth launch.

Cancel



OJFA055022

To cancel the Auto Hold operation, press the Auto Hold switch. The AUTO HOLD indicator will go out.

To cancel the Auto Hold operation when the vehicle is at a standstill, press the Auto Hold switch while depressing the brake pedal.

✻ NOTICE

- **The following are conditions when the Auto Hold will not engage (Auto Hold light will not turn green and the Auto Hold system remains in stand by):**
  - **The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened**
  - **The engine hood is opened**
  - **The shift lever is in P (Park) or R (Reverse)**
  - **The EPB is applied**
- **For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB under any of the following conditions (Auto Hold light remains white and the EPB automatically applies):**
  - **The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened**
  - **The engine hood is opened**
  - **The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes**
  - **The vehicle is standing on a steep slope**
  - **The vehicle moved several times**

(Continued)

(Continued)

In these cases, the brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, press foot brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release parking brake manually with the EPB switch.

- **If the AUTO HOLD indicator lights up yellow, the Auto Hold is not working properly. Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.**

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, do not activate Auto Hold while driving downhill, backing up or parking your vehicle.

If there is a malfunction with the driver's door, engine hood open detection system, the Auto Hold may not work properly.

Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

✻ NOTICE

A click or electric brake motor whine sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.

Warning messages

■ Type A

OJF055122L

■ Type B

OJF055123L

Parking brake automatically locked

When the EPB is applied from Auto Hold, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

■ Type A

OJF055120L

■ Type B

OJF055121L

AUTO HOLD deactivating.

Press brake pedal

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

✻ NOTICE

When this message is displayed, the Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, depress the brake pedal.

■ Type A

OJF055126L

■ Type B

OJF055127L

Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

If you do not apply the brake pedal when you release the Auto Hold by pressing the [AUTO HOLD] switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

OJF055124L

AUTO HOLD conditions not met. Close door, hood, and fasten seatbelt

When you press the [AUTO HOLD] switch, if the driver's door, engine hood are not closed or the driver's seat belt is unfastened, a warning will sound and a message will appear on the LCD display. At this moment, press the [AUTO HOLD] button after closing the driver's door, engine hood and fastening the seat belt.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds in the following circumstances:

- When driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface heights.

Driving in these conditions increases the stopping distance for your vehicle.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a "tik-tik" sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation allows the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

W-78

The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. Contact an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

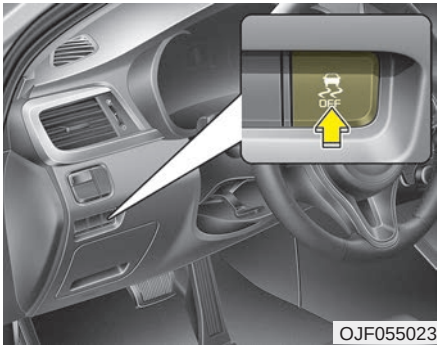
- When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and have operated your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.
- Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light goes off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. Contact an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

✻ NOTICE

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS has malfunctioned.

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

Electronic stability control (ESC)



OJF055023

The Electronic Stability control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes on individual wheels and intervenes with the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Control System is functioning properly.

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

When operating

When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.

ESC operation off

ESC OFF state

This car has 2 kinds of ESC off states.

If the engine stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

■ Type A

OJF055253L

■ Type B

OJF055254L

• ESC off state 1

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) shortly (ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates). At this state, the engine control function does not operate. It means the traction control function does not operate. Brake control function only operates.

■ Type A

OJF055255L

■ Type B

OJF055232L

• ESC off state 2

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the engine control function and brake control function do not operate. It means the car stability control function does not operate any more.

Indicator light

■ ESC indicator light

■ ESC OFF indicator light

When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

⚠ WARNING - Electronic stability control

Drive carefully even though your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control. It can only assist you in maintaining control under certain circumstances.

ESC OFF usage

When driving

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

⚠ WARNING - Operating ESC

Never press the ESC OFF button while ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).

If ESC is turned off while ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

✻ NOTICE

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

Vehicle stability management (VSM)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detects changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

⚠ WARNING - Tire/ Wheel size

When replacing tires and wheels, make sure they are the same size as the original tires and wheels installed. Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may diminish any supplemental safety benefits of the VSM system.

VSM operation

When the VSM is in operation, ESC indicator light ( ) blinks.

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle and/or abnormal steering responses (EPS- Electronic Power Steering). This is only the effect of brake and EPS control and indicates nothing unusual.

The VSM does not operate when:

- Driving on a sloping road such as a gradient or incline
- Driving in reverse
- ESC OFF indicator light ( ) remains on the instrument cluster
- EPS indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

VSM operation off

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

Malfunction indicator

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the Electric Power Steering system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

✻ NOTICE

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 22 km/h (13 mph) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu surface. A split-mu surface is made of two surfaces which have different friction forces.**
- The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly while driving.
- Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with installed VSM. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions – including driving in clement weather and on a slippery road.

✻ NOTICE

For maximum protection, always wear your seat belt. No system, no matter how advanced, can compensate for all driver error and/or driving conditions. Always drive responsibly.

Hill-start assist control (HAC)

A vehicle has the tendency to roll back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from rolling back by applying the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 2 seconds.

The HAC is activated only for about 2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING - Maintaining Brake Pressure on Incline

HAC does not replace the need to apply brakes while stopped on an incline. While stopped, make sure you maintain brake pressure sufficient to prevent your vehicle from rolling backward and causing an accident. Don't release the brake pedal until you are ready to accelerate forward.

Good braking practices

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and call an authorized Kia dealer for assistance.
- Don't coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving can be dangerous because the brakes might overheat and lose their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission, don't let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling.

  If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no curb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on an incline with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)/ FORWARD COLLISION WARNING (FCW) (IF EQUIPPED)

The AEB system is to reduce or to avoid accident risk. It recognizes the distance from the vehicle ahead or the pedestrian through the sensors (i.e. radar and camera), and, if necessary, warns the driver of accident risk with the warning message or the warning alarms.

⚠ WARNING

- Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) Limitations

The AEB system is a supplemental system and is not a substitute for safe driving practices. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead to ensure it is safety to use the AEB system.

✻ NOTICE

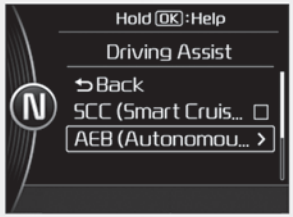
Take the following precautions when using the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB):

- **This system is only a supplemental system and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or while cornering.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. AEB does not stop the vehicle completely and does not avoid collisions.**

System setting and activation

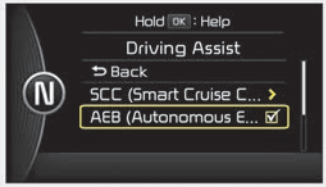
System setting

■ Type A



OJFA055275

■ Type B



OJFA056276

The driver can activate the AEB by placing the ignition switch to the ON position and by selecting 'User Settings', 'Driving Assist', and 'Autonomous Braking System'. The AEB deactivates, when the driver cancels the system setting.

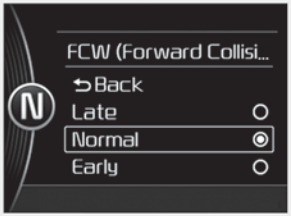
The warning light illuminates on the LCD display, when you cancel the AEB system. The driver can monitor the AEB ON/OFF status on the LCD display. When the warning light remains ON with the AEB activated, we recommend you to have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

■ Type A

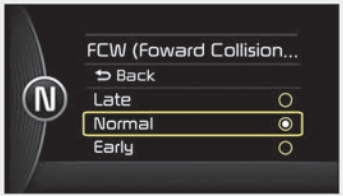
OJFA055277

■ Type B

OJFA055278



OJF055179L



OJF055075L

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the instrument cluster LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning include the following:

- EARLY - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated earlier than normal. This setting maximizes the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.
- NORMAL - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated normally. This setting allows for a nominal amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.
- LATE - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated later than normal. This setting reduces the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.

Prerequisite for activation

The AEB will activate activated when the AEB is selected on the LCD display, and when the following prerequisites are satisfied:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is activated.
- The driving speed is over 6 mph. (The AEB only works within a certain range of vehicle speeds)
- When the AEB recognizes a vehicle or the pedestrian in front. (The AEB may not recognize every obstacle or provide warnings and braking in every situation, so do not rely on the AEB to stop the vehicle in instances where the driver sees an obstacle and has the ability to apply the brakes)

⚠ WARNING

Set or cancel AEB with controlling switches on steering wheel after stopping the vehicle in the safe place for your safety.

- The AEB automatically activates when you turn the vehicle on.

  The driver can deactivate the AEB by canceling the in the system setting on the LCD display.
- The AEB automatically deactivates when canceling the ESC. When the ESC is canceled, the AEB cannot be activated on the LCD display.

AEB warning message and system control

The AEB produces warning messages, warning alarms, and emergency braking based on the level of risk of a frontal collision, such as when a vehicle ahead suddenly brakes, when there is no following distance from the vehicle in front, or when it detects a collision with a pedestrian is imminent.

Forward Warning (1st warning)

OJF055076L

The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.

Collision Warning (2nd warning)

OJF055077L

- The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.
- The AEB applies the brakes within certain limit to reduce the impact from a collision.

Emergency braking (3rd warning)

OJF055078L

- The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.
- The AEB controls the brakes within certain limit to release shock from the collision.

  The AEB controls the maximum brakes just before the collision.

Brake operation

- In an urgent situation, the braking system enters into the ready status for prompt reaction against the driver's depressing the brake pedal.
- The AEB provides additional braking power for optimum braking performance, when the driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The braking control is automatically deactivated, when the driver sharply depresses the brake pedal, or when the driver abruptly turns the steering wheel.
- The braking control is automatically canceled, when risk factors disappear.

The driver should always exercise caution when operating the vehicle, even though there is no warning message or warning alarm.

⚠ WARNING

The AEB cannot avoid all collisions. The AEB might not completely stop the vehicle before collision, due to ambient weather and road conditions. The driver has the responsibility to drive safely and control the vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

The AEB operates in accordance with the risk levels, such as the distance from the vehicle/passer-by in front, the speed of the vehicle/passer-by in front, and the driver's vehicle operation.

Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front radar)

OJFA055221

The sensor is to maintain a certain distance from the vehicle in front. However, the smudged sensor lens with foreign substances, such as snow and rain, adversely affects the sensing performance. It may even temporarily cancel the AEB. Always keep the sensor lens clean.

Warning message and warning light

OJF055187L

When the sensor is covered or the sensor lens is dirty with foreign substances, such as snow or rain, the AEB operation may temporarily stop. In this case, a warning message will appear to notify the driver.

This is not a malfunction with the AEB. To operate the AEB again, remove the foreign substances.

✻ NOTICE

- **Do not install any accessories, such as a license plate bracket or bumper sticker near the sensor area. Do not replace the bumper by yourself. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance.**
- **Always keep the sensor/bumper area clean.**
- **Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Also, do not spray highly pressurized water on the sensor installed on the bumper.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the frontal sensor area. When the sensor moves out of the correct position due to external force, the system may not operate correctly even without the warning light or message. In this case, we recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **Use only the genuine Kia sensor cover. Do not arbitrarily apply paint on the sensor cover.**

System malfunction

■ Type A

OJF055181L

■ Type B

OJF055079L

- When the AEB is not working properly, the AEB warning light ( ) will illuminate and the warning message will appear for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light ( ) will illuminate. In this case, we recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.
- The AEB warning message may appear along with the illumination of the ESC warning light.

⚠ WARNING

The AEB is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience.

The driver still maintains responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on the AEB system. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to lower the driving speed.

- The AEB may unnecessarily produce warning messages and warning alarms. Due to the sensing limitation, the AEB may not produce warning messages or warning alarm at all.
- When there is a malfunction with the AEB, the braking control does not operate upon detecting a collision risk even with other braking systems normally operating.
- The AEB operates only for the vehicle / pedestrian in front, while driving forward. It does not operate for any animals or vehicles in the opposite direction.
- The AEB can not recognize cross-traffic or parked vehicles presenting a side-profile.

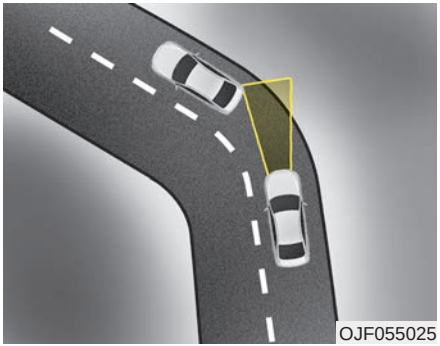
Limitations of the system

The AEB is an assistant system for a driver in a certain risky driving condition and it does not take every responsibility for all risks from driving condition.

The AEB monitors the driving situations through the radar and the camera sensor. For any vehicle activity occurring outside the sensor range, the AEB may not function. The driver should exercise caution in the following situations, as the AEB operation may be limited:

Recognizing vehicles

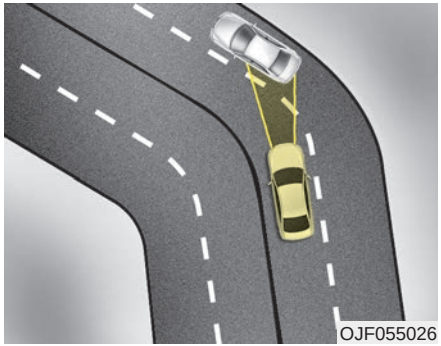
- The radar or the camera is contaminated with foreign substances.
- It heavily rains or snows.
- There is electromagnetic interference.
- Something in the path of travel deflects the radar waves.
- The vehicle in front has a narrow body. (i.e. motorcycles and bicycles)
- The driver's view is degraded by driving towards sunlight, reflected light, or darkness.
- The camera cannot see the full profile of the vehicle in front.
- The vehicle in front is a special vehicle, such as a heavily-loaded truck or a trailer.
- The vehicle in front does not turn ON the rear lights, does not have rear lights, has asymmetric rear lights, or has rear lights out of angle.
- The outside brightness is greatly changed, such as entering/exiting the tunnel.
- The vehicle driving is unstable.
- The radar/camera sensor recognition is limited.
- When driving on uneven surfaces or roads with sudden gradient changes.
- In construction sites, railroads, or other metallic objects are on the road.


OJF055025

- Driving on a curve

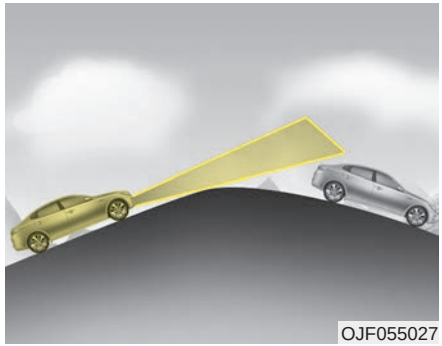
The AEB performance decreases while driving on a curve. The AEB may not recognize the vehicle in front even in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

While driving on a curve, exercise caution, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.


OJF055026

While driving on a curve, the AEB may recognize the vehicle in front in the next lane. Exercise caution, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.

Or, depress the accelerator pedal to maintain the driving speed. Always, take a look around the vehicle for your safety.

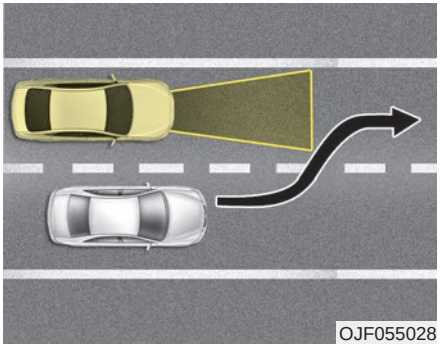

OJF055027

- Driving on a slope

The AEB performance decreases while driving upward or downward on a slope, not recognizing the vehicle in front in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

When the AEB suddenly recognizes the vehicle in front while passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

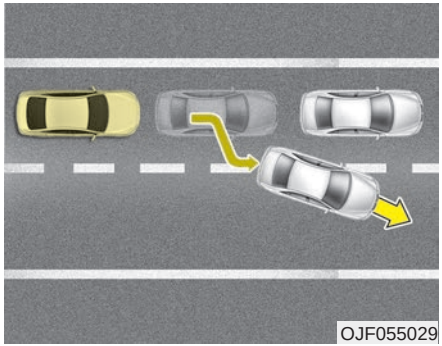
Always keep your eyes forward while driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.



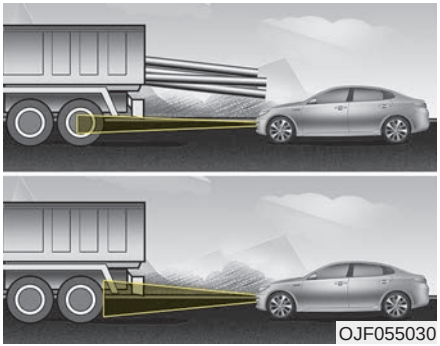
- Changing lanes

Even though the vehicle in the next lane enters into your lane, it may not be recognized by the AEB, until it enters the AEB sensing range.

Especially when the vehicle in the next lane abruptly enters into your lane, it is more likely not be recognized. Always be attentive to driving conditions.



When the stopped vehicle in front gets out of the lane, it may not be recognized by your AEB. Always be attentive to driving conditions.



- Recognizing the vehicle

When the vehicle in front has heavy loading extended rearward, or when the vehicle in front has higher ground clearance, it may induce a hazardous situation.

Recognizing pedestrians

- The pedestrian is not fully captured by the camera sensor, or the pedestrian does not walk in the upright position.
- The pedestrian moves very fast.
- The pedestrian abruptly appears in front.
- The pedestrian wears clothes similar in color to the background.
- Conditions outside are too bright or too dark.
- The vehicle drives at night or in the darkness.
- There is an item similar in shape a person's body structure.
- The pedestrian is small.
- The pedestrian has impaired mobility.
- The pedestrian blends in with their surroundings.
- Sensor recognition is limited by rain, snow, fog, etc.
- There is a group of pedestrians.

⚠ WARNING - Testing the AEB

The AEB does not operate in certain situations. Thus, never test-operate the AEB against a person or an object. It may cause a severe injury or even death.

⚠ WARNING - AEB and Towing

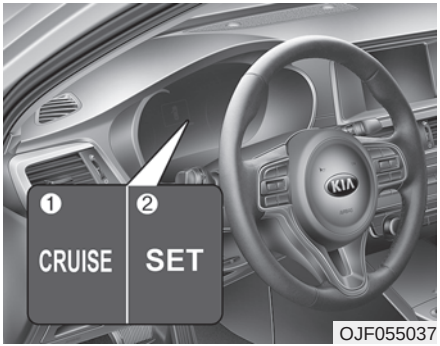
Cancel the AEB in the User Settings on the LCD display, before towing another vehicle. While towing, the brake application may adversely affect your vehicle safety.

✻ NOTICE

The system may temporarily cancel due to the strong electric waves.

- Pay great caution to the vehicle in front, when it has heavy loading extended rearward, or when it has higher ground clearance.
- The sensor only detects pedestrian, not carts, bicycles, motorcycles, luggage bags, or strollers.

CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM



OJF055037

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

If the cruise control is left on, (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated) the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.

Use the cruise control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

Do not use the cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.

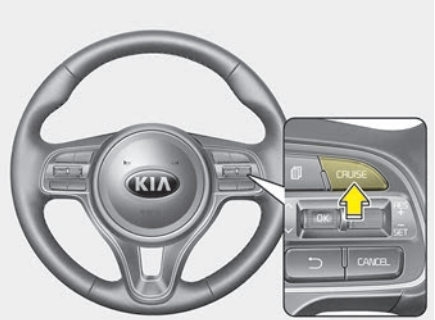
✻ NOTICE

- **During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**
- **To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.**

⚠ WARNING - Misuse of Cruise Control

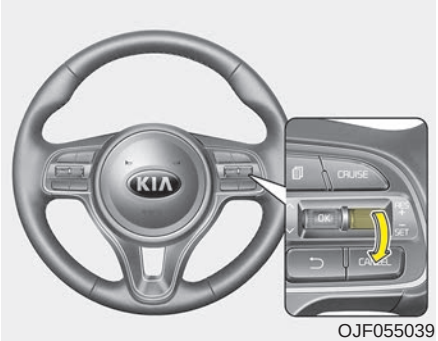
Do not use cruise control if the traffic situation does not allow you to drive safely at a constant speed and with sufficient distance to the vehicle in front.

To set cruise control speed:



OJF055038

1. Press the CRUISE button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (20 mph).



OJF055039

3. Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. Release the accelerator at the same time. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going downhill.

To increase cruise control set speed:

OJF055040

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 2 km/h (1.0 mph) each time the lever is operated in this manner.

To decrease the cruising speed:

OJF055039

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move the lever down (to SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 2 km/h (1.0 mph) each time the lever is operated in this manner.

To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with the cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

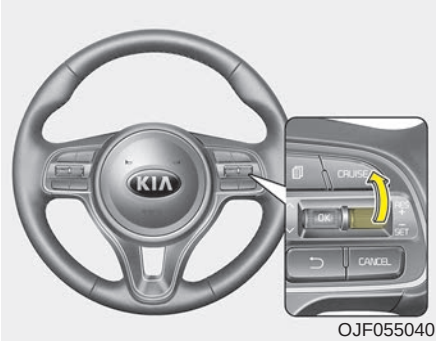
To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:

OJF055041

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Shift into N (Neutral) with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission.
- Press the CANCEL switch.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph).

Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move the lever up (to RES+). You will return to your previously preset speed.

To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph):

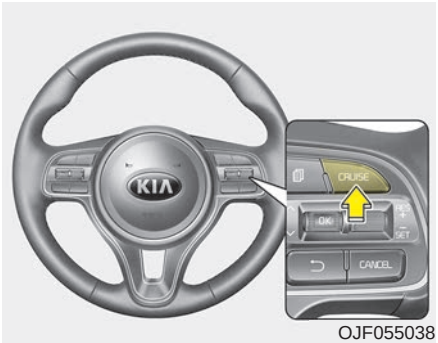


OJF055040

If any method other than the CRUISE ON-OFF switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when you move the lever up.

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:



OJF055038

- Press the CRUISE button (the CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off).
- Turn the ignition off.

Both of these actions will cancel the cruise control operation. If you want to resume the cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in “To set cruise control speed” on the previous page.

ADVANCED SMART CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (ASCC) (IF EQUIPPED)

OJF055089

① Cruise indicator
② Set speed
③ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The ASCC allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a set speed so long as it is not limited by traffic. When traffic is encountered the vehicle will slow down to maintain a set distance behind traffic without depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING - Advanced Smart Cruise Control Inadvertent Activation

If the advanced smart cruise control is left on (CRUISE indicator in the instrument cluster illuminated), it can be activated inadvertently. Keep the advanced smart cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator turn off) when the advanced smart cruise control is not in use to avoid setting a speed which the driver is not aware of.

⚠ WARNING - Advanced Smart Cruise Control Limitations

- **The advanced smart cruise control is a supplemental system and is not a substitute for safe driving practices. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.**
- **Do not use the advanced smart cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the car at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% uphill or down-hill roads.**
  - Roads under construction
  - Rumble strip

(Continued)

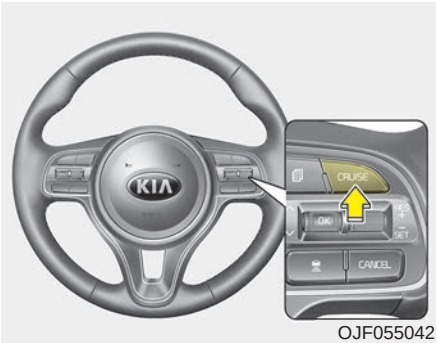
(Continued)

- The sensing ability decreases if the height of a vehicle in front or this vehicle is altered from the factory original (jacked-up or lowered).

- **The advanced smart cruise control system cannot recognize a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Use the advanced smart cruise control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather conditions.**
- **Limited visibility (rain, snow, smog, etc.)**
- **Cruise function should not be used when the vehicle is being towed to prevent any damage.**

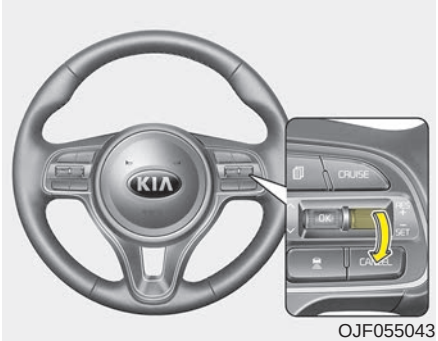
Speed setting (ASCC)

To set cruise control speed:



OJF055042

1. Press the CRUISE button, to turn the system on. The CRUISE indicator in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
   - 30 km/h (20 mph) ~ 180 km/h (110 mph) : when there is no vehicle in front
   - 0 km/h (0 mph) ~ 180 km/h (110 mph) : when there is a vehicle in front



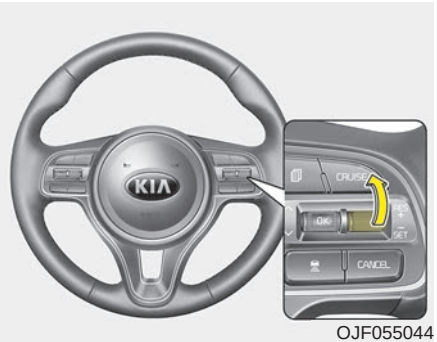
OJF055043

3. Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LDC screen will illuminate.
4. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

If there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going uphill or downhill.

To increase cruise control set speed:



OJF055044

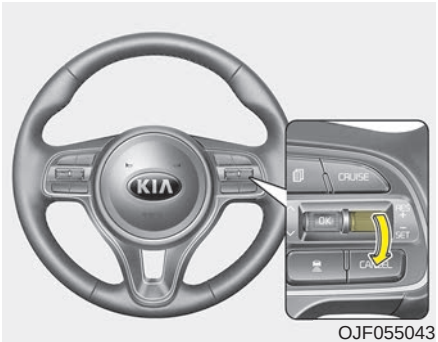
Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 10 km/h (5 mph). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.0 km/h (1 mph) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.
- ASCC will operate to a maximum setting of 180 km/h (110 mph). However all local speed limit laws must be followed.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure to check road conditions, for driving speed will sharply increase if the lever is pushed upwards.

To decrease the cruise control set speed:



OJF055043

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET-), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.0 km/h (1 mph) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.
- You can set the cruise control to any speed above 30 km/h (20 mph).

To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

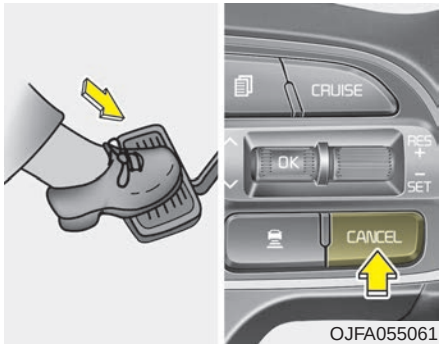
To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

If you move the lever down (to SET-) at increased speed, the cruising speed will be set again.

✻ NOTICE

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed is not regulated automatically at this time even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

ASCC will be temporarily canceled when:



OJFA055061

Cancelled manually

The advanced smart cruise control is temporarily canceled when the brake pedal is depressed or the CANCEL button is pressed. The speed and vehicle to vehicle distance indicator on the cluster will disappeared and the CRUISE indicator is illuminated continuously.

Cancelled automatically

- The driver's door is opened.
- The shift lever is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P(Parking).
- The EPB (electronic parking brake) is applied.
- The vehicle speed is over 190 km/h (120 mph)
- The ESC, ABS or TCS is operating.
- The ESC is turned off.
- The sensor or the cover is dirty or blocked with foreign matter.
- When the vehicle is stopped for over 5 minutes.
- The driver starts driving by pushing the lever up (RES +) or down (SET -) or depressing the accelerator pedal approximately 3 seconds after the vehicle is stopped by the Advanced Smart Cruise Control System with no other vehicle ahead or a vehicle stopped far away in front.
- The engine speed is in dangerous range.

- The ASCC system has malfunctioned.
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for long time.
- Pull over on steep uphill
- When activating the AEB (Autonomous Emergency Braking)

  Each of these actions will cancel the ASCC operation. (The set speed and vehicle-to-vehicle distance on the LCD display will go off.)

  If the ASCC is cancelled automatically, the ASCC will not resume even though the RES+ or SET- lever is moved. Also, the EPB (electronic parking brake) will be applied when the vehicle is stopped.

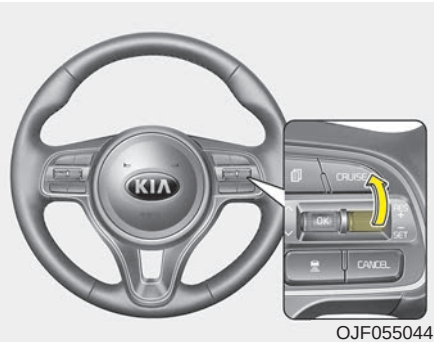
If the ASCC is cancelled by a reason not mentioned, have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

OJF055235L

✻ NOTICE

If the system is automatically cancelled, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear for a few seconds.
You must adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.
Always check the road conditions. Do not rely on the warning chime.

To resume cruise control set speed:



OJF055044

If any method other than the CRUISE button was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the cruising speed will automatically resume when you move the lever up/down (to RES+ or SET-).

If you move the lever up (to RES+), the speed will resume to the recently set speed. It will not resume if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

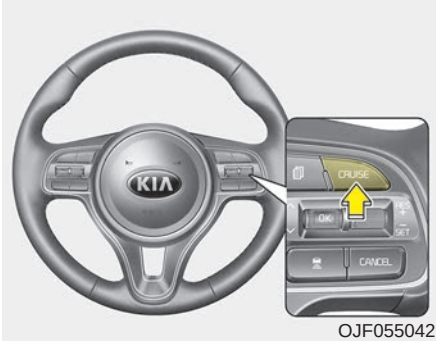
⚠ WARNING - Following Distance

- **To avoid collisions, always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle to vehicle distance settings when activating your smart cruise control system.**
- **Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.**

⚠ CAUTION

When pushing the lever up for resetting, the speed might sharply increase or decrease to the speed set just before it was cancelled. Be sure to check road conditions and operate only when you can check the speed set before.

To turn cruise control off:



OJF055042

Press the CRUISE button. (the CRUISE indicator in the instrument cluster will go off).

Vehicle to vehicle distance setting (ASCC)

To set vehicle to vehicle distance:

OJF055046

This function allows you to program the vehicle to maintain relative distance to the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal.

The vehicle to vehicle distance will automatically activate when the ASCC is on.

Select the appropriate distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed.

Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle to vehicle distance changes as follows:

Distance 4 → Distance 3 → Distance 2 → Distance 1 → Distance 4

For example, if you drive at 90 km/h (56 mph), the distance is maintained as follows;

Distance 4 - approximately 52.5 m (172 feet)

Distance 3 - approximately 40 m (130 feet)

Distance 2 - approximately 32.5 m (106 feet)

Distance 1 - approximately 25 m (82 feet)

✻ NOTICE

The advanced smart cruise control system remembers the last vehicle to vehicle distance which the driver used in the vehicle with AEB.

✻ NOTICE

The 'last vehicle to vehicle distance' is set when the system is used after starting the engine.

Distance 4

OJF055093

Distance 3

OJF055095

Distance 2

OJF055094

Distance 1

OJF055096

- The vehicle will maintain the set speed, when the lane ahead is clear.
- The vehicle will slow down or speed up within selected speed to maintain the selected distance, when there is a vehicle ahead of you in the lane. (A vehicle will appear in front of your vehicle in the LCD display only when there is an actual vehicle in front of you)

- If the vehicle ahead speeds up, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the selected speed.
- The warning chime sounds and LCD display blinks if it is hard to maintain the selected distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If the warning chime sounds, actively adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.
- Even if the warning chime is not activated, always pay attention to the driving conditions to prevent dangerous situations from occurring.

OJFA055099C

If the vehicle ahead (vehicle speed: less than 30 km/h (20 mph)) moves to the next lane, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear.

If a vehicle enters into your lane moving less than the designated speed, you can adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal.

In heavy traffic

OJFA055100C

In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. However, if the vehicle stops for more than 3 seconds, you must depress the accelerator pedal or move up/down the lever (to RES+ or SET-) to start driving.

Radar to detect distance to the vehicle ahead

OJFA055221

The sensor detects distance to the vehicle ahead.

If the sensor is covered with dirt or other foreign matter, the vehicle to vehicle distance control may not operate correctly.

Always keep the sensor clean.

Radar check message

OJF055188L

If the radar or cover is dirty or obscured with foreign matter such as snow, this message will appear and it will disappear after for a while. In this case, the system may not function temporarily, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the Advanced Smart Cruise Control System. Clean the radar or cover by using a soft cloth and it will operate normally.

ASCC (Advanced Smart Cruise Control) malfunction message

OJF055237L

The message will appear when the vehicle to vehicle distance control system is not functioning normally.

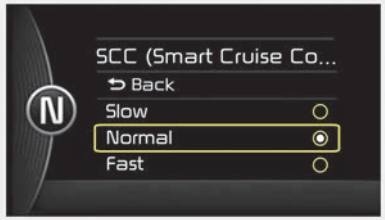
Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

- Always keep the sensor and bumper clean.
- Use only a genuine Kia sensor cover for your vehicle.
- Do not install accessories around the sensor and do not replace the bumper by yourself. It may interfere with the sensor performance.
- Impact damage to the sensor or sensor area may cause the sensor to move slightly off position and result in the ASCC not operating correctly without any warning or indicator from the cluster. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION - Sensor Damage

To prevent sensor cover damage from occurring, wash the car with a soft cloth.

To adjust the sensitivity of Advanced Smart Cruise Control



OJF055101L

The sensitivity of vehicle speed when following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance can be adjusted. Go to the User Settings Mode (Driving Assist) and select SCC (Smart Cruise Control). You may select one of the three stages you prefer.

- Slow:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is slower than normal speed.
- Normal:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is normal
- Fast:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is faster than normal speed.

✻ NOTICE

The system remembers the last selected mode.

To convert to cruise control mode:

OJF055238L

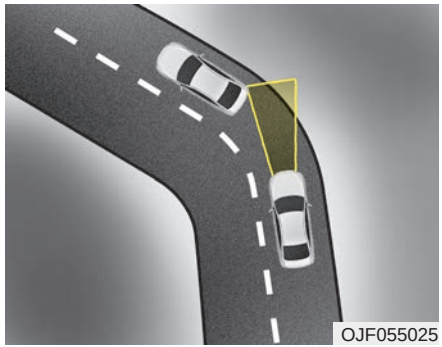
OJF055239L

The driver may choose to only use the cruise control mode (speed control function) by doing as follows:

1. Turn the ASCC on (the cruise indicator light will be on but the system will not be activated).
2. Push the distance to distance switch for more than 2 seconds.
3. Choose between "Smart cruise control (SCC) mode" and "Cruise control (CC) mode".
4. Speed setting is equal to the advanced smart cruise control operation method. However, when it is turned off by the CRUISE switch or the CRUISE switch is operated after the engine is restarted, it automatically returns to the advanced smart cruise control system.

When using the cruise control mode, you must manually assess the distance to other vehicles as the system will not automatically brake to slow down for other vehicles.

Limitations of the system

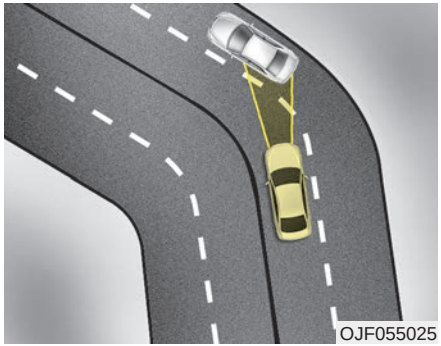


OJF055025

The ASCC may have limits to its ability to detect distance to the vehicle ahead due to road and traffic conditions.

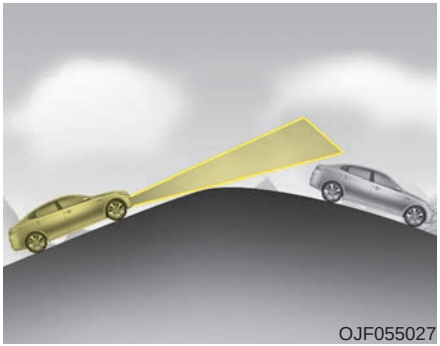
On curves

- On curves, the ASCC may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and then your vehicle could accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly slow down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on curves and adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.


OJF055025

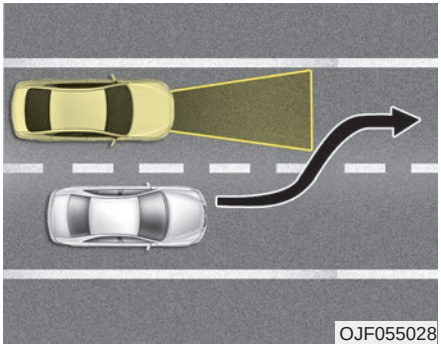
- Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition. Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the ASCC.

On inclines

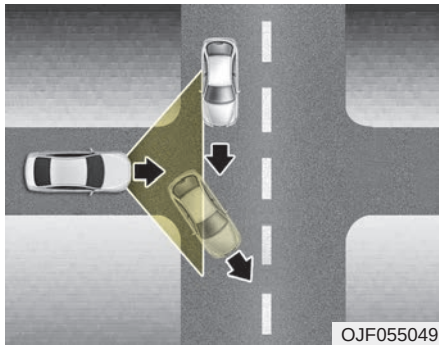

OJF055027

- During uphill or downhill driving, the ASCC may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly slow down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead.

Lane changing

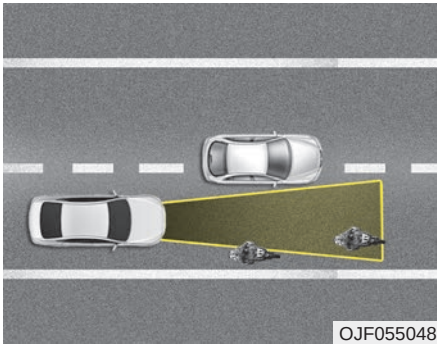


- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognized by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The sensor may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is slower than your vehicle, your speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is faster than your vehicle, your vehicle will accelerate to the selected speed.



- Your vehicle may accelerate when a vehicle ahead of you disappears.
- When you are warned that the vehicle ahead of you is not detected, drive with caution.

Vehicle recognition


OJF055048

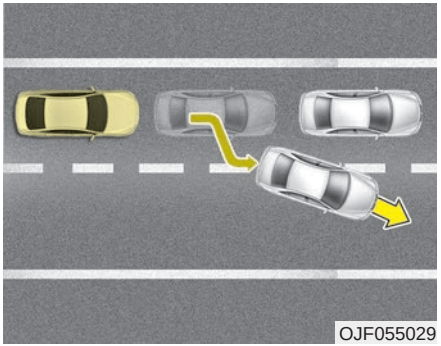
Some vehicles ahead in your lane cannot be recognized by the sensor as follows:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

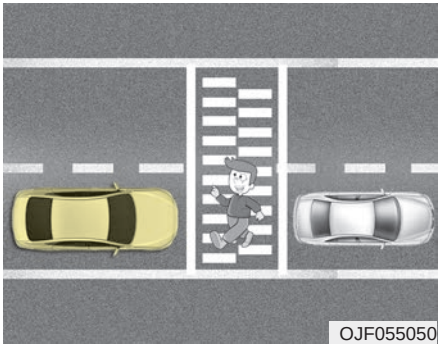
A vehicle ahead cannot be recognized correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:

- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the trunk
- While making turns by steering
- When driving to one side of the lane
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves

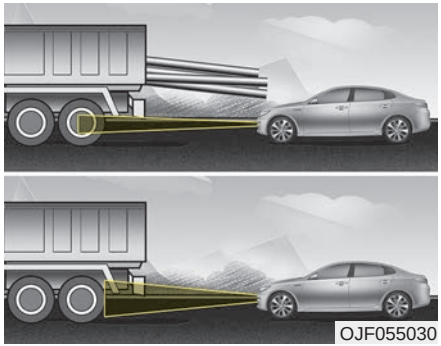
Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.


OJF055029

- When vehicles are at a standstill and the vehicle in front of you changes to the next lane, be careful when your vehicle starts to move because it may not recognize the stopped vehicle in front of you.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.



- Always be cautious for vehicles that are taller with higher clearance, or vehicles carrying loads that stick out of the back of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Safe Use of ASCC

The ASCC can provide you with an additional level of safety and fatigue reduction. However you must maintain careful observation of the roadway in front and around you and maintain control of your vehicle and spacing around other vehicles as you normally would. For example, this will require you to apply the brakes as needed when coming upon a slower moving vehicle, or when a vehicle from another lane drives quickly in front of you.

⚠ WARNING

The advanced smart cruise control system may not detect a vehicle which stops farther than 180 m ahead from your vehicle. Therefore, never solely rely on the system and pay attention when driving to avoid a collision.

⚠ WARNING - Inclines & Towing

Do not use ASCC on steep inclines or when towing another vehicle or trailer since such extreme loading can interfere with your vehicle's ability to maintain the selected speed.

- After an engine start, please stop for several seconds. If system initialization is not completed, the ASCC does not normally operate.
- After an engine start, if any objects are not detected or the sensor cover is obscured with foreign substances, there is a possibility that the ASCC system may not work.
- The following conditions may cause a malfunction: over-loading the trunk, suspension modification, tire replacement with unauthorized tires or tires with different tread wear and pressure levels.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following three conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

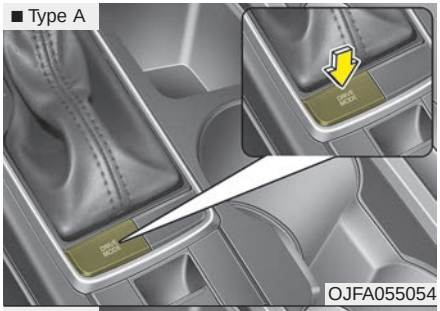
(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

(3) Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM

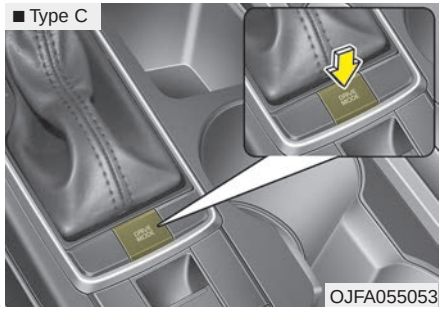
DRIVE mode

■ Type A



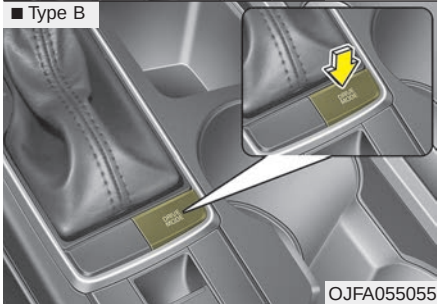
OJFA055054

■ Type C



OJFA055053

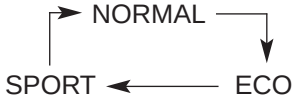
■ Type B



OJFA055055

The drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The mode changes whenever the DRIVE MODE button is pressed.



❊ When normal mode is selected, it is not displayed on the cluster.

ECO mode (Active ECO)

ECO

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling certain engine and transaxle system operating parameters. Fuel efficiency depends on the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When the DRIVE MODE button is pressed and the ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the DRIVE MODE button again.

When Active ECO is activated:

- The acceleration may slightly be reduced even though you depress the accelerator fully.
- The air conditioner performance may be limited
- The shift pattern of the automatic transaxle may change.
- The engine noise may get louder.

The above situations are normal conditions when the Active Eco System is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

Limitation of Active ECO operation:

If the following conditions occur while Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:

  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:

  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When using manual mode:

  The system will be limited according to the shift location.
- When the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed for a few seconds:

  The system will be limited, judging that the driver wants to speed up.

SPORT mode

SPORT

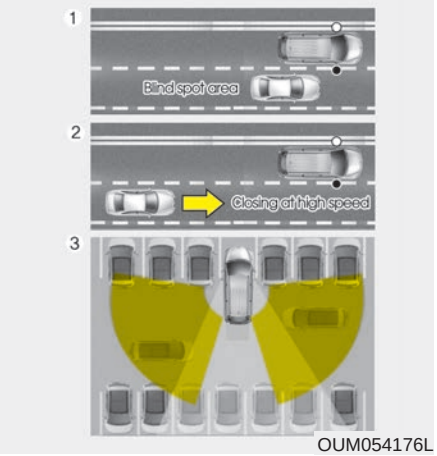
SPORT mode focuses on dynamic driving by automatically adjusting the steering wheel, engine and transaxle system.

- When the DRIVE MODE button is pressed and the SPORT mode is selected, the SPORT indicator (yellow) will illuminate.
- When the SPORT mode is activated, and the engine start/stop button is turned off and on it will change to NORMAL mode. To turn on the SPORT mode press DRIVE MODE button again.
- If the system is activated:
  - While holding vehicle speed, it maintains the gear and RPM for some time even though the accelerator pedal is not depressed.
  - Up-shifting is delayed.

✻ NOTICE

In Sport drive mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.

BLIND SPOT DETECTION SYSTEM (BSD) (IF EQUIPPED)



The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) uses a radar sensor to alert the driver.

It senses toward the rear sides of the vehicle and provides and early warning to the driver.

(1) BSD (Blind Spot Detection)

The warning range depends on your vehicle speed. However, if your vehicle is about 10 km/h (6 mph) faster than the other vehicle, the system will not warn you.

(2) LCA (Lane Change Assist)

When a vehicle approaches you at high speed, the system will warn you.

(3) RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)

When your vehicle moves rearward, and the sensor detects an approaching vehicle in the left or right side, the system will warn you.

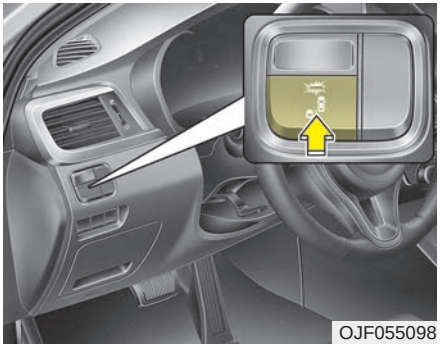
⚠ WARNING - BSD Limitations

- **The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) is a supplemental system. Do not solely rely on the system and always pay attention to drive safely.**
- **The Blind Spot Detection System may not detect every object alongside the vehicle and is not a substitute for proper and safe lane changing procedures. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes.**

Always check the road condition while driving for unexpected situations even though the Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) is operating.

BSD (Blind Spot Detection) / LCA (Lane Change Assist)

Operating conditions



The indicator on the switch will illuminate when the Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) switch is pressed with the Engine Start/Stop Button ON.

If vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (18.6 mph), the system will activate.

If you press the switch again, the switch indicator and system will be turned off.

If the vehicle is turned off, the system will remember the last settings upon restart.

When the system is not used turn the system off by turning off the switch.

When the system is turned on the warning light will illuminate for 3 seconds on the outside rearview mirror.

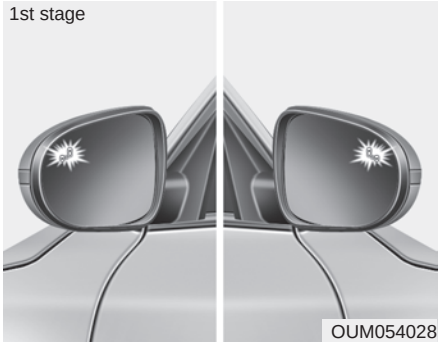
Warning type

The system will activate when:

1. The system is on.
2. Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (18.6 mph).
3. Other vehicles are detected in the rear side.

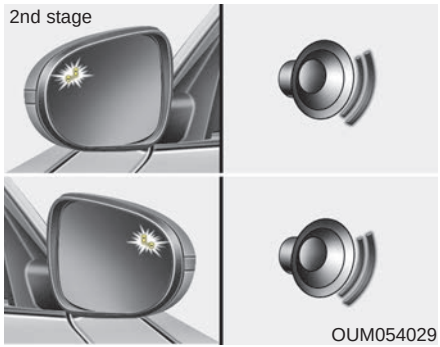
⚠ WARNING

The Blind Spot Detection System with Lane Change Assist and Rear Cross Traffic Alert is not a substitute for proper and safe lane changing procedures. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes. The Blind Spot Detection System may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.



If a vehicle is detected within the boundary of the system, a warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror.

If the detected vehicle is not in detecting range, the warning will turn off.



The second stage alarm will activate when:

1. The first stage alert is on
2. The turn signal is on to change a lane

When the second stage alert is activated, a warning light will blink on the outside rearview mirror and an alarm will sound.

If you move the turn signal switch to the original position, the second stage alert will be deactivated.

- The second stage alarm may be deactivated.

- To activate the alarm:

  Go to the User Settings Mode → Sound and select "BSD" on the LCD display.

- To deactivate the alarm:

  Go to the User Settings Mode → Sound and deselect "BSD" on the LCD display.

✻ NOTICE

The alarm function helps alert the driver. Deactivate this function only when it is necessary

Detecting sensor

The sensors are located inside of the rear bumper.

Always keep the rear bumper clean for the system to work properly.

Warning message

"Blind Spot Detection disabled. Radar blocked"

The message will appear to notify the driver with one of followings. The light on the switch and the system will turn off automatically.

- There are foreign substances on the surface or inside the rear bumper or it is hot near the rear bumper.
- When a trailer or carrier is installed.
- When driving wide area like desert around few vehicles.
- When driving in the bad weather such as heavy rain or snow

When you install a trailer or carrier, turn off BSD system. When you use the BSD system, remove a trailer or carrier.

Remove the foreign substance on the rear bumper.

After the foreign substance is removed, if you drive for approximately 10 minutes, the system will work normally.

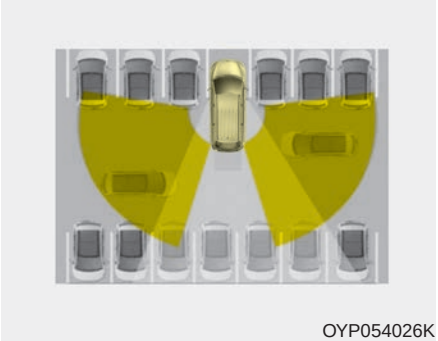
If the system does not work normally even though the foreign substance is removed, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

OJF055247L

If the system does not work properly, a warning message will appear and the light on the switch will turn off. The system will turn off automatically.

Have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)



OYP054026K

When your vehicle moves backwards from a parking position, the sensor detects approaching vehicles to the left or right side direction and gives information to the driver.

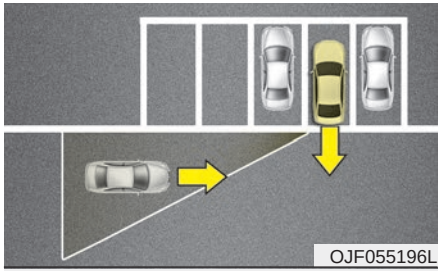
Operating conditions

OJFA055279

- Select RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) in "User Settings" under "Driving Assist" on the instrument cluster. The system will turn on and standby to activate.
- Select RCTA again, to turn the system off.
- If the vehicle is turned off, the RCTA system will remember the last settings upon restart. Always turn the RCTA system off when not in use.

- The system operates when the vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6.2 mph) with the shift lever in R (Reverse).
- The RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) detecting range is 1.6 feet ~ 65 feet based on the side direction. If the approaching vehicle speed is 4 km/h (2.5 mph) ~ 36 km/h (22 mph) within sensing range, it is detected. However, the system sensing range can vary based on conditions. Always pay attention to your surroundings.

Warning type



OJF055196L

OJF055105L

OJF055106L

- If the vehicle detected by sensors approaches your vehicle, the warning chime will sound and the warning light will blink on the outside rearview mirror.
- If the detected object is not in your way, move the vehicle away from the detected object slowly; and the warning will cancel once the object has been safely cleared.
- The system may not operate properly due to other factors or circumstances. Always pay attention to your surroundings.

❈ If your vehicle's left or right side bumper is blinded by a barrier or vehicles, the system sensing ability may be deteriorated.

⚠ WARNING

The Blind Spot Detection System with Lane Change Assist and Rear Cross Traffic Alert is not a substitute for proper and safe lane changing procedures. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes. The Blind Spot Detection System may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

- **The system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced or if repair work has been done near the sensor.**
- **The detection area differs according to the roads road's width. If the road is narrow the system may detect other vehicles in the next lane.**
- **If the road is very wide the system may not detect other vehicles.**
- **The system may turn off due to strong electromagnetic interference.**

Limitations condition

Driver's Attention

The driver must be cautious in the below situations for the system may not assist the driver and may not work properly.

- Curved roads, tollgates, etc.
- The surrounding of the sensor cover is dirty with rain, snow, mud, etc.
- The rear bumper near the sensor is covered or obstructed with foreign matter such as a sticker, bumper guard, bicycle racks etc.
- The rear bumper is damaged or the sensor is out of place.
- The height of the vehicle has significantly changed such as when the trunk is loaded with heavy objects, abnormal tire pressure etc.
- Due to bad weather such as heavy rain or snow.
- A fixed object is near such as a guardrail, etc.
- A substantial amount of metallic objects such as a construction area.
- A large vehicle is nearby such as a bus or truck.
- A motorcycle or bicycle is near.
- A flat trailer is near.
- If two vehicles near each other accelerate together.
- When another vehicle passes by at a high rate of speed.
- When changing lanes.
- When going down or up a steep road where the height of the lane is different.
- When another vehicle drives very close the back bumper/trunk.
- When a trailer or carrier is installed.
- When going down or up a steep, uneven road.

- When the temperature of the rear bumper is very high or low.
- When the temperature near the rear bumper is high or low.
- When bike racks, etc. cover the sensor.
- When reversing from a parking space with pillars or metal structures.
- When you are reversing and if the detected vehicle is simultaneously reversing.
- If there are small objects like shopping carts and baby carriages.
- If there is a vehicle with decreased ride height (lowered).
- When the vehicle is close to another vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow road with many plants.
- When driving on wet surface.
- When the sensors are blocked by other vehicles or pillars and walls in a parking area.

Outside rearview mirror may not alert the driver when:

- The outside rearview mirror housing is very dirty.
- The window is very dirty.
- The windows are tinted very dark.
- When driving through a narrow road with many trees or bushes.

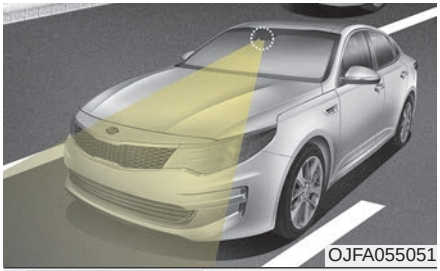
This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

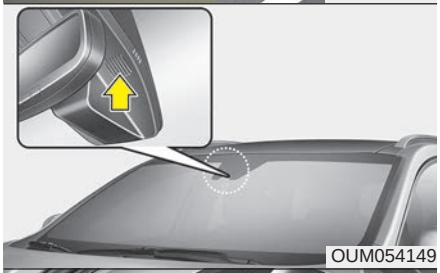
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

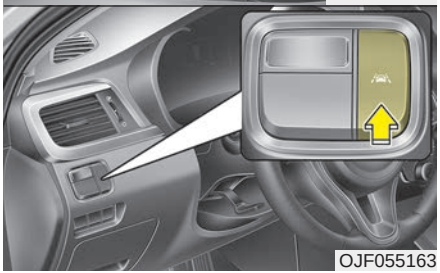
(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM (LDWS) (IF EQUIPPED)


OJFA055051


OUM054149


OJF055163

This system detects the lane with a sensor at the front windshield and notifies you if it detects that your vehicle leaves the lane.

⚠ WARNING - LDWS Alert

The LDWS is only intended to provide you with information regarding your vehicle's position on the roadway. Upon receiving an LDWS alert, you must take the necessary steps to maintain control of your vehicle. The LDWS does not provide any steering inputs into the vehicle for you. It can be dangerous to make a large sudden steering input in response to an alert, since that could result in loss of control.

- The LDWS does not make the vehicle change lanes. It is the driver's responsibility to always check the road conditions.
- If the sensor cannot detect the lane or if the vehicle speed does not exceed 40 mph (64 km/h), the LDWS will not be able to notify you if the vehicle leaves the lane.
- If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windshield, the LDWS may not work properly.
- Prevent damage to the LDWS sensor from water or any liquid.
- Do not remove the LDWS parts and avoid damaging the sensor by avoiding strong impacts.
- Do not put objects that reflect light on the dash board.
- The operation of the LDWS can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to pay attention to the roadway and to maintain the vehicle in it's lane at all times.
- Do not turn the steering wheel suddenly, when the LDWS warns you that your vehicle is leaving the lane.

To operate the LDWS, press the button with the engine start/stop button in the ON position. The indicator illuminates white on the cluster. To cancel the LDWS, press LDWS button again.

The indicator on the cluster will go off.

OJF055193L

If the system detects that your vehicle is leaving the lane when the LDWS is operating and vehicle speed exceeds 64 km/h (40 mph), the warning operates as follows:

■ Left lane departure warning

OJF055194L

■ Right lane departure warning

OJF055195L

1. Visual warning

If you leave a lane, the lane you cross will blink (yellow) and LDWS indicator will blink green on LCD during max 3 seconds.

2. Auditory warning

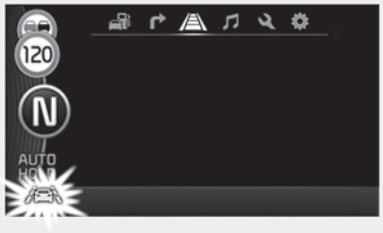
If you leave the lane, the warning sound operates for maximum 3 seconds.

The color of symbol will change depend on the condition of LDWS system.

- White color : When you activate the lane departure warning system by pressing the LDWS button, system operating conditions are not satisfied or the sensor does not detect the lane line
- Green color : When you activate the lane departure warning system by pressing the LDWS button, system operating conditions are satisfied and the sensor detect the lane line
- Yellow color : when there is a malfunction with the lane departure warning system.

Warning indicator

OJF055246L



OJF055223L

When the LDWS is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate and the warning message will come on for a few second. After the message disappears, the master warning light will illuminate.

Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

Conditions that cause the LDWS not to operate:

- The driver turns on the turn signal or the hazard warning flasher to change lanes.
- Driving on the lane line.

✻ NOTICE

To change lanes, operate the turn signal switch then change the lane.

⚠ WARNING - LDWS Limitations

The Lane Departure Warning System is a supplemental system. Do not solely rely on the system but always pay attention and drive safely.

Conditions that cause missed warnings and false warnings:

- The lane is not visible due to snow, rain, debris, puddles or other environmental conditions.
- The brightness outside changes suddenly such as when entering/exiting a tunnel.
- The headlights are off at night or in a tunnel.
- The color of the lane marking from the road is difficult to distinguish.
- Driving on a steep grade or a curve.
- Light such as street lights, sunlight or oncoming vehicle lights reflect off of water on the road.
- The lens or windshield is obscured by debris.
- The sensor cannot detect the lane because of fog, heavy rain or heavy snow.
- The rear view mirror housing has overheated from exposure to direct sunlight.
- The lane is very wide or narrow.
- The lane line is damaged or indistinct.
- The windshield is fogged up by humidity.
- Objects in the median or along the side of the road cast shadows over the lane markings
- The sensor cannot distinguish the lane from the road due to the dust/dirt.
- There are other markings similar to lane lines.
- There are lane boundaries instead of markings.
- The vehicle ahead is very close, obscuring the view of the lane markings, or the vehicle ahead is driving over the lane markings.
- The vehicle vibrates heavily due to poor road conditions.
- The lanes are merging, expanding, or otherwise overlapping
- Something reflective is placed on the dashboard.
- Driving with the sun in front of you.
- Driving in areas under construction.
- Lanes are marked by more than two sets of lines.
- The windshield is fogged by humid air in the vehicle.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a liter (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stop-lights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tires. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tire wear. Check the tire pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tire wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 8. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see chapter 8 for details).
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in a very high gear resulting in engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speed.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, have an authorized Kia dealer perform scheduled inspections and maintenance.

⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. In addition, turning off the ignition while driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering. Keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for an engine braking effect.

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use the second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

⚠ WARNING - Downshifting

Do not downshift with an automatic transaxle while driving on slippery surfaces. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid and result in an accident.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

⚠ WARNING - Sudden Vehicle Movement

Do not attempt to rock the vehicle if people or objects are nearby. The vehicle may suddenly move forward or backwards as it becomes unstuck.

⚠ **CAUTION - Vehicle rocking**

Prolonged rocking may cause engine overheating, transaxle damage or failure, and tire damage.

⚠ **CAUTION - Spinning tires**

Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tire to overheat which could result in tire damage that may injure bystanders.

The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

Smooth cornering

OJF055062L

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tire wear will be held to a minimum.

Driving at night

OJF055063L

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.

- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed. (On vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature.) Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- If your tires are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tires are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

Highway driving

Tires

Adjust the tire inflation pressures to specification. Low tire inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tires.

Avoid using worn or damaged tires which may result in reduced traction or tire failure.

Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure shown on the tires.

⚠ WARNING - Under/over inflated tires

Always check the tires for proper inflation before driving. Underinflated or overinflated tires can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. For proper tire pressures, refer to “Tires and wheels” in chapter 9.

⚠ WARNING - Tire tread

Always check the tire tread before driving your vehicle. Worn-out tires can result in loss of vehicle control. Worn-out tires should be replaced as soon as possible. For further information and tread limits, refer to "Tires and wheels" in chapter 8.

Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both the engine coolant and engine oil.

Drive belt

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

WINTER DRIVING

Severe weather conditions in the winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimize the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

Snowy or icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires on your tires. If snow tires are needed, it is necessary to select tires equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tires. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.

During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front of your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently.

Snow tires

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

Do not install studded tires without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

⚠ WARNING - Snow tire size

Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 8. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in chapter 8. The level of charge in your battery can be checked by an authorized Kia dealer or a service station.

Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See chapter 9 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in chapter 8 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorized Kia dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

Don’t let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the gear shift lever in P (Park, Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components are not obstructed.

Carry emergency equipment

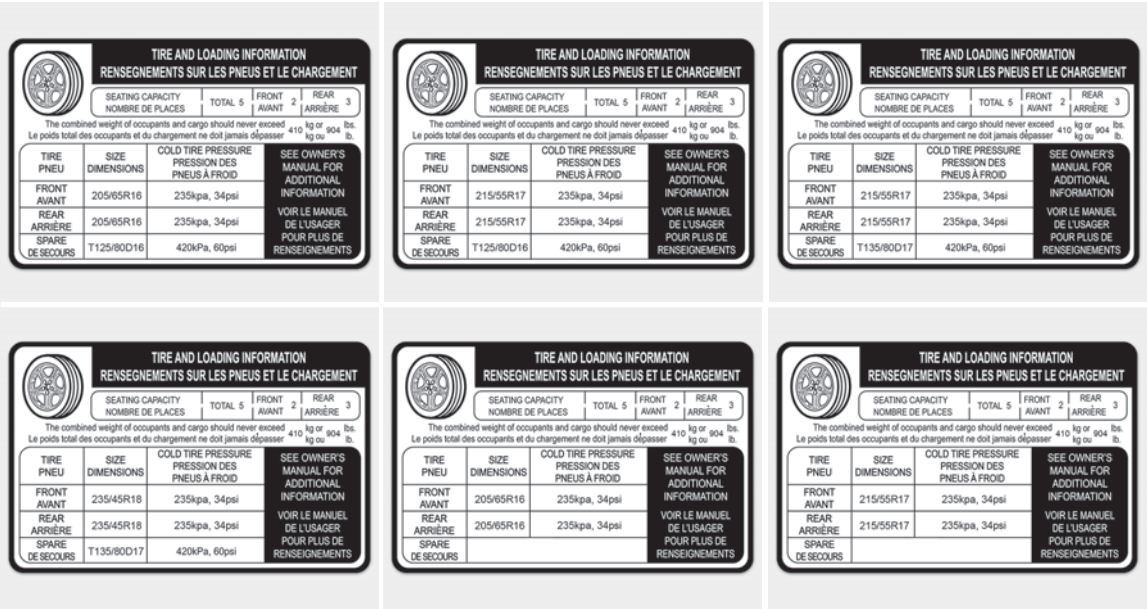
Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

TRAILER TOWING

We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.

VEHICLE LOAD LIMIT

Tire and loading information label



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIÈRE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 410 kg or kg ou 904 lbs. lb.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	205/65R16	235kpa, 34psi	
REAR ARRIÈRE	205/65R16	235kpa, 34psi	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80D16	420kPa, 60psi	

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIÈRE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 410 kg or kg ou 904 lbs. lb.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	215/55R17	235kpa, 34psi	
REAR ARRIÈRE	215/55R17	235kpa, 34psi	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80D16	420kPa, 60psi	

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIÈRE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 410 kg or kg ou 904 lbs. lb.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	215/55R17	235kpa, 34psi	
REAR ARRIÈRE	215/55R17	235kpa, 34psi	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T135/80D17	420kPa, 60psi	

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIÈRE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 410 kg or kg ou 904 lbs. lb.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	235/45R18	235kpa, 34psi	
REAR ARRIÈRE	235/45R18	235kpa, 34psi	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T135/80D17	420kPa, 60psi	

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIÈRE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 410 kg or kg ou 904 lbs. lb.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	205/65R16	235kpa, 34psi	
REAR ARRIÈRE	205/65R16	235kpa, 34psi	
SPARE DE SECOURS			

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIÈRE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 410 kg or kg ou 904 lbs. lb.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	215/55R17	235kpa, 34psi	
REAR ARRIÈRE	215/55R17	235kpa, 34psi	
SPARE DE SECOURS			

OJFA055268/OJFA055271/OJFA055269/OJFA055272/OJFA055270/OJFA055273

The label located on the driver's door sill gives the original tire size, cold tire pressures recommended for your vehicle, the number of people that can be in your vehicle and vehicle capacity weight.

Vehicle capacity weight:

410 kg (904 lbs.)

Vehicle capacity weight is the maximum combined weight of occupants and cargo. If your vehicle is equipped with a trailer, the combined weight includes the tongue load.

Seating capacity:

Total : 5 persons
(Front seat : 2 persons,
Rear seat : 3 persons)

Seating capacity is the maximum number of occupants including a driver, your vehicle may carry.

However, the seating capacity may be reduced based upon the weight of all of the occupants, and the weight of the cargo being carried or towed.

Do not overload the vehicle as there is a limit to the total weight, or load limit including occupants and cargo, the vehicle can carry.

Towing capacity:

We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.

Cargo capacity:

The cargo capacity of your vehicle will increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit -

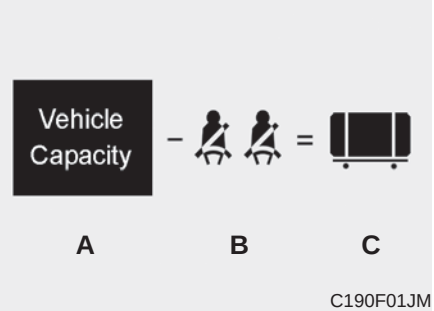
1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 635 kg (1400 lbs.) and there will be five 68 kg (150 lbs.) passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 295 kg (650 lbs.)

   (635 - 340 (5 x 68)=295 kg or 1400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Loose cargo

Do not travel with unsecured blunt objects in the passenger compartment of your vehicle (e.g. suit cases or unsecured child seats). These items may strike occupant during a sudden stop or crash.

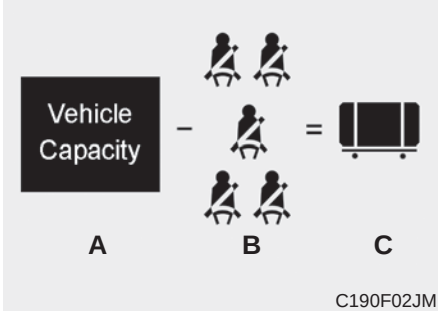
Example 1



C190F01JM

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight	385 kg (849 lbs)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2	136 kg (300 lbs)
C	Available Cargo and Luggage weight	249 kg (549 lbs)

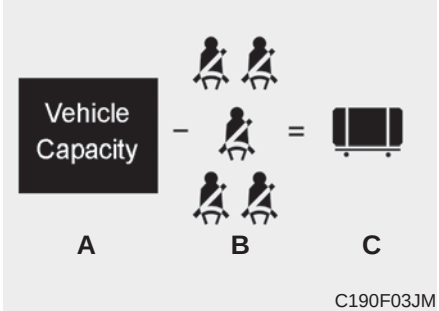
Example 2



C190F02JM

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight	385 kg (849 lbs)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5	340 kg (750 lbs)
C	Available Cargo and Luggage weight	45 kg (99 lbs)

Example 3



C190F03JM

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight	385 kg (849 lbs)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 73 kg (161 lbs) × 5	365 kg (805 lbs)
C	Available Cargo and Luggage weight	20 kg (44 lbs)

Refer to your vehicle’s tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification label

The certification label is located on the driver's door sill at the center pillar.

This label shows the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This is called the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo.

This label also tells you the maximum weight that can be supported by the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

⚠ WARNING - Over loading

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, the GAWR for either the front or rear axle and vehicle capacity weight. Exceeding these ratings can affect your vehicle's handling and braking ability.

The label will help you decide how much cargo and installed equipment your vehicle can carry.

If you carry items inside your vehicle - like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else - they are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items will keep going and can cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.

⚠ WARNING - Over loading

Do not overload your vehicle. Overloading your vehicle can cause heat buildup in your vehicle's tires and possible tire failure, increased stopping distances and poor vehicle handling--all of which may result in a crash.

✻ NOTICE

Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.

VEHICLE WEIGHT

This chapter will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the compliance label:

Base curb weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle curb weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross axle weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the compliance label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross vehicle weight)

This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label located on the driver’s door sill.

What to do in an emergency

Road warning 7-2
- Hazard warning flasher 7-2

In case of an emergency while driving. 7-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing. 7-3
- If you have a flat tire while driving. 7-3
- If the engine stalls while driving 7-3

If the engine will not start 7-4
- If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly 7-4
- If engine turns over normally but does not start 7-4

Emergency starting 7-5
- Jump starting. 7-5
- Push-starting 7-6

If the engine overheats. 7-7

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 7-8
- Check tire pressure 7-8
- Low tire pressure telltale 7-10
- Low tire pressure position telltale 7-10
- Changing a tire with TPMS 7-12

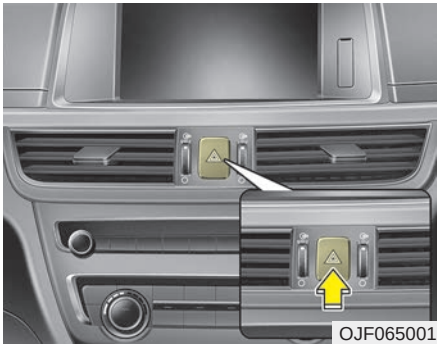
If you have a flat tire 7-15
- Jack and tools 7-15
- Removing and storing the spare tire 7-16
- Changing tires 7-17

If you have a flat tire (With Tire Mobility Kit). . 7-24
- Introduction 7-24
- Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit 7-25
- Components of the Tire Mobility Kit 7-26
- Using the Tire Mobility Kit 7-27
- Distributing the sealant. 7-30
- Checking the tire inflation pressure 7-30
- Technical Data 7-32

Towing 7-33
- Towing service 7-33

ROAD WARNING

Hazard warning flasher



The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the center facia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher while the vehicle is being towed.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.

If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transaxle in P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tire, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

If the engine stalls while driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, contact an authorized Kia dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

✻ NOTICE

If there was a check engine light and loss of power or stall and if safe to do so, wait at least 10 seconds to restart the vehicle after it stalls. This may reset the car so it will no longer run at low power (limp home) condition.

IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

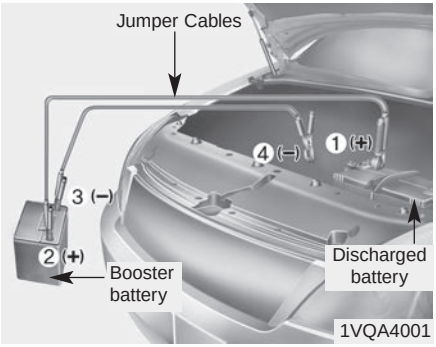
⚠ WARNING - Push/ pull start

Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. Push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to overload and create a fire hazard.

If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check the fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK position, check all connectors at the ignition coils and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, call an authorized Kia dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

EMERGENCY STARTING



Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow these jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

CAUTION - Push/pull start to 12 Volt Battery

Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

WARNING - Battery

Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode.

WARNING - Frozen batteries

Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low as the battery may rupture or explode.

WARNING - Battery

Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which will explode if exposed to flame or sparks.

WARNING - Sulfuric acid risk

When jump starting your vehicle, be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive.

Jump starting procedure

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to come in contact.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery (2).

   Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

⚠ WARNING - Battery cables

Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, you should have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Push-starting

Vehicles equipped with automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission lock system cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

⚠ WARNING - Tow starting vehicle

Never tow a vehicle to start it.

When the engine starts, the vehicle can suddenly surge forward and could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine will probably be too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from underneath the hood, stop the engine. Do not open the hood until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

⚠ WARNING - Under the hood

While the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call the nearest authorized Kia dealer for assistance.

⚠ WARNING - Radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns.

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. If coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, call an authorized Kia dealer for assistance.

Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and this should be checked as soon as possible by an authorized Kia dealer.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)

OJF065002

OJF065027L

(1) Low tire pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator

(2) Low tire pressure position telltale (Shown on the LCD display)

Check tire pressure

OJF065026L

- You can check the tire pressure in the information mode on the cluster.
  - Refer to “User settings mode” in chapter 4.
- Tire pressure is displayed 1~2 minutes later after driving.
- If tire pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, “Drive to display” message displays. After driving, check the tire pressure.
- You can change the tire pressure unit in the user settings mode on the cluster.
  - psi, kpa, bar (Refer to “User settings mode” in chapter 4).

✻ NOTICE

- **The tire pressure may change due to factors such as parking condition, driving style, and altitude above sea level.**
- **Low tire pressure warning may sound when a tire’s pressure unit is equal or higher than nearby tires. This is a normal occurrence, which is due to the change in tire pressure along with tire temperature.**
- **The tire pressure shown on the dashboard may differ from the tire pressure measured by tire pressure gauge.**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement, alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

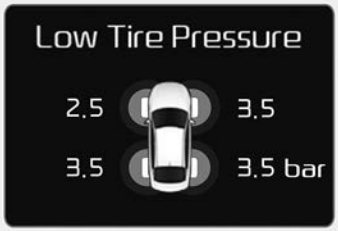
Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

✻ NOTICE

If the TPMS, Low Tire Pressure indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running, or if they remain illuminated after coming on for approximately 3 seconds, take your vehicle to your nearest authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

Low tire pressure telltale

Low tire pressure position telltale



OJF065025L

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

If the telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible.

Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver's side center pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire.

Then the TPMS malfunction indicator and the Low Tire Pressure telltale may turn on and illuminate after restarting and about 20 minutes of continuous driving before you have the low pressure tire repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

In winter or cold weather, the low tire pressure telltale may be illuminated if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tire pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.

⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage

Do not drive on low pressure tires. Significantly low tire pressure can cause the tires to overheat and fail making the vehicle unstable resulting in increased braking distances and a loss of vehicle control.

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The low tire pressure telltale will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. If the system is able to correctly detect an underinflation warning at the same time as system failure then it will illuminate both the TPMS malfunction and low tire pressure position telltales e.g. if Front Left sensor fails, the TPMS malfunction indicator illuminates, but if the Front Right, Rear Left, or Rear Right tire is under-inflated, the low tire pressure position telltales may illuminate together with the TPMS malfunction indicator.

Have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible to determine the cause of the problem.

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitters such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
- The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

Changing a tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the Low Tire Pressure telltale will come on. Have the flat tire repaired by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible or replace the flat tire with the spare tire.

⚠ CAUTION - Repair Agents

Never use a puncture-repairing agent not approved by Kia to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tire. The sealant not approved by Kia may damage the tire pressure sensor.

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Even if you replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the Low Tire Pressure telltale will remain on until the low pressure tire is repaired and placed on the vehicle.

After you replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the TPMS malfunction indicator may illuminate after a few minutes because the TPMS sensor mounted on the spare wheel is not initiated.

Once the low pressure tire is inflated again to the recommended pressure and installed on the vehicle or the TPMS sensor mounted on the replaced spare wheel is initiated by an authorized Kia dealer, the TPMS malfunction indicator and the low tire pressure telltale will turn off within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicator has not disappeared after a few minutes of driving, please visit an authorized Kia dealer.

If an original mounted tire is replaced with the spare tire, the TPMS sensor on the replaced spare wheel should be initiated and the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel should be deactivated. If the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel located in the spare tire carrier still activates, the tire pressure monitoring system may not operate properly. Have the tire with TPMS serviced or replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

You may not be able to identify a low tire by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure the tire's inflation pressure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

Never use tire sealant if your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tire pressure sensors.

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
- If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

✻ NOTICE - Protecting TPMS

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

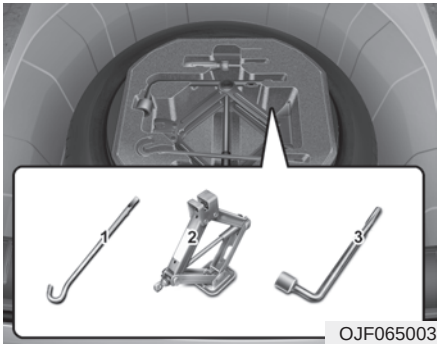
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE

Jack and tools (if equipped)



The jack and wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Remove the panel indicated in the illustration.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

Jacking instructions

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store it properly.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Tire Jack

Do not place any portion of your body under a vehicle that is only supported by a jack since the vehicle can easily roll off the jack. Use vehicle support stands.

⚠ WARNING - Changing tires

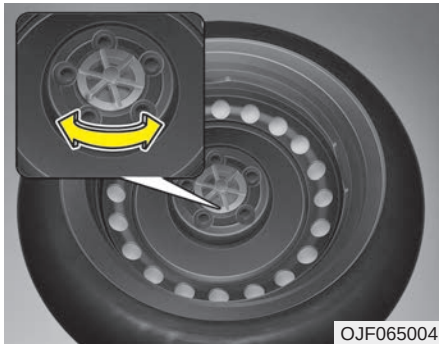
Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.

- Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tire. The jack should be used on a firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm, level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.
- Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jack support.
- Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.
- Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.

⚠ WARNING - Running vehicle on jack

Do not start or run the engine of the vehicle while the vehicle is on the jack as this may cause the vehicle to fall off the jack.

Removing and storing the spare tire (if equipped)


OJF065004

Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise.

Store the tire in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tire and tools from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

OJFC065035

If it is hard to loosen the tire hold-down wing bolt by hand, you can loosen it easily using the jack handle.

1. Put the jack handle (1) inside of the tire hold-down wing bolt.
2. Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise with the jack handle.

Use caution when utilizing the sharp jack handle.

Changing tires (if equipped)

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park) with automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission.
3. Activate the hazard warning flashers.

4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack and spare tire from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite from the jack position.

⚠ WARNING - Jack location

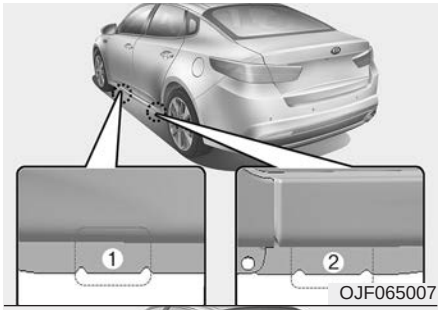
To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.

⚠ WARNING - Changing a tire

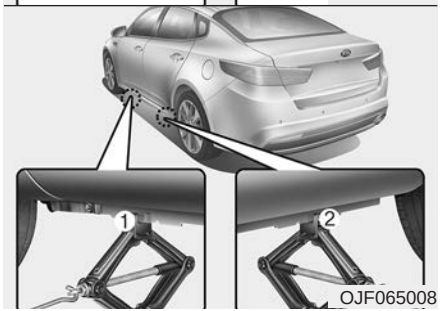
- **To prevent vehicle movement while changing a tire, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be blocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**

OJF065005

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tire has been raised off the ground.



OJF065007



OJF065008

7. Place the jack at the front (1) or rear (2) jacking position closest to the tire you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to line up with the jack.

OJF065006

8. Insert the wheel lug nut wrench into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tire just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1 in.).

   Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

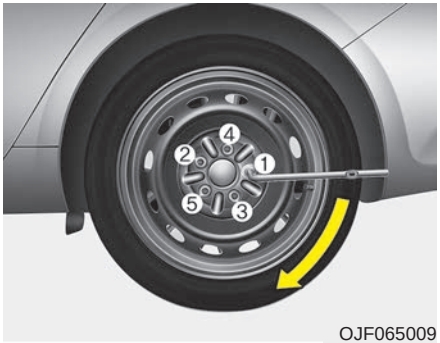
9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tire, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can slide over the other studs.

Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that prevents the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.

⚠ WARNING - Installing a wheel

Make sure the wheel makes good contact with the hub when installed. If the contact of the mounting surface between the wheel and hub is not good, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle.

10. To install the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. Jiggle the tire to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Insert the wrench into the jack and lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OJF065009

Position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel, tightening every nut following the numerical sequence shown in the image until they are all tight. Double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, have an authorized Kia dealer tighten the wheel nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible.

Wheel nut tightening torque:

11~13 kgf·m (79~94 lbf·ft)

If you have a tire gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting the tire pressure. If the cap is not replaced, dust and dirt may get into the tire valve and air may leak from the tire. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed the wheels, always secure the flat tire in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

⚠ **CAUTION - Reusing lug nuts**

Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs

If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.

To prevent the jack, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tire from rattling while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to “Tires and wheels” in section 8.

Important - use of compact spare tire

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tire. This compact spare tire takes up less space than a regular-size tire. This tire is smaller than a conventional tire and is designed for temporary use only.

- You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tire and rim at the first opportunity.
- The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tire in use at the same time.

⚠ WARNING - Spare tire

The compact spare tire is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph). The original tire should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

The compact spare should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).

✻ NOTICE

Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.

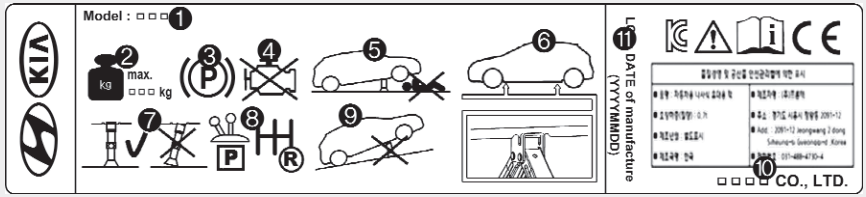
When using a compact spare tire, observe the following precautions:

- Under no circumstances should you exceed 80 km/h (50 mph); a higher speed could damage the tire.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough for the road conditions to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tire could result in tire failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tire.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tire diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tire and reduces the ground clearance approximately 25 mm (1 inch), which could result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic vehicle wash while the compact spare tire is installed.
- Do not use the compact spare tire on any other vehicle because this tire has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tire's tread life is shorter than a regular tire. Inspect your compact spare tire regularly and replace worn compact spare tires with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The compact spare tire should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tires, snow tires, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other vehicle components may occur.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer while the compact spare tire is installed.

Jack label

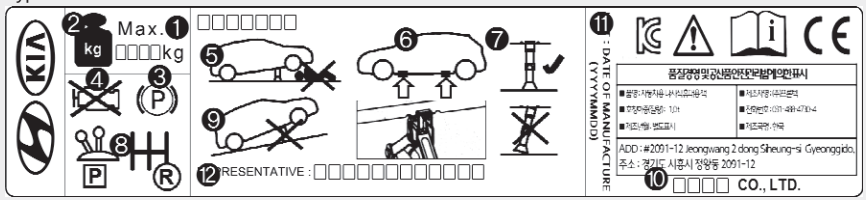
■ Example

• Type A



OHYK064001

• Type B



OHYK064005

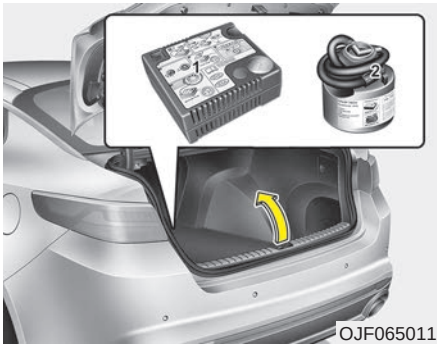
• Type C

OHYK064002

❊ The actual Jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with automatic transmission.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE (WITH TIRE MOBILITY KIT, IF EQUIPPED)



OJF065011

For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle

The Tire Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tire and the tire should be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

When two or more tires are flat, do not use the tire mobility kit because the supported one sealant of Tire Mobility Kit is only used for one flat tire.

⚠ WARNING - Tire wall

Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tire walls. This can result in an accident due to tire failure.

Have your tire repaired as soon as possible. The tire may loose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tire Mobility Kit.

Introduction

OJF065010

With the Tire Mobility Kit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tire puncture.

The system of compressor and sealing compound effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tire caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tire.

After you ensured that the tire is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tire (up to 200 km (120 miles)) at a max. speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) in order to reach a service station or tire dealer to have the tire replacement.

It is possible that some tires, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tire may adversely affect tire performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The Tire Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tire repair method and is to be used for one tire only.

This instruction shows you step by step procedure to temporarily seal the puncture.

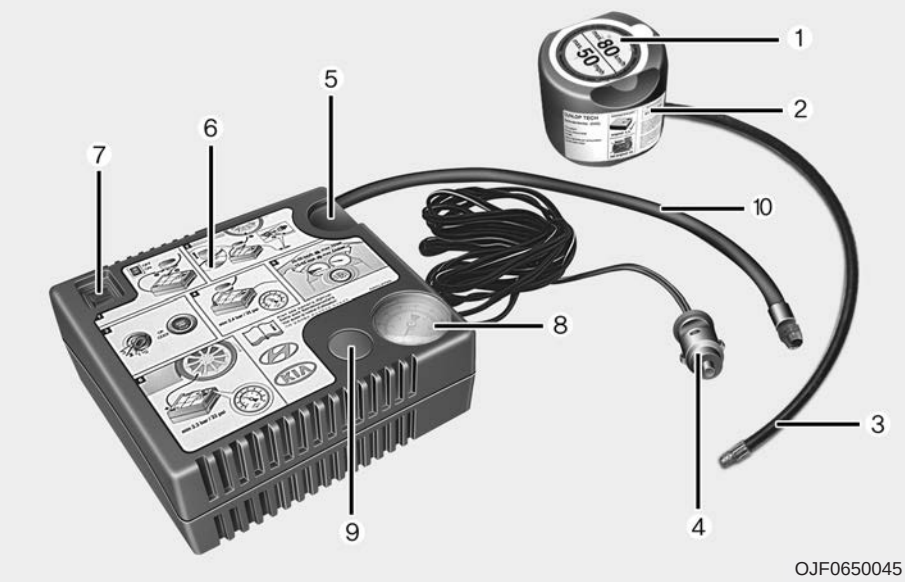
Read the section "Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit".

Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tire Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the Tire Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the tire mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tire Mobility Kit may not be effective for tire damage larger than approximately 6 mm (0.24 in.).

  Please contact the nearest Kia dealership if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tire.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the Tire Mobility Kit unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (22°F).

Components of the Tire Mobility Kit



1. Speed restriction label
2. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
3. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
4. Connectors and cable for the power outlet direct connection
5. Holder for the sealant bottle
6. Compressor
7. On/off switch
8. Pressure gauge for displaying the tire inflation pressure
9. Button for reducing tire inflation pressure
10. Hose to connect compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

⚠ WARNING - Expired sealant

Do not use the Tire sealant after the sealant has expired (i.e. past the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tire failure.

⚠ WARNING - Sealant

- **Keep out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid contact with eyes.**
- **Do not swallow.**

Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

Using the TMK

1. Detach the speed restriction label (1) from the sealant bottle (2), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.

OJF065012

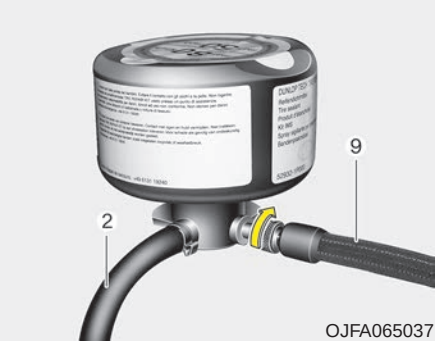
⚠ CAUTION

Before using the tire repair kit, please read carefully the instruction attached on the sealant case. Detach the speed limit label on the sealant case and put it on a highly visible place. Always drive within the speed limit.

OTAM061022

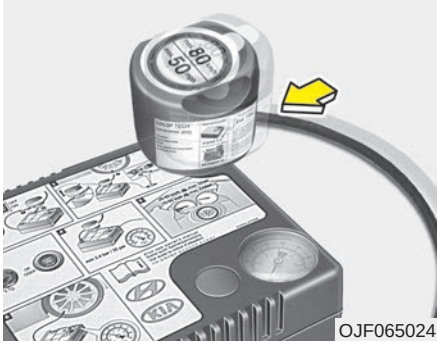
Carefully follow below steps.

2. Shake the sealant case.

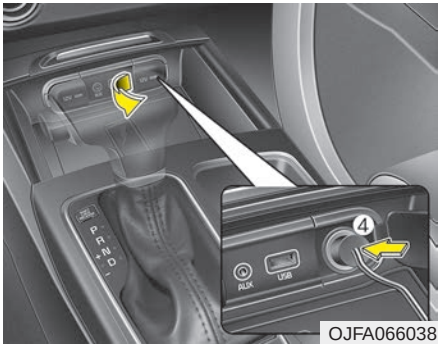


3. Screw connection hose (10) onto the connector of the sealant bottle.
4. Ensure that button (9) on the compressor is not pressed.

5. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the flat tire and screw filling hose (3) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.



6. Insert the sealant bottle into the housing (5) of the compressor so that the bottle is upright.
7. Ensure that the compressor is switched off, position 0.



OJFA066038

8. Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors (4).
9. With the engine start/stop button position on or ignition switch position on, switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure. (refer to the Tire and Wheels, chapter 9). The inflation pressure of the tire after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

   Be careful not to overinflate the tire and stay away from the tire when filling it.

When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.

⚠ CAUTION - Tire pressure

Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tire pressure is below 200 kPa (29 psi). This could result in an accident due to sudden tire failure.

10. Switch off the compressor.
11. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tire valve.

Return the TMK to its storage location in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave your engine running in a poorly ventilated or unventilated location. This can result in carbon monoxide poisoning or suffocation.

Distributing the sealant

12. Immediately drive approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or, about 10min) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tire.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).

While driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road. Call for road side service or towing.

When you use the Tire Mobility Kit, the tire pressure sensors and wheel may be covered by sealant. Therefore, remove the tire pressure sensors and wheel covered with sealant and we recommend that they be cleaned and inspected at an authorized Kia dealer.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

1. After driving approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or about 10 minutes), stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect connection hose (10) of the compressor directly to the tire valve.
3. Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.
4. Adjust the tire inflation pressure to 200 kPa (29 psi). With the ignition switched on, proceed as follows.
   - **To increase the inflation pressure:** Switch on the compressor, position I. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

- **To reduce the inflation pressure:** Press the button (9) on the compressor.

⚠ CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to Distributing the sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4.

Use of the TMK may be ineffectual for tire damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.16 in).

We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit.

⚠ WARNING

The tire inflation pressure must be at least 200 kPa (29 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving. Call for road side service or towing.

Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the TMK away from moving traffic. Place your warning triangle in a prominent place to make passing vehicles aware of your location.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the TMK for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- Do not remove any foreign objects-such as nails or screws -that have penetrated the tire.
- Before using the TMK, read the precautionary advice printed on the sealant bottle!
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the TMK unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the TMK if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.

Technical Data

System voltage: DC 12 V

Working voltage: DC 10 - 15 V

Amperage rating: max. 15 A

Suitable for use at temperatures:

-30 ~ +70°C (-22 ~ +158°F)

Max. working pressure:

6 bar (87 psi)

Size

Compressor : 1 6 8 x 1 5 0 x 6 8 m m (6.6x5.9x2.7in)

Sealant bottle: 104 x 85 ø mm (4.1 x 3.3 ø in.)

Compressor weight:

1.05 kg (2.31 lbs)

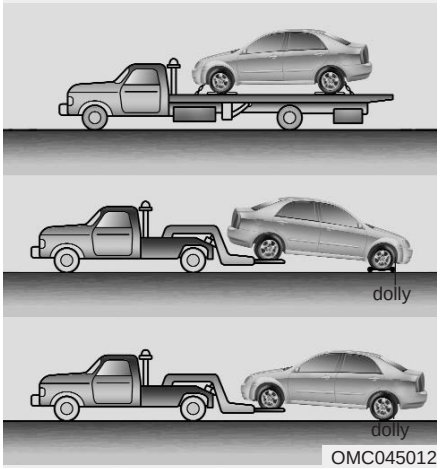
Sealant volume:

300 ml (18.3 cu. in.)

❈ Sealant and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorized vehicle or tire dealer. Empty sealant bottles may be disposed of at home. Liquid residue from the sealant should be disposed of by your vehicle or tire dealer or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

TOWING

Towing service



If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.

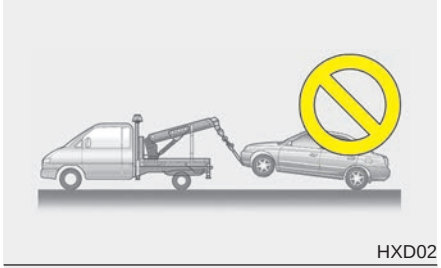
✻ NOTICE

If the EPB does not release normally, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

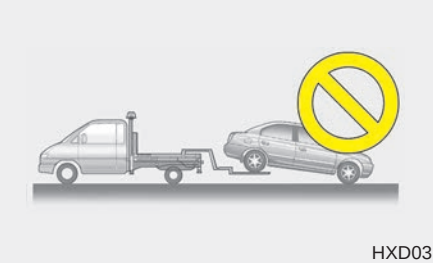
⚠ WARNING - Side and curtain Air bag

If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bag, set the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.

The side and curtain air bag may deploy when the ignition is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.



HXD02



HXD03

⚠ **CAUTION - Towing**

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

⚠ **CAUTION - Towing gear position**

Failure to place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transaxle.

Maintenance

Engine compartment 8-3
Maintenance services 8-5
• Owner's responsibility 8-5
• Owner maintenance precautions 8-6
Owner maintenance 8-7
• Owner maintenance schedule. 8-7
Scheduled maintenance service. 8-9
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items . . . 8-23
Engine oil. 8-27
• Checking the engine oil level 8-27
• Changing the engine oil and filter 8-28
Engine coolant 8-29
• Checking the coolant level 8-29
• Changing the coolant 8-31
Brake fluid 8-32
• Checking the brake fluid level 8-32
Washer fluid 8-33
• Checking the washer fluid level 8-33
Parking brake 8-34
• Checking the parking brake. 8-34
Air cleaner. 8-35
• Filter replacement 8-35
Climate control air filter 8-37
• Filter inspection 8-37
Wiper blades 8-39
• Blade inspection. 8-39
• Blade replacement 8-39
Battery 8-43
• For best battery service 8-43
• Recharging the battery 8-44
• Reset items 8-45
Tires and wheels 8-46
• Tire care 8-46
• Recommended cold tire inflation pressures 8-46
• Tire pressure 8-47
• Checking tire inflation pressure. 8-47
• Tire rotation 8-48
• Wheel alignment and tire balance 8-49
• Tire replacement 8-50
• Wheel replacement 8-51
• Tire traction 8-51
• Tire maintenance 8-51
• Tire sidewall labeling 8-51
• All season tires 8-58
• Summer tires 8-58
• Snow tires 8-58
• Radial-ply tires 8-58
• Low aspect ratio tire 8-59

Fuses 8-61
- Inner panel fuse replacement. 8-62
- Engine compartment fuse replacement. 8-64
- Fuse/relay panel description. 8-66

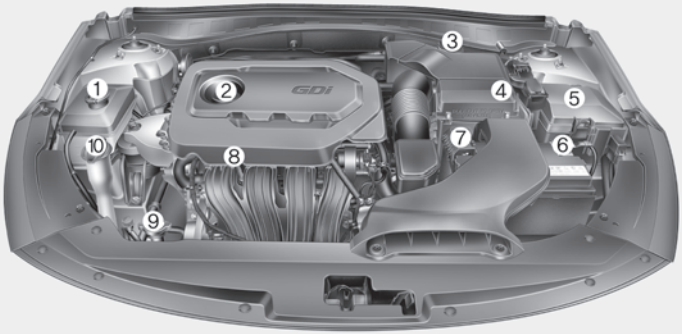
Light bulbs 8-76
- Bulb replacement precaution 8-76
- Light bulb position (Front). 8-77
- Light bulb position (Rear) 8-78
- Light bulb position (Side). 8-79
- Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement 8-80
- Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement 8-82
- Headlamp (Low/High beam,LED type) bulb replacement 8-82
- Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement. 8-83
- Position lamp + DRL (LED type) bulb replacement . . 8-83
- Side repeater lamp bulb replacement 8-84
- Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement 8-84
- Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement 8-85
- Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . 8-87
- Back-up lamp bulb replacement 8-87
- Tail lamp bulb replacement 8-88
- License plate lamp bulb replacement 8-89
- High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement 8-90
- Map lamp bulb replacement 8-90
- Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement 8-90
- Room lamp bulb replacement 8-91
- Personal lamp bulb replacement 8-92
- Glove box lamp bulb replacement. 8-92
- Trunk lamp bulb replacement 8-92

Appearance care. 8-93
- Exterior care 8-93
- Interior care. 8-98

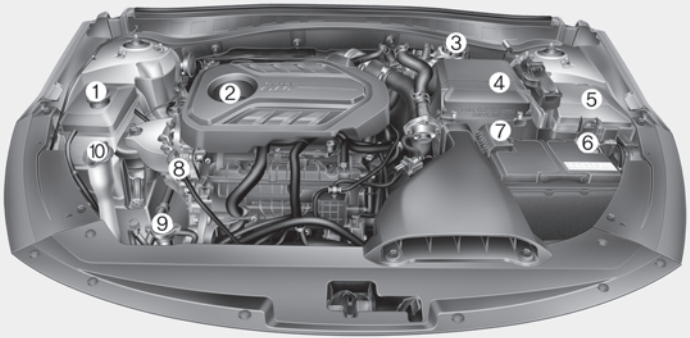
Emission control system 8-101
- Crankcase emission control system. 8-101
- Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system. . . . 8-101
- Exhaust emission control system 8-102

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ THETA 2.4L - GDI



■ THETA 2.0L T-GDI

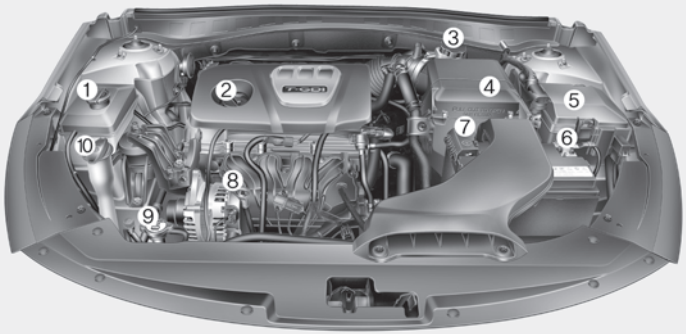


1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

❊ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJFA075001/OJF075001L

■ **GAMMA 1.6L T-GDI**



1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

❊ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJFA075002

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Should you have any doubts concerning the inspection or servicing of your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have an authorized Kia dealer perform this work.

An authorized Kia dealer has factory-trained technicians and genuine Kia parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see an authorized Kia dealer.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

Owner’s responsibility

✻ NOTICE

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.
You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.
Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Consumer Information manual.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer. An authorized Kia dealer meets Kia’s high service quality standards and receives technical support from Kia in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

As explained earlier in this section, several procedures can be done only by an authorized Kia dealer with special tools.

✻ NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Warranty & Consumer Information manual provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work

Do not wear jewelry or loose clothing while working under the hood of your vehicle with the engine running. These can become entangled in moving parts, if you must run the engine while working under the hood, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.

OWNER MAINTENANCE

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorized Kia dealer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for fuel:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tires.

⚠ WARNING - Hot coolant

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure.

While operating your vehicle:

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transaxle occurs, check the transaxle fluid level.
- Check the automatic transaxle P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare.

At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall) :

- Check the radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlight alignment.
- Check the muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tires and loose wheel lug nuts.

At least once a year :

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and check the hood hinges.
- Lubricate the door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate the door rubber weather-strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transaxle linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow the Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust condition
- Driving in heavy traffic area
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly
- Towing a trailer or using a camper, or roof rack
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Driving over 170 km/h (106 mph)
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After 120 months or 240,000 km (150,000 miles) continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

Normal Maintenance Schedule

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance.

Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 6 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 12 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect all latch, hinges and locks
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

36,000 km (22,500 miles) or 18 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (36,000 km (22,500 miles) or 36 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (36,000 km (22,500 miles) or 36 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

48,000 km (30,000 miles) or 24 months
❑ Inspect all latch, hinges and locks
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
❑ Inspect brake fluid
❑ Inspect fuel cap, fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections
❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (if equipped) *1
❑ Inspect parking brake
❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
❑ Replace air cleaner filter
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (48,000 km (30,000 miles) or 48 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (48,000 km (30,000 miles) or 48 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

60,000 km (37,500 miles) or 30 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Inspect dual clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (60,000 km (37,500 miles) or 60 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (60,000 km (37,500 miles) or 60 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*1 Fuel tank air filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

72,000 km (45,000 miles) or 36 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect all latch, hinges and locks
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (72,000 km (45,000 miles) or 72 months)
❑ Replace spark plugs (iridium coated), (1.6TGDI/2.0TGDI)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (72,000 km (45,000 miles) or 72 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

84,000 km (52,500 miles) or 42 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (84,000 km (52,500 miles) or 84 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (84,000 km (52,500 miles) or 84 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48 months

- ❑ Inspect all latch, hinges and locks
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
- ❑ Inspect vacuum hose
- ❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
- ❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
- ❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
- ❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
- ❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
- ❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
- ❑ Inspect brake fluid
- ❑ Inspect fuel cap, fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (if equipped) *1
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect valve clearance (if equipped) *2 (Every 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belts (First, 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months after every 24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 96 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additive *4 (96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 96 months)
- ❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*1 Fuel tank air filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.

*2 Inspect for excessive tappet noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary.

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

108,000 km (67,500 miles) or 54 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (108,000 km (67,500 miles) or 108 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (108,000 km (67,500 miles) or 108 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*1 Fuel tank air filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.

*2 Inspect for excessive tappet noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary.

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 60 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect all latch, hinges and locks
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
❑ Inspect drive belts (First, 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months after every 24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Inspect dual clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)
❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 120 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 120 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

132,000 km (82,500 miles) or 66 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (132,000 km (82,500 miles) or 132 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (132,000 km (82,500 miles) or 132 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

144,000 km (90,000 miles) or 72 months

- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
- ❑ Inspect vacuum hose
- ❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
- ❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
- ❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
- ❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
- ❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
- ❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
- ❑ Inspect brake fluid
- ❑ Inspect fuel cap, fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (if equipped) *1
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect drive belts (First, 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months after every 24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (144,000 km (90,000 miles) or 144 months)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (iridium coated), (1.6TGDI/2.0TGDI)
- ❑ Add fuel additive *4 (144,000 km (90,000 miles) or 144 months)
- ❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

156,000 km (97,500 miles) or 78 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
- ❑ Inspect vacuum hose
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (156,000 km (97,500 miles) or 156 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additive *4 (156,000 km (97,500 miles) or 156 months)
- ❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*1 Fuel tank air filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

168,000 km (105,000 miles) or 84 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
❑ Inspect drive belts (First, 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months after every 24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
❑ Replace spark plugs (iridium coated) (2.4 GDI)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (168,000 km (105,000 miles) or 168 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (168,000 km (105,000 miles) or 168 months
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

180,000 km (112,500 miles) or 90 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Inspect dual clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (180,000 km (112,500 miles) or 180 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (180,000 km (112,500 miles) or 180 months
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

192,000 km (120,000 miles) or 96 months

- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
- ❑ Inspect vacuum hose
- ❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
- ❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
- ❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
- ❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
- ❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
- ❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
- ❑ Inspect brake fluid
- ❑ Inspect fuel cap, fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (if equipped) *1
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect valve clearance (if equipped) *2 (Every 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belts (First, 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months after every 24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (192,000 km (120,000 miles) or 192 months)
- ❑ Replace coolant (First, 192,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months after every 48,000 km (30,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additive *4 (192,000 km (120,000 miles) or 192 months)
- ❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

204,000 km (127,500 miles) or 102 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
- ❑ Inspect vacuum hose
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (204,000 km (127,500 miles) or 204 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additive *4 (204,000 km (127,500 miles) or 204 months)
- ❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*1 Fuel tank air filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.

*2 Inspect for excessive tappet noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary.

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

216,000 km (135,000 miles) or 108 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
❑ Inspect drive belts (First, 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months after every 24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (216,000 km (135,000 miles) or 216 months)
❑ Replace spark plugs (iridium coated), (1.6TGDI/2.0TGDI)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (216,000 km (135,000 miles) or 216 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

228,000 km (142,500 miles) or 114 months
❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
❑ Inspect vacuum hose
❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3 (228,000 km (142,500 miles) or 228 months)
❑ Add fuel additive *4 (228,000 km (142,500 miles) or 228 months)
❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Normal Maintenance Schedule (CONT.)

240,000 km (150,000 miles) or 120 months

- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect cooling system hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect clutch (if equipped) and brake pedal free play
- ❑ Inspect vacuum hose
- ❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
- ❑ Inspect brake hoses/lines and connections (including booster)
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
- ❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
- ❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads
- ❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
- ❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts
- ❑ Inspect brake fluid
- ❑ Inspect fuel cap, fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (if equipped) *1
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect drive belts
  (First, 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months
  after every 24,000 km (15,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  - Turbo GDI (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Inspect dual clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI) *3
  (240,000 km (150,000 miles) or 240 months)
- ❑ Replace coolant (First, 192,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months after every 48,000 km (30,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additive *4 (240,000 km (150,000 miles) or 240 months)
- ❑ Rotate tire position (Every 12,000 km (7,500 miles))

No check, No service required

- ❑ Automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

*1 Fuel tank air filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.

*3 **Engine oil (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)** Replace every 10,000km (6,500miles) or 6 months

*4 If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars normally used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace I : Inspect and, after inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and filter (2.4 GDI)	R	Every 6,000 km (3,750 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
Engine oil and filter (1.6 TGDI/2.0 TGDI)	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months	
Air cleaner filter	R	More frequently	C, E
Spark plugs	R	More frequently	B, H
Automatic transmission fluid	R	Every 96,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, E, F, G, I
Dual clutch transmission fluid	R	Every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)	A, C, E, F, G, H, I, J
Front brake disc/pads, calipers	I	More frequently	C, D, G, H
Rear brake disc/pads	I	More frequently	C, D, G, F
Parking brake	I	More frequently	C, D, G, H
Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint	I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G, H, I
Suspension mounting bolts	I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G, H, I
Drive shafts and boots	I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)	R	More frequently	C, E

Severe Driving Conditions

A - Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
B - Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
C - Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt- spread roads
D - Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E - Driving in heavy dust condition
F - Driving in heavy traffic area
G - Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road
H - Towing a Trailer, or using a camper, or roof rack
I - Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
J - Driving over 170 km/h (106 mph)
K - Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. Fuel filters should be installed by an authorized Kia dealer.

Fuel filter (for gasoline)

Kia gasoline vehicle is equipped a lifetime fuel filter that integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed but depends on fuel quality. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, fuel filter inspection or replace is needed.

The fuel filter be Inspected or replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Have an authorized Kia dealer replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately.

Vapor hose and fuel filler cap

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

Air cleaner filter

A Genuine Kia air cleaner filter is recommended when the filter is replaced.

Spark plugs

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

Valve clearance (if equipped)

Inspect excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. An authorized Kia dealer should perform the operation.

Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as the radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Automatic transaxle fluid

Automatic transaxle fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

But in severe conditions, the fluid should be changed at an authorized Kia dealer in accordance to the scheduled maintenance at the beginning of this chapter.

✻ NOTICE

Automatic transaxle fluid color is basically red.
As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transaxle fluid will begin to look darker.
It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed color.

⚠ CAUTION

Use only specified automatic transaxle fluid. The use of a non-specified fluid could result in a transaxle malfunction and failure. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 9.)

Dual clutch transmission Fluid

Inspect the dual clutch transmission fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake pedal and cables.

Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

Exhaust pipe and muffler

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and boots

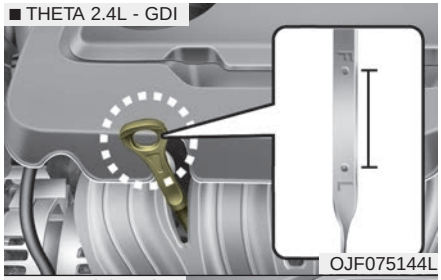
Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

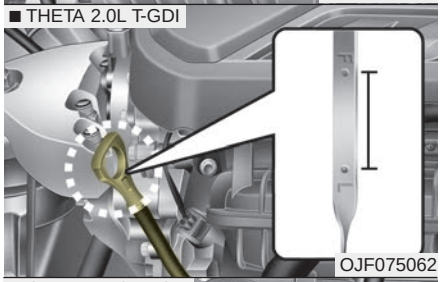
Air conditioning refrigerant

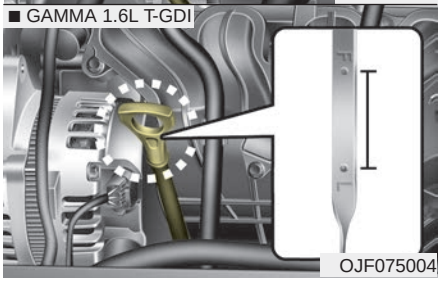
Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

ENGINE OIL

Checking the engine oil level







1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and reinsert it fully.

⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose

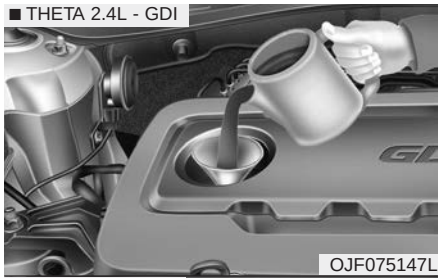
Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

⚠ CAUTION - Replacing engine oil

Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.

■ THETA 2.4L - GDI

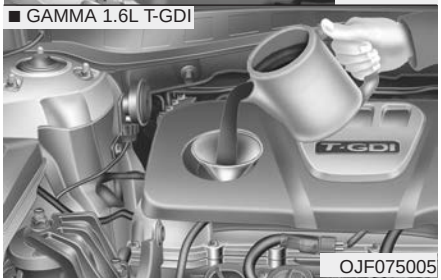


OJF075147L

■ THETA 2.0L T-GDI

OJF075067

■ GAMMA 1.6L T-GDI



OJF075005

If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 9.)

Changing the engine oil and filter

Have engine oil and filter changed by an authorized Kia dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

⚠ WARNING

Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year: at the beginning of the winter season, and before traveling to a colder climate.

⚠ CAUTION - Radiator cap

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage.

Checking the coolant level

⚠ WARNING

Removing radiator cap

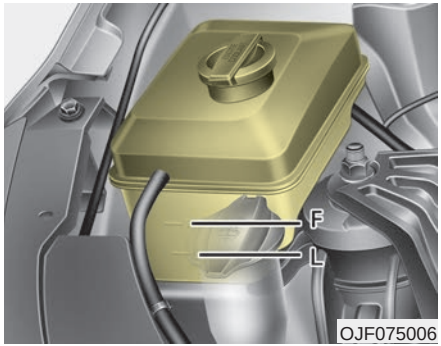
Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.

- Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system.

  When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.
- Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

⚠ WARNING - Cooling fan

Use caution when working near the blade of the cooling fan. The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. it may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running.



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F and L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

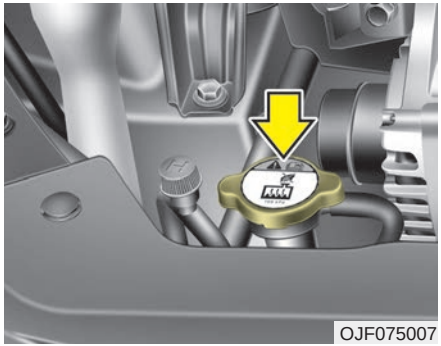
If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F, but do not overfill. If frequent additions are required, see an authorized Kia dealer for a cooling system inspection.

Recommended engine coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze. This would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15°C (5°F)	35	65
-25°C (-13°F)	40	60
-35°C (-31°F)	50	50
-45°C (-49°F)	60	40


OJF075007

⚠ WARNING

Radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure which may result in serious injury.

Changing the coolant

Have the coolant changed by an authorized Kia dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

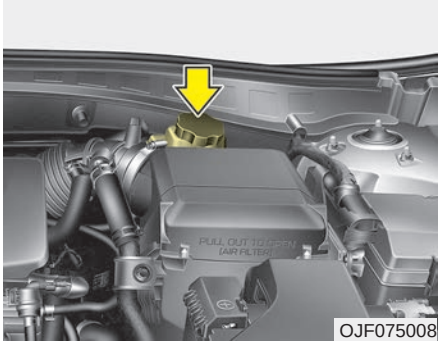
Put a thick cloth around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the alternator.

⚠ CAUTION

Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the generator.

BRAKE FLUID

Checking the brake fluid level



OJF075008

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX (Maximum) and MIN (Minimum) marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

⚠ CAUTION - Proper fluid

Only use brake fluid in brake system. Small amounts of improper fluids (such as engine oil) can cause damage to the brake system.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX (Maximum) level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, have the brake system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Use only the specified brake fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 9.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

When changing and adding brake fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

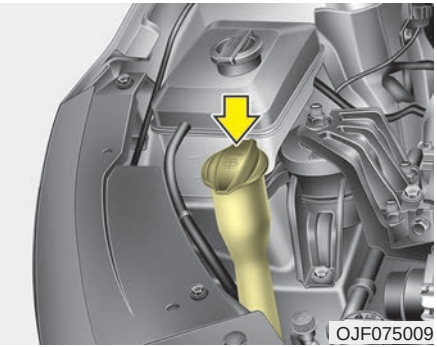
⚠ CAUTION - Brake fluid

Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.

Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly.

WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level



The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

⚠ WARNING - Flammable fluid

Do not allow the washer fluid to come in contact with open flames or sparks. The windshield washer fluid reservoir is flammable under certain circumstances. This can result in a fire.

⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control.**

⚠ WARNING - Windshield fluid

Do not drink the windshield washer fluid. The windshield washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals.

PARKING BRAKE

Checking the parking brake

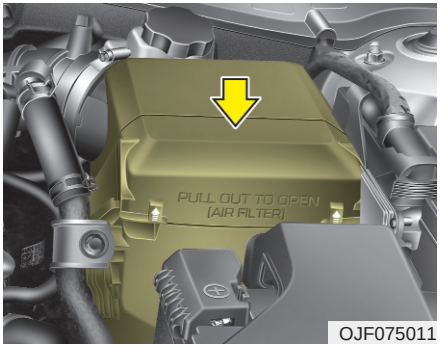
OJF055017

Check whether the stroke is within specification when the parking brake pedal is depressed with 30 kg, 294 N (66 lb) of force. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, have the parking brake adjusted by an authorized Kia dealer.

Stroke : 6~7 notch

AIR CLEANER

Filter replacement

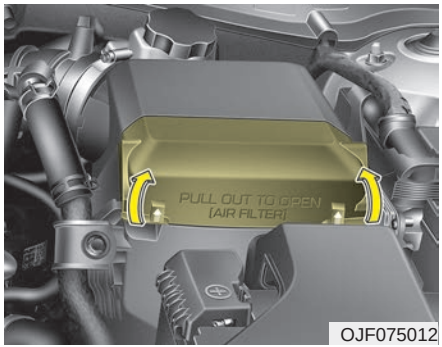


OJF075011

It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

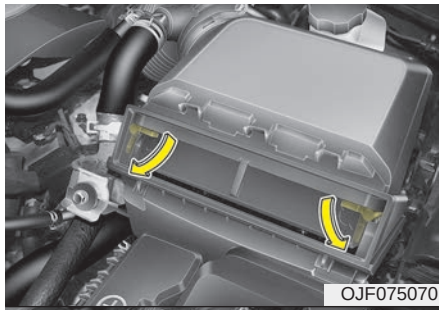
You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

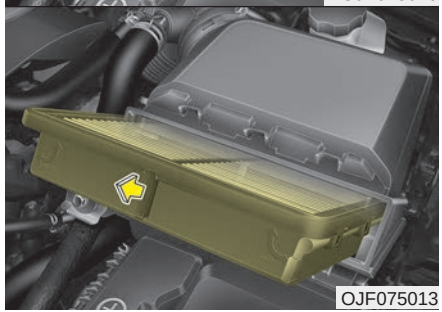
Clean the filter by using compressed air.



OJF075012

1. Pull out the air cleaner cover.


OJF075070


OJF075013

2. Unlock by turning the locking lever downward.
3. Pull the air cleaner filter to replace.
4. Lock the cover with the reverse order.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in this chapter.)

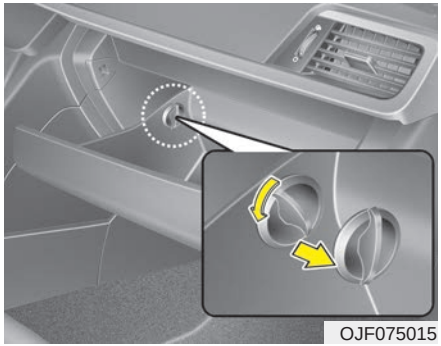
⚠ **CAUTION - Air filter maintenance**

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***Use a Kia genuine part. Use of a non-genuine part could damage the air flow sensor.***

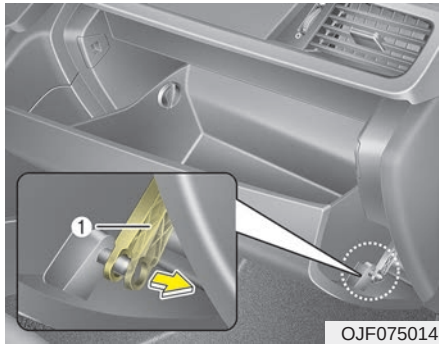
CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER (IF EQUIPPED)

Filter inspection

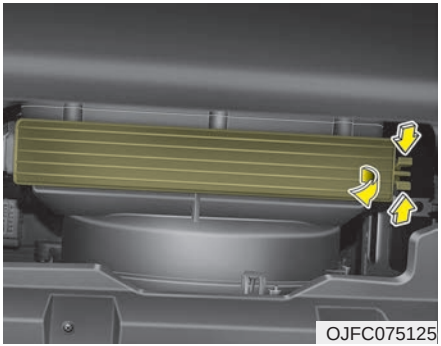
The climate control air filter should be replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.



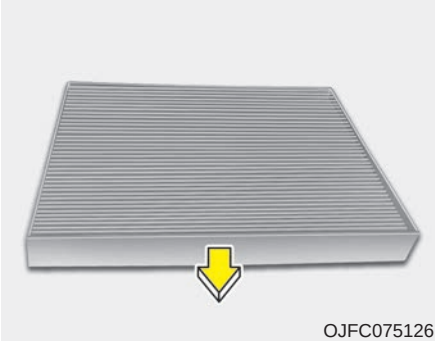
1. Open the glove box and remove the stoppers on both sides.



2. With the glove box open, pull the support strap (1).


OJFC075125

3. Remove the climate control air filter cover while pressing the lock on the right side of the cover.

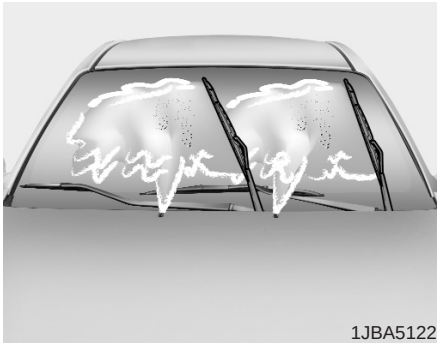

OJFC075126

4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection



Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

⚠ CAUTION - Wiper blades

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

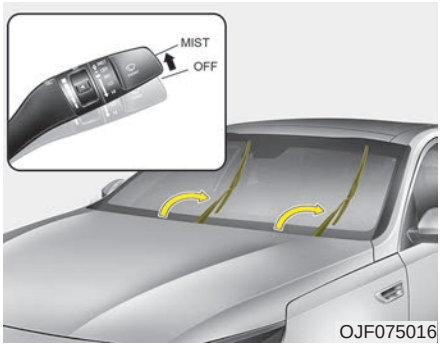
Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

Front windshield wiper blade

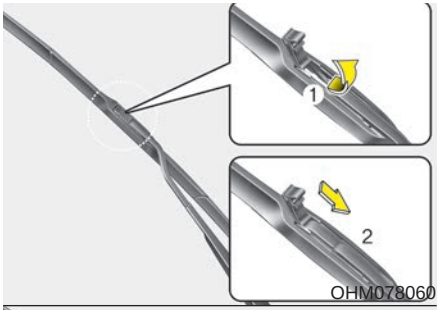


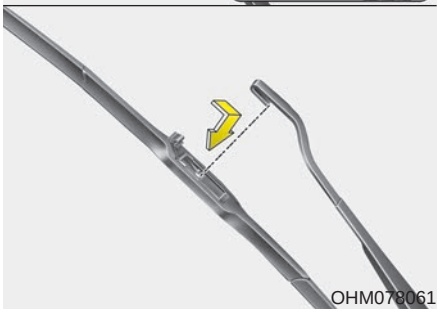
To inspect or replace the windshield wiper blades and to prevent damaging the hood, move the windshield wiper blades to the service position as follows;

After turning off the engine, move the wiper switch to the single wiping (MIST) position within 20 seconds and hold the switch more than 2 seconds until the wiper blade is in the fully up position.

⚠ CAUTION - Wiper arms

- ***Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield, since it may chip or crack the windshield.***
- ***Do not pull wiper arm forward, since arm could chip hood paint.***

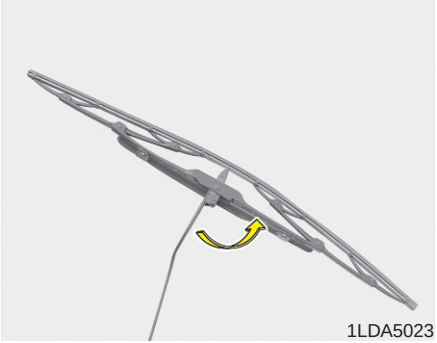




Type A

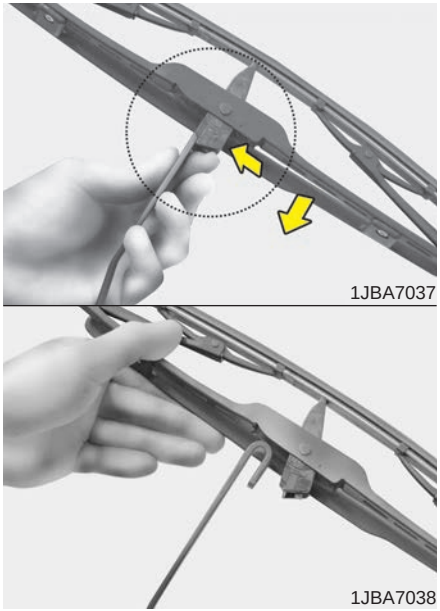
1. Raise the wiper arm.
2. Lift up the wiper blade clip. Then pull down the blade assembly and remove it.
3. Install the new blade assembly.

4. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.
5. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.



Type B

1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.

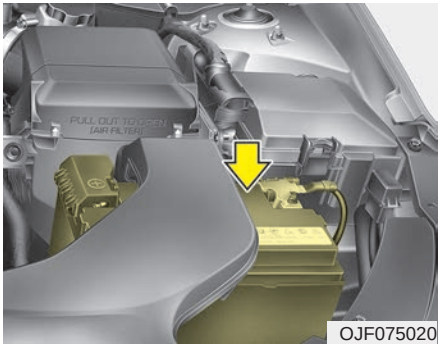


2. Compress the clip and slide the blade assembly downward.
3. Lift it off the arm.
4. Install the new blade assembly.

5. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.
6. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.

BATTERY

For best battery service



OJF075020

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

WARNING - Risk of explosion

Keep lit cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.

The battery contains hydrogen -- a highly combustible gas which will explode if it comes in contact with a flame or spark.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID and electrolytes. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.

Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.

Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.

If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel pain or burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. Please return the battery to an authorized Kia dealer to be recycled.

Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.

⚠ WARNING - Risk of electrocution

Never touch the electrical ignition system while the vehicle is running. This system works with high voltage which can shock you.

⚠ WARNING - Recharging Battery

Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.

✻ NOTICE

If you connect unauthorized electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorized devices.

Recharging the battery

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlamps or interior lamps were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.
- Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).
- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
- Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.

1. Turn off the battery charger main switch.
2. Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
3. Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.
- The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.

Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See chapter 4)
- Sunroof (See chapter 4)
- Trip computer (See chapter 4)
- Climate control system (See chapter 4)
- Driver position memory system (See chapter 3)
- Audio (See chapter 5)

TIRES AND WHEELS

Tire care

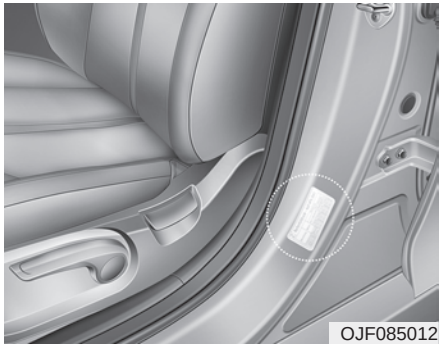
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

Recommended cold tire inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. “Cold Tires” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

For recommended inflation pressure refer to “Tire and wheels” in chapter 9.


OJF085012

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver’s side center pillar.

⚠ WARNING - Tire underinflation

Inflate your tires consistent with the instructions provided in this manual. Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

- Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, have it checked by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.
- Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be underinflated.
- Be sure to reinstall the tire inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

Tire pressure

Always observe the following:

- Check tire pressure when the tires are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (1 mile) since startup.)
- Check the pressure of your spare tire each time you check the pressure of other tires.
- Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.

⚠ WARNING - Tire Inflation

Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.

Checking tire inflation pressure

Check your tires once a month or more.

Also, check the tire pressure of the spare tire.

How to check

Use a good quality gauge to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

- Inspect your tires frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tire pressure gauge.
- Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar.
- Remember to check the pressure of your spare tire. Kia recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.

Tire rotation

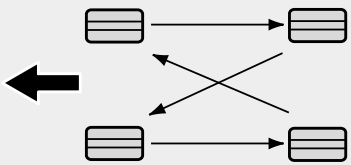
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tires be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

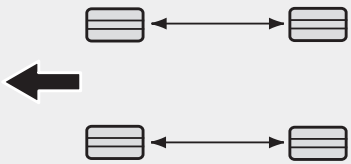
Refer to “Tire and wheels” in chapter 9.

Without a spare tire



S2BLA790A

Directional tires (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.

Rotate radial tires that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

⚠ WARNING - Mixing tires

- **Do not use the compact spare tire (if equipped) for tire rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics.**

Wheel alignment and tire balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

⚠ CAUTION - Wheel weight

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

Tire replacement

If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear Indicator (A) will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. The tire size affects wheel speed. When replacing tires, all 4 tires must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tires, use the same which were originally supplied with the vehicle. If not, driving performance could be altered.

Compact spare tire replacement

A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tire clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

⚠ CAUTION - Wheel

Wheels that do not meet Kia's specifications may fit poorly and result in damage to the vehicle or unusual handling and poor vehicle control.

Tire traction

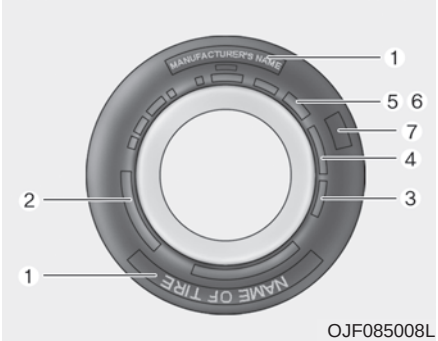
Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. Slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road, to reduce the possibility of losing control of the vehicle.

Tire maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Tire sidewall labeling



OJF085008L

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.

1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

2. Tire size designation

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

P205/55R16 89H

P - Applicable vehicle type (tires marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tires have this marking).

205 - Tire width in millimeters.

55 - Aspect ratio. The tire's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

16 - Rim diameter in inches.

89 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

6.0JX16

6.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

16 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tire speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicles. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
Z	Above 240 km/h (149 mph)

3. Checking tire life (TIN : Tire Identification Number)

Any tires that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1616 represents that the tire was produced in the 16th week of 2016.

⚠ WARNING - Tire age

Replace tires within the recommended time frame. Failure to replace tires as recommended can result in sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident.

4. Tire ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

6. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

7. Uniform tire quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 440

TRACTION A

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, we recommend that tires be replaced after approximately six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tires ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature -A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Tire terminology and definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on the tire. Air pressure is expressed in kilopascal (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi).

Accessory Weight: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transaxle, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in kilopascals (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi) before a tire has built up heat from driving.

Curb Weight: This means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Front Axle.

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Rear axle.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light truck(LT) tire: A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Load ratings: The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight; accessory weight; vehicle capacity weight; and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 pounds).

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of a asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The outward facing sidewall bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the inner facing sidewall.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Ply: A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords

Pneumatic tire: A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load.

Production options weight: The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 2.3 kg (5 lb.) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure and shown on the tire placard.

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called "wear bars," that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch of tread remains.

UTQGS: Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards, a tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs.) plus the rated cargo and luggage load.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb and accessory weight plus maximum occupant and cargo weight.

Vehicle Normal Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight and driving by 2.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure.

All season tires

Kia specifies all season tires on some models to provide good performance for use all year round, including snowy and icy road conditions. All season tires are identified by ALL SEASON and/or M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tire sidewall. Snow tires have better snow traction than all season tires and may be more appropriate in some areas.

Summer tires

Kia specifies summer tires on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tire performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tires do not have the tire traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tire side wall. If you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, Kia recommends the use of snow tires or all season tires on all four wheels.

Snow tires

If you equip your car with snow tires, they should be the same size and have the same load capacity as the original tires. Snow tires should be installed on all four wheels; otherwise, poor handling may result.

Snow tires should carry 28 kPa (4 psi) more air pressure than the pressure recommended for the standard tires on the tire label on the driver's side of the center pillar, or up to the maximum pressure shown on the tire sidewall, whichever is less.

Do not drive faster than 120 km/h (75 mph) when your vehicle is equipped with snow tires.

Radial-ply tires

Radial-ply tires provide improved tread life, road hazard resistance and smoother high speed ride. The radial-ply tires used on this vehicle are of belted construction and are selected to complement the ride and handling characteristics of your vehicle.

Radial-ply tires have the same load carrying capacity as bias-ply or bias belted tires of the same size and use the same recommended inflation pressure. Mixing of radial-ply tires with bias-ply or bias belted tires is not recommended. Any combinations of radial-ply and bias-ply or bias belted tires when used on the same vehicle will seriously deteriorate vehicle handling. The best rule to follow is: identical radial-ply tires should always be used as a set of four.

Longer wearing tires can be more susceptible to irregular tread wear. It is very important to follow the tire rotation interval shown in this section to achieve the tread life potential of these tires. Cuts and punctures in radial-ply tires are repairable only in the tread area, because of sidewall flexing. Consult your tire dealer for radial-ply tire repairs.

Low aspect ratio tire (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tires, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tires.

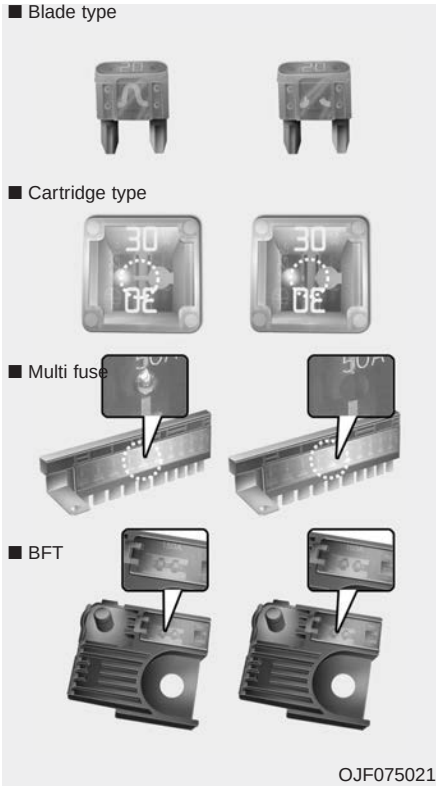
⚠ CAUTION

Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tire is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tire of the low aspect ratio tire is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.

- ***When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tires and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tires and wheels.***
- ***When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive slowly so that the tires and wheels are not damaged.***
- ***If the tire is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tire condition or contact an authorized Kia dealer.***
- ***To prevent damage to the tire, inspect the tire condition and pressure every 3,000 km (1,900 miles).***

- It is not easy to recognize the tire damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tire damage, even though you cannot see it, have the tire checked or replaced because the tire damage may cause air leakage from the tire.
- If the tire is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or curb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.
- You can find out the tire information on the tire sidewall.

FUSES



❊ Left side : Normal , Right side : Blown

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 (or 3) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will melt.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult an authorized Kia dealer.

Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and multi fuse for higher amperage ratings.

⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**

- Do not arbitrarily modify or add-on electric wiring to the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

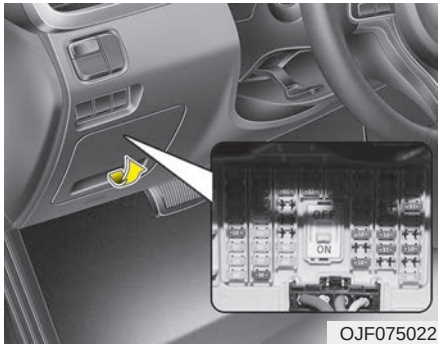
✻ NOTICE

- When replacing fuse, turn the ignition "OFF" and turn off switches of all electrical devices then remove battery (-) terminal.
- The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.

⚠ WARNING - Electrical Fire

Always ensure replacements fuses and relays are securely fastened when installed. Failure to do so can result in a vehicle fire.

Inner panel fuse replacement



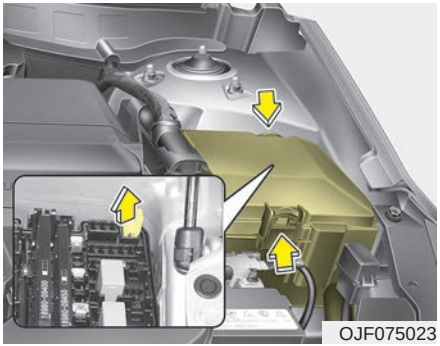
OJF075022

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.

If the switch is located in the "OFF" position, a caution indicator will be displayed in the cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- *When replacing a blown fuse or relay, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. Failure to tightly install the fuse or relay may cause damage to the wiring and electric systems.*
- *Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may not be fastened correctly which may cause vehicle damage.*


OJF075023

3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided on the engine compartment fuse panel cover.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.

   Spare fuses are provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the power outlet fuse.

If the head lamp, turn signal lamp, stop signal lamp, fog lamp, DRL, tail lamp, HMSL do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

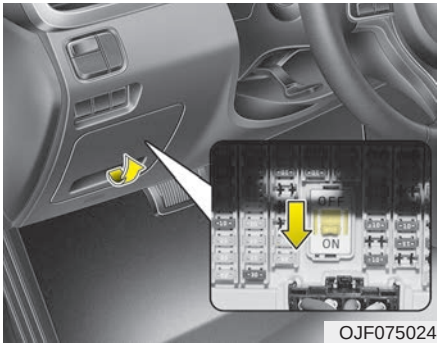
✻ NOTICE

If the headlamp, fog lamp, turn signal lamp, or tail lamp malfunction even without any problem to the lamps, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer for assistance.

⚠ CAUTION - Fuse Panel Covers

- ***Set all switches to ON before driving.***
- ***If the vehicle is going to be unused for over 1 month, set all switches to OFF to prevent the batteries from draining.***
- ***The contact points of the switches may wear out with excessive use. Please refrain from excessive use of the switches (except for long-term parking for over 1 month).***

Fuse switch



OJF075024

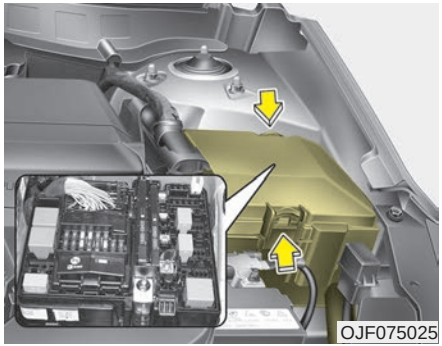
Always set the fuse switch to the ON position before using the vehicle.

If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as audio and digital clock must be reset and transmitter (or smart key) may not work properly. When the switch is Off, the caution indicator will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Always place the fuse switch in the ON position while driving the vehicle.

If the switch is located in the “OFF” position, a caution indicator will be displayed in the cluster.

Engine compartment fuse replacement


OJF075025

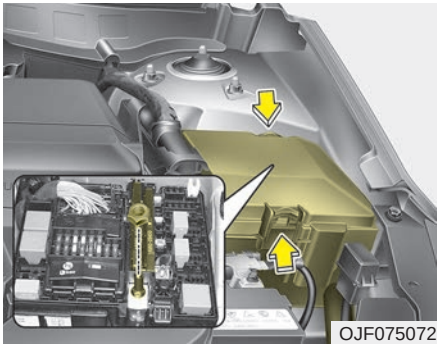
1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling the cover up. When the blade type fuse is disconnected, remove it by using the clip designed for changing fuses located in the engine compartment fuse box. Upon removal, securely insert reserve fuse of the same rating.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover through the audible clicking sound.

If not, electrical failures may occur from water contact.

Multi fuse


OJF075072

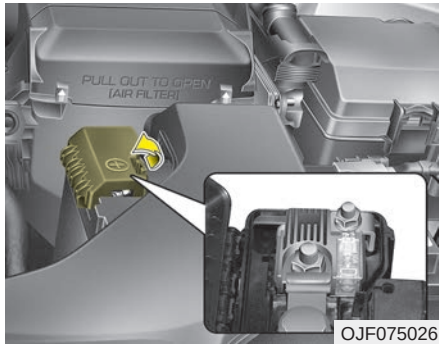
If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reverse these steps to reinstall the multi fuse.

✻ NOTICE

Do not disassemble nor assemble the multi fuse when it is secured with nuts and bolts. Incorrect or partial assembly torque may cause a fire. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Main fuse



OJF075026

If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reverse these steps to reinstall the main fuse.

✻ NOTICE

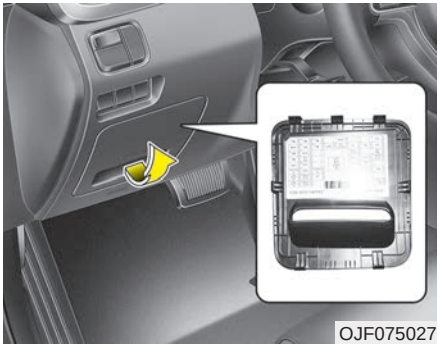
The electronic system may not function correctly even when the engine compartment and internal fuse box's individual fuses are not disconnected. In such case the cause of the problem may be disconnection of the main fuse (BFT type), which is located inside the positive battery terminal (+) cap.
Since the main fuse is designed more intricately than other parts, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

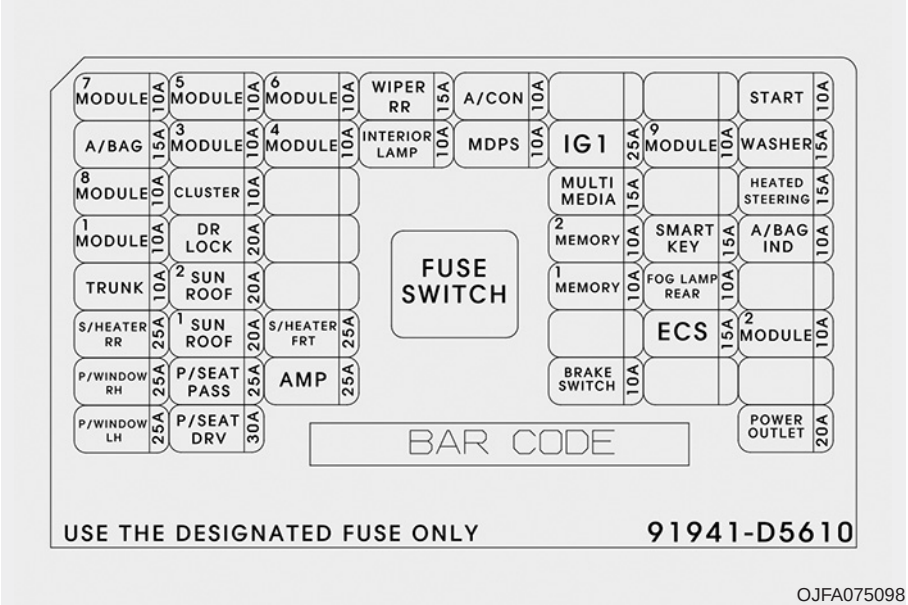
Visually inspect the battery cap to ensure it is securely closed. If the battery cap is not securely closed, moisture may enter the system and damage the electrical components.

Fuse/relay panel description

Driver's side fuse panel


OJF075027

Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.



OJFA075098

✻ NOTICE

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

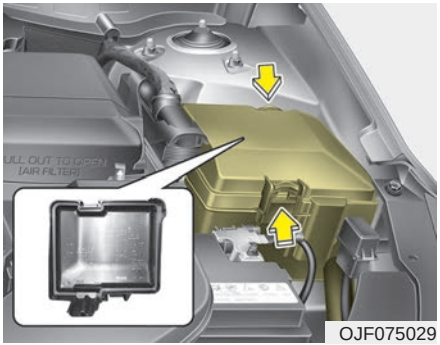
Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MODULE 7	10A	Around View Unit, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
MODULE 5	10A	A/C Control Module, Electro Chromic Mirror, Crash Pad Switch, Head Lamp LH/RH, Auto Head Lamp Leveling Device Module, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Fuel Lid & Trunk Open Switch, Shift Lever Indicator, Driver IMS Module, Driver IMS Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
MODULE 6	10A	BCM, Smart Key Control Module
A/CON	10A	A/C Control Module, E/R Junction Block (Blower Relay)
START	10A	[W/O Smart Key & IMMO.] ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Relay) [With Smart Key / IMMO.] Transaxle Range Switch, PCM (G4KH/G4KJ)
A/BAG	15A	SRS Control Module, Passenger Occupant Detection
MODULE 3	10A	BCM, ATM Shift Lever, Stop Lamp Switch, DBL Unit, Keyboard, A/C Control Module
MODULE 4	10A	Console Switch, Blind Spot Detection Radar LH/RH, Smart Cruise Control Unit, AEB Module, Lane Keeping Assist Module
INTERIOR LAMP	10A	Trunk Room Lamp, Ignition Key Ill. & Door Warning Switch, Glove Box Lamp, Driver/Passenger Smart Key Outside Handle, Front Vanity Lamp Switch LH/RH, Overhead Console Lamp, Center Room Lamp, Center Personal Lamp, Rear Personal Lamp LH/RH, Driver/Passenger Scuff Lamp
MDPS	10A	MDPS Unit (Column/Rack), Steering Angle Sensor
IG1	25A	PCB Block (Fuse - TCU 2, ABS 3, ECU 3, VACUUM PUMP 2)
MODULE 9	10A	Immobilizer Module, Smart Key Control Module

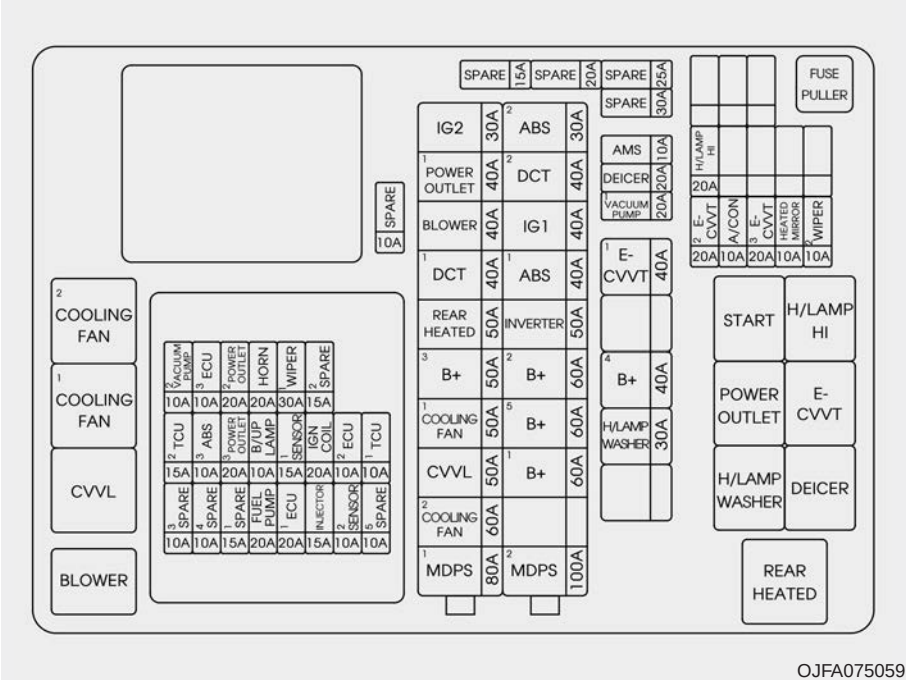
Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
WASHER	15A	Multifunction Switch (Wiper Low & Washer Switch)
MODULE 8	10A	A/C Control Module, Driver/Passenger Door Module
CLUSTER	10A	Instrument Cluster (IG1)
MULTI MEDIA	15A	Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Keyboard
HEATED STEERING	15A	BCM (Steering Wheel Heated)
MODULE 1	10A	Console Switch, Key Solenoid, Driver/Passenger Door Module
DR LOCK	20A	Door Lock Relay, Door Unlock Relay
SMART KEY	15A	Smart Key Control Module
A/BAG IND	10A	Instrument Cluster (Air Bag IND. Power)
TRUNK	10A	Trunk Lid Relay, Fuel Filler & Trunk Open Switch, Trunk Lid Motor, ICM Relay Box (Fuel Filler Open Relay)
SUNROOF 2	20A	Sunroof Control Unit (Roller)
MEMORY 1	10A	Instrument Cluster, A/C Control Module, Data Link Connector, BCM, Wireless Charger, Driver IMS Module, Rain Sensor, ICM Relay Box (Outside Mirror Folding/Unfolding Mirror Relay), Security Indicator, Auto Light & Photo Sensor, Driver/Passenger Door Module, Electro Chromic Mirror
S/HEATER RR	25A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
SUNROOF 1	20A	Sunroof Control Unit (Glass)

Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
S/HEATER FRT	25A	Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module
MODULE 2	10A	Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Keyboard, Around View Unit, AMP, Power Outside Mirror Switch, Smart Key Control Module, BCM, Wireless Charger, Rear USB Charger #1/#2, E/R Junction Block (Power Outlet Relay)
P/WINDOW RH	25A	Power Window RH Relay, Rear Power Window Switch RH, Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Safety Power Window Module
P/SEAT PASS	25A	Passenger Seat Manual Switch, Walk In Relay Module, Passenger Reclining Limit Switch
AMP	25A	AMP (JBL)
BRAKE SWITCH	10A	Stop Lamp Switch, Immobilizer Module, Smart Key Control Module, Start/Stop Button Switch
P/WINDOW LH	25A	Power Window LH Relay, Rear Power Window Switch LH, Power Window Main Switch, Driver Safety Power Window Module
P/SEAT DRV	30A	Driver Seat Manual Switch, Driver IMS Module
POWER OUTLET	20A	Front Power Outlet #1, Front Cigarette Lighter & Power Outlet #2

Engine compartment fuse panel



OJF075029



OJFA075059

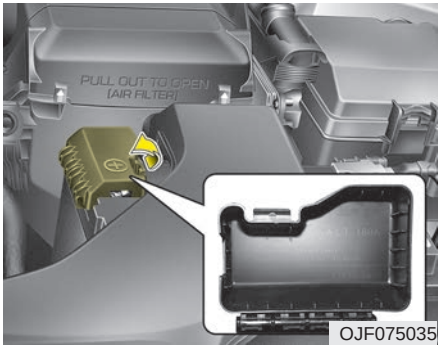
Engine room compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name		Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MULTI FUSE	MDPS 1	80A	MDPS Unit (Column)
	COOLING FAN 2	60A	[G4KH/G4FJ] Cooling Fan1 Relay, Cooling Fan2 Relay
	COOLING FAN 1	50A	[G4KJ] Cooling Fan1 Relay
	B+ 3	50A	Smart Junction Block (IPS 2 (IPS 5), IPS 3 (IPS 6), IPS 7, IPS 8)
	REAR HEATED	50A	Rear Heated Relay
	DCT1	40A	[G4FJ-DCT] TCM
	BLOWER	40A	Blower Relay
	POWER OUTLET 1	40A	Power Outlet Relay
	IG2	30A	[W/O Smart Key] Start Relay, Ignition Switch, [With Smart Key] Start Relay, PCB Block (IG2 Relay)
	MDPS 2	100A	MDPS Unit (Rack)
	B+1	60A	Smart Junction Block (Fuse - SUNROOF1, SUNROOF2, S/HEATER RR, P/SEAT DRV, P/SEAT PASS, P/WINDOW LH, P/WINDOW RH, TRUNK)
	B+5	60A	PCB Block (Engine Control Relay, Fuse - TCU1, ECU2, FUEL PUMP, HORN, WIPER1)
	B+2	60A	Smart Junction Block (IPS 1, IPS 4, Fuse - AMP, S/HEATER FRT)
	ABS 1	40A	ESC Module
	IG1	40A	[W/O Smart Key] Ignition Switch, [With Smart Key] PCB Block (IG1/ACC Relay)
	DCT 2	40A	[G4FJ-DCT] TCM
	ABS 2	30A	ESC Module, Multipurpose Check Connector

Fuse Name		Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	B+4	40A	Smart Junction Block (Leak Current Autocut Device Fuse - INTERIOR LAMP, MEMORY1, MULTI MEDIA, Fuse - DOOR LOCK, MODULE1, SMART KEY, BRAKE SWITCH)
	E-CVVT 1	40A	E-CVVT Relay
	VACUUM PUMP 1	20A	Vacuum Pump
	DEICER	20A	Deicer Relay
	AMS	10A	Battery Sensor
	E-CVVT 2	20A	PCM
	A/CON	10A	A/C Control Module
	E-CVVT 3	20A	PCM
	HEATED MIRROR	10A	A/C Control Module, Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror, ECM
	WIPER 2	10A	BCM, PCM/ECM
	H/LAMP HI	20A	Head Lamp HI Relay

Fuse Name		Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	FUEL PUMP	20A	Fuel Pump Relay
	ECU 1	20A	PCM/ECM
	SENSORS 2	10A	E/R Junction Block (Fuel Pump Relay, Cooling Fan 1/2 Relay) [G4KJ] Oil Control Valve (Exhaust), Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Canister Close Valve [G4KH] Oil Control Valve (Exhaust), Purge Control Solenoid Valve, RCV Control Solenoid Valve, Canister Close Valve [G4FJ] Oil Control Valve #1/#2, Purge Control Solenoid Valve, RCV Control Solenoid Valve, Canister Close Valve
	TCU 2	15A	Transaxle Range Switch, TCM
	ABS 3	10A	ESC Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
	POWER OUTLET 3	20A	Rear Power Outlet
	B/UP LAMP	10A	PCM/TCM, Transaxle Range Switch, Audio, Electro Chromic Mirror, Rear Combination Lamp (IN) LH/RH
	SENSOR 1	15A	Oxygen Sensor (Up/Down)
	IGN COIL	20A	Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4
	ECU 2	10A	PCM/ECM
	TCU 1	10A	PCM/TCM
	VACUUM PUMP 2	10A	Vacuum Pump, Vacuum Switch
	ECU 3	10A	PCM/ECM
	POWER OUTLET 2	20A	Front Power Outlet #1
	HORN	20A	Horn Relay, ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay)
	WIPER 1	30A	Wiper Power Relay

Engine compartment fuse panel (Battery terminal cover)



OJF075035

✻ NOTICE

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

OJF075036

LIGHT BULBS

Bulb replacement precaution

Please keep extra bulbs on hand with appropriate wattage ratings in case of emergencies.

Refer to “Bulb Wattage” in chapter 9.

When changing lamps, first turn off the engine at a safe place, firmly apply the parking brake and detach the battery’s negative (-) terminal.

⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

Use only bulbs of the specified wattage.

⚠ CAUTION - Light replacement

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.

⚠ CAUTION - Headlamp Lens

To prevent damage, do not clean the headlamp lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the light bulb or lamp connector is removed while the lamp is still on, the fuse box's electronic system may log it as a malfunction. Therefore, a lamp malfunction incident may be recorded as a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in the fuse box.**
- **It is normal for an operating lamp to flicker momentarily. This is due to a stabilization function of the vehicle's electronic control device. If the lamp lights up normally after momentarily blinking, then it is functioning as normal. However, if the lamp continues to flicker several times or turns off completely, there may be an error in the vehicle's electronic control device. Please have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer immediately.**

If you don't have the necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, consult an authorized Kia dealer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlamp assembly to get to the bulb(s).

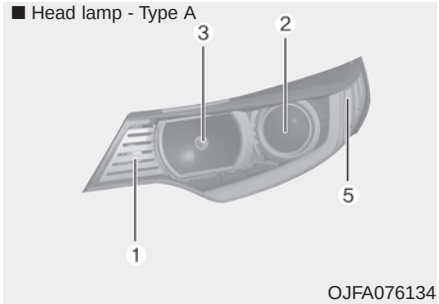
Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

If non- genuine parts or substandard bulbs are used, it may lead to blowing a fuse or other wiring damages.

Do not install extra lamps or LEDs to the vehicle. If additional lights are installed, it may lead to lamp malfunctions and flickering. Additionally, the fuse box and other writing may be damaged.

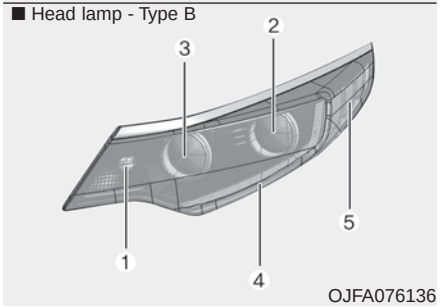
Light bulb position (Front)

■ Head lamp - Type A



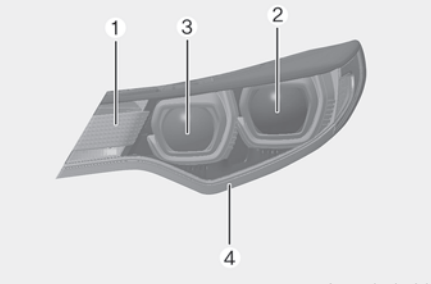
OJFA076134

■ Head lamp - Type B



OJFA076136

■ Head lamp - Type C

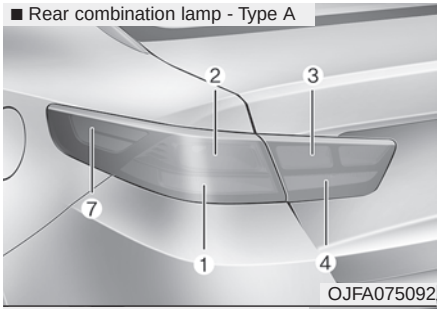


OJFA076190

(1) Front turn signal lamp
(and position lamp for Type A)
(2) Headlamp (Low)
(3) Headlamp (High)
(and DRL for Type A)
(4) Day time running lamp
/Position lamp (LED type)
(5) Side marker

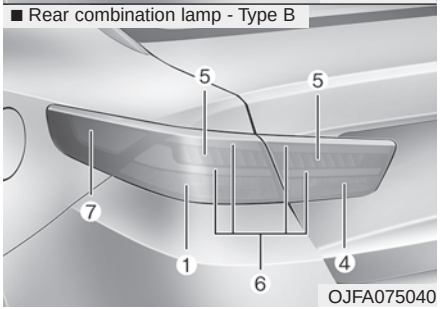
Light bulb position (Rear)

■ Rear combination lamp - Type A



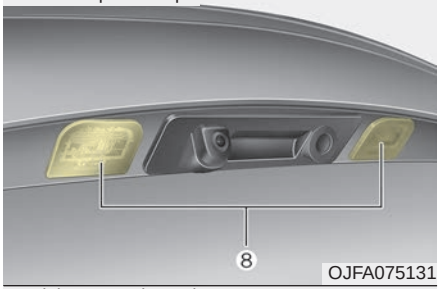
OJFA075092

■ Rear combination lamp - Type B



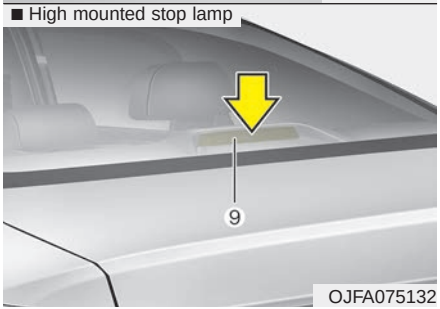
OJFA075040

■ License plate lamp



OJFA075131

■ High mounted stop lamp



OJFA075132

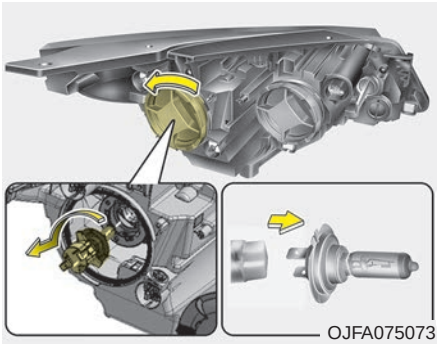
(1) Rear turn signal lamp
(2) Stop and tail lamp
(3) Position lamp
(4) Back-up lamp
(5) Stop lamp (LED type)
(6) Tail lamp (LED type)
(7) Side marker
(8) License plate lamp
(9) High mounted stop lamp

Light bulb position (Side)

OJF075039L

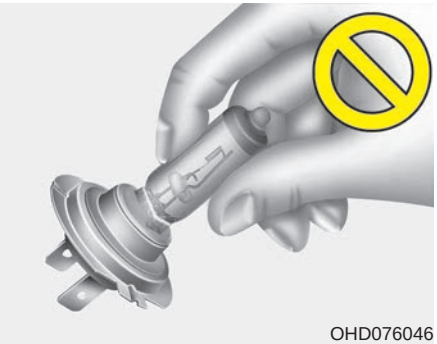
(1) Side repeater lamp (LED type)

Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement



1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the bulb-socket in the head-lamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

Headlamp bulb



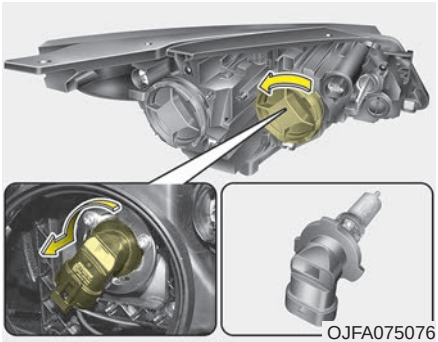
⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs

Handle halogen bulbs with care.

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**

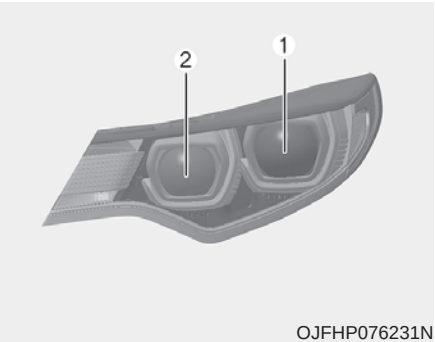
- Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlamp.
- If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.
- Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.

Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement


OJFA075076

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the headlamp bulb socket-connector.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
5. Install a new bulb-socket assembly in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
6. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

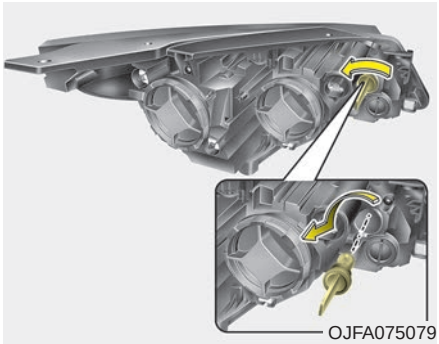
Headlamp (Low/High beam,LED type) bulb replacement



OJFHP076231N

If the head lamp (LED) (1,2) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement

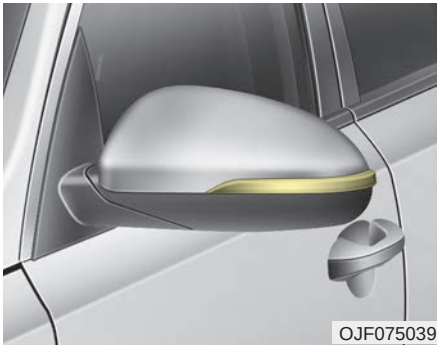


1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the bulb-socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the bulb-socket. Pull the bulb out of the bulb-socket
4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

Position lamp + DRL (LED type) bulb replacement

If the position lamp + DRL (1) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Side repeater lamp bulb replacement

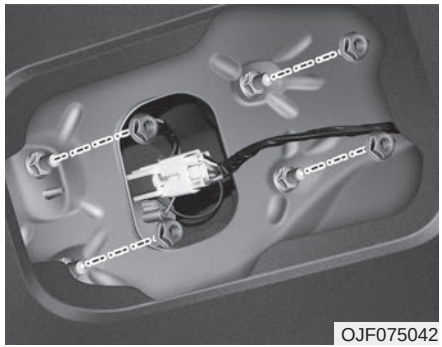

OJF075039

If the Side repeater lamp does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

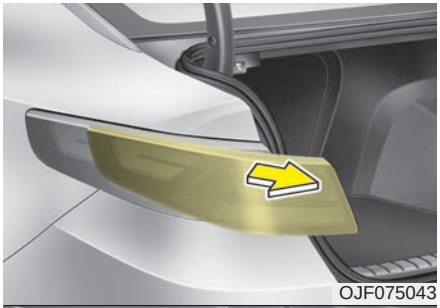
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement

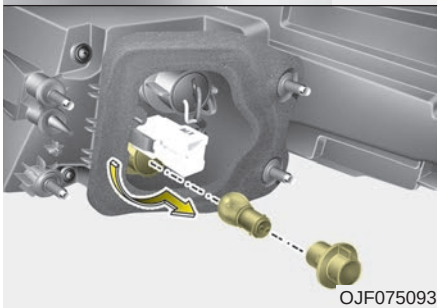
OJF075041

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Open the service cover.


OJF075042

3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.


OJF075043

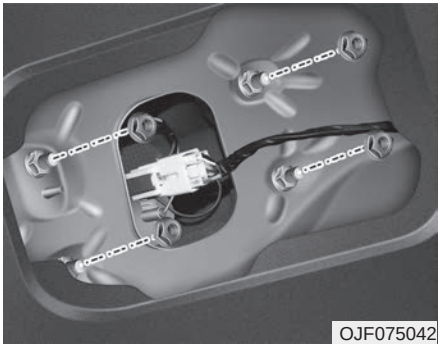

OJF075093

5. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

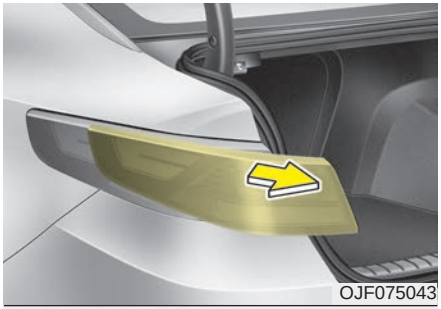
Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement

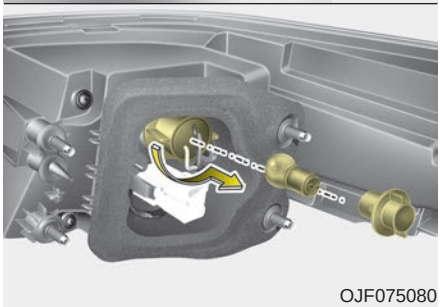
OJF075041

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Open the service cover.


OJF075042

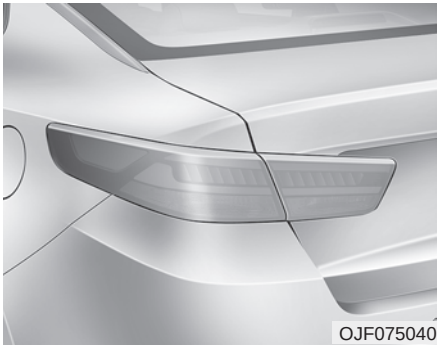
3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.


OJF075043


OJF075080

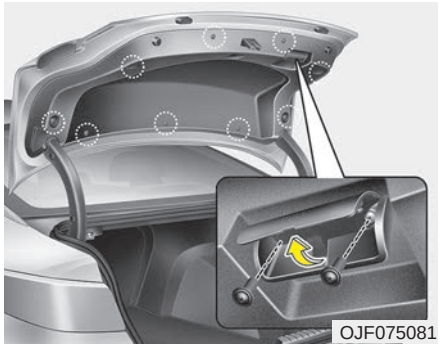
5. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement

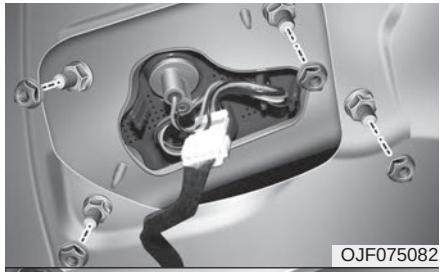


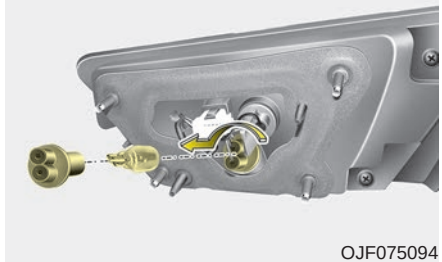
If the stop and tail lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Back-up lamp bulb replacement



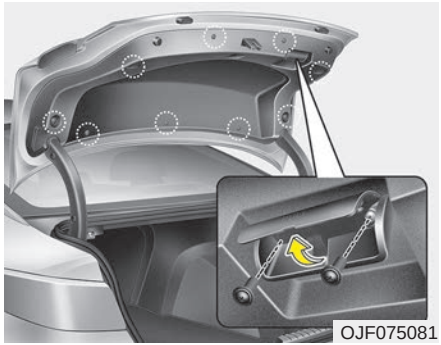
1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.





3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp (inside) connector.
5. Remove the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the trunk lid cover.

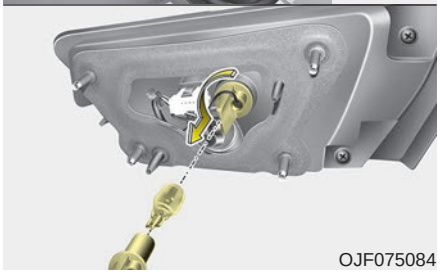
Tail lamp bulb replacement


OJF075081

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.

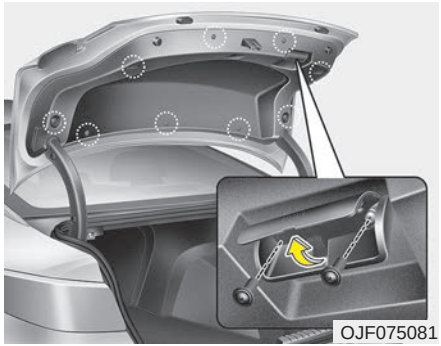
OJF075082

OJF075083

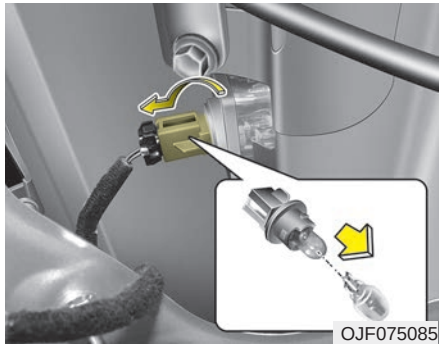

OJF075084

3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp (inside) connector.
5. Remove the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the trunk lid cover.

License plate lamp bulb replacement

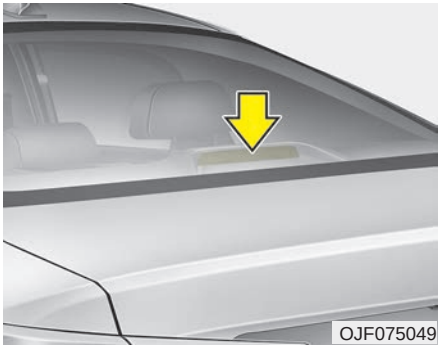


1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.



3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the trunk lid cover.

High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement

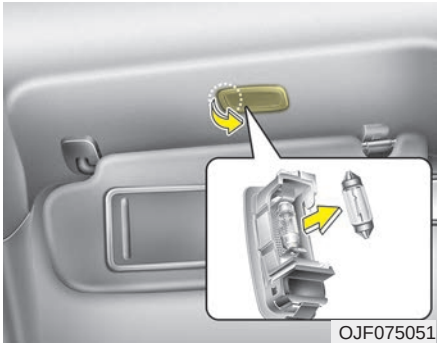


If the high mounted stop lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Map lamp bulb replacement

If the map lamp (bulb and LED type) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement



⚠ WARNING - Interior lamps

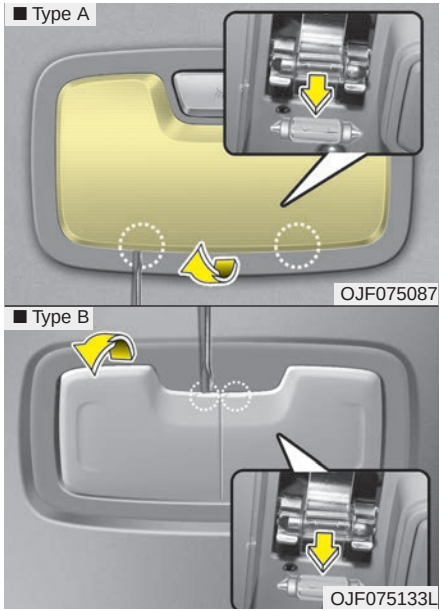
Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

✻ NOTICE

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Room lamp bulb replacement



⚠ WARNING - Interior lamps

Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

✻ NOTICE

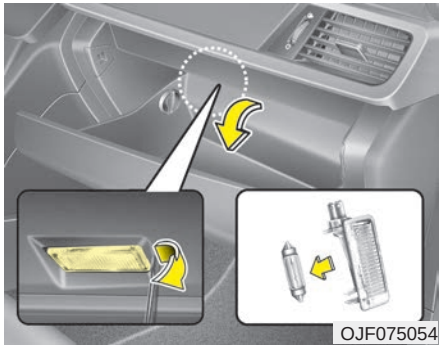
Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Personal lamp bulb replacement

OJF075088

If the personal lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Glove box lamp bulb replacement

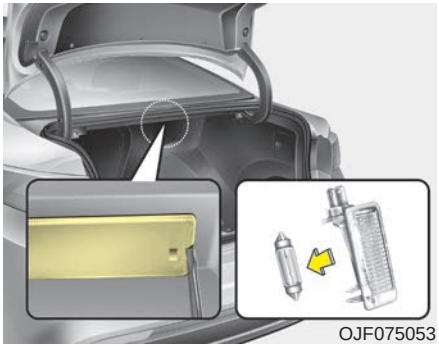

OJF075054

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

✻ NOTICE

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Trunk lamp bulb replacement


OJF075053

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

✻ NOTICE

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

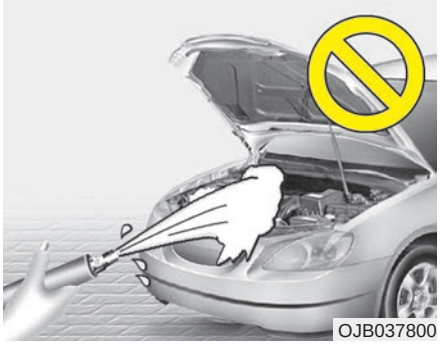
After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.


OJB037800

⚠ CAUTION - Wet engine

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

⚠ WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

Do not apply wax on embossed unpainted unit, as it may tarnish the unit.

⚠ **CAUTION - Drying vehicle**

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, acid detergents or strong detergents containing high alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Road salt and other corrosive chemicals are used in cold weather country to melt snow and prevent ice accumulation. If these chemicals are not regularly removed, they will corrode the vehicle underbody and over time damage fuel lines, the fuel tank retention system, the vehicle suspension, the exhaust system, and even the body frame.

- Wash the undercarriage of your vehicle regularly during the winter and whenever your vehicle has been exposed to such salts or chemicals.

- Do a thorough washing of the undercarriage at the end of the winter.
- Use professional service technicians or governmental inspection stations to annually inspect for corrosion.
- Immediately seek an inspection of your vehicle if you become visually aware of corrosion flaking or scaling or if you become aware of a change in vehicle performance, such as soft or spongey brakes, fluids leaking, impairment of directional control, suspension noises or rattling metal straps.

Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with highspeed vehicle wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergents It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle's surface by moisture that evaporates slowly.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it dries slowly and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from beginning by observing the following:

Keep your vehicle clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Don't neglect the interior

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting and cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the vehicle.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. If necessary, use a vinyl cleaner, see product instructions for correct usage.

⚠ **CAUTION - Electrical components**

Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

⚠ **CAUTION - Leather**

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

⚠ **CAUTION - Nappa leather seat cover (If equipped)**

Nappa leather retains the hide's own soft texture with visible pores, scars or blood vessels, etc. Pressure marks or wrinkles may be made when used. Prolonged exposure to sunlight or heat may cause discoloration. These things occur due to the natural characteristics of cowhides. If the leather is exposed to rain or gets wet, remove water with a dry cloth and dry the leather in the shade to minimize damage. Make sure to keep sharp objects away from the leather as these can create scratches on the surface. For light-colored leather, be careful of spots or color transfer, such as from jeans.

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

⚠ CAUTION - Rear window

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage of the rear window defroster grid.

Leather seat cover using precautions (If equipped)

Natural leather has visible pores, scars or blood vessels, etc. Pressure marks or wrinkles may be made when used. Prolonged exposure to sunlight or heat may cause discoloration. These things occur due to the natural characteristics of cowhides. If the leather is exposed to rain or gets wet, remove water with a dry cloth and dry the leather in the shade to minimize damage. Make sure to keep sharp objects away from the leather as these can create scratches on the surface. For light-colored leather, be careful of spots or color transfer, such as from jeans.

Fabric seat cover using precautions (if equipped)

Please clean the fabric seats regularly with a vacuum cleaner in consideration of fabric material characteristics. If they are heavily soiled with beverage stains, etc., use a suitable interior cleaner. To prevent damage to seat covers, wipe off the seat covers down to the seams with a large wiping motion and moderate pressure using a soft sponge or microfiber cloth.

Velcro closures on clothing or sharp objects may cause snagging or scratches on the surface of the seats. Make sure not to rub such objects against the surface.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Consumer Information manual in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems, as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your vehicle inspected and maintained by an authorized Kia dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

2. Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

(The ORVR system is designed to allow the vapors from the fuel tank to be loaded into a canister while refueling at the gas station, preventing the escape of fuel vapors into the atmosphere.)

Canister

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performance.

Vehicle modifications

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorized electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorized electronic devices.

Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING - Catalytic converter

Keep away from the catalytic converter and exhaust system while the vehicle is running or immediately thereafter. The exhaust and catalytic systems are very hot and may burn you.

⚠ WARNING - Fire

- **Do not park, idle or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc. A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle.**
- **Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.**

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for gasoline engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions 9-2
Engine 9-2
Bulb wattage 9-3
Tires and wheels 9-5
Gross vehicle weight. 9-6
Luggage volume 9-6
Air conditioning system 9-6
Recommended lubricants and capacities. 9-7
• Recommended SAE viscosity number. 9-9
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 9-10
Vehicle certification label. 9-10
Tire specification and pressure label 9-11
Engine number 9-11

DIMENSIONS

ITEM			mm (in)
Overall length			4,855 (191.1)
Overall width			1,860 (73.2)
Overall height			1,465 (57.6)
Tread	Front	205/65 R16	1,614 (63.5)
		215/55 R17	1,602 (63.1)
		235/45 R18	1,597 (62.9)
	Rear	205/65 R16	1,621 (63.8)
		215/55 R17	1,609 (63.3)
		235/45 R18	1,604 (63.1)
Wheelbase			2,805 (110.4)

ENGINE

Items	1.6 T-GDI	2.0 T-GDI	2.4 GDI
Displacement cc (cu. in)	1,591 (97.09)	1,998 (121.92)	2,359 (143.96)
Bore x Stroke mm (in.)	77x85.4 (3.03x3.36)	86x86 (3.39x3.39)	88x97 (3.46x3.82)
Firing order	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
No. of cylinders	4, In-line	4, In-line	4, In-line

BULB WATTAGE

Light Bulb			Wattage (W)	Bulb type
Front	Headlamps (Low)		55W	HB3 (9005+)
	Headlamps (Low) - LED type		28W	LED
	Headlamps (High)	Type A	65W	HB3 (9005+)
		Type B	55W	H7 SUPER L/L
		Type C (LED type)	16W	LED
	Front turn signal lamps		28W	2357NALL
	Front position lamps		0.9W	LED
	Daytime running light	LED type	14W	LED
	Side Repeater lamps	Bulb type	5W	W5W LL
		LED type	0.5W	LED
	Side marker		5W	W5W LL
Rear	Rear Stop/Tail lamps (outside)	Bulb type	5W	P21
	Rear tail lamps (Inside)		5W	W5W
	Rear Stop/Tail lamps (outside)	LED type	12W	LED
	Rear tail lamps (Inside)		6W	LED
	Rear turn signal lamps		21W	PY21W
	Back-up lamps		16W	W16W
	High mounted stop lamp		3W	LED
	License plate lamps		5W	W5W
	Side marker	LED type	0.8W	LED
		Bulb type	5W	W5W

(Continue)

(Continue)

Light Bulb			Wattage (W)	Bulb type
Interior	Map lamps	Bulb type	10W	FESTON BULB
		LED type	1W	LED
	Room lamps		10W	FESTON BULB
	Personal lamps		1W	LED
	Vanity mirror lamps		5W	FESTON BULB
	Glove box lamp		5W	FESTON BULB
	Trunk lamp		5W	FESTON BULB

TIRES AND WHEELS

Item	Tire size	Wheel size	Load Capacity		Speed capacity		Inflation pressure kPa (psi)				Wheel lug nut torque [Kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)]
							Normal load *3		Maximum load		
			LI *1	Kg	SS *2	Km/h	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tire	205/65 R16	6.5J × 16	95	690	H	210	235 (34)	235 (34)	235 (34)	235 (34)	11~13 (79~94, 107~127)
	215/55 R17	7.0J × 17	94	670	V	240	235 (34)	235 (34)	235 (34)	235 (34)	
	235/45 R18	7.5J × 18	94	670	V	240	235 (34)	235 (34)	235 (34)	235 (34)	
Compact spare tire (if equipped)	T125/80 D16	4.0T × 16	97	730	M	130	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	
	T135/80 D17	4.0T × 17	103	875	M	130	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	

*1: Load Index *2: Speed Symbol *3: Normal load : Up to 3 persons

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.
Using tires of a different size can damage the related parts or make them work irregularly.

✻ NOTICE

- **It is permissible to add 21 kPa (3 psi) to the standard tire pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon.**
  Tires typically loose 7 kPa (1 psi) for every -11°C (12°F) temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, re-check your tire pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.
- **We recommend that when replacing tires, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that affects driving performance.**
- **When driving in high altitude grades, it is natural for the atmospheric pressure to decrease. Therefore, please check the tire pressure and add more air when necessary.**
  Additionally required tire air pressure per km above sea level: 10 kPa (1.5 psi/km)

GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

Items	1.6 T-GDI	2.0 T-GDI	2.4 GDI
Gross vehicle weight kg (lbs.)	1960 (4321)	2100 (4630)	2040 (4497)

LUGGAGE VOLUME

ITEM	Volume
SAE	450L (15.9 cu ft)

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

Items		Weight of Volume	Classification
Refrigerant g (oz.)	1.6 T-GDI	570 ± 25 (20.1 ± 0.88)	R-1234yf
	2.0 T-GDI		
	2.4 GDI		
Compressor lubricant cc (oz.)		100 ± 10 (3.53 ± 0.35)	PAG (FD46XG)

We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer for more details.

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

Lubricant		Volume	Classification
Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill) Recommends TOTAL	1.6 T-GDI	4.5 l (4.75 US qt.)	ACEA A5 or above
	2.0 T-GDI	4.8 l (5.07 US qt.)	ACEA A5 or above
	2.4 GDI	4.8 l (5.07 US qt.)	API Service SM*3 or above / ILSAC GF-4 or above / ACEA A5 or above
Automatic transmission fluid	2.0 T-GDI	7.8 l (8.24 US qt.)	SK ATF SP-IV, MICHANG ATF SP-IV, NOCA ATF SP-IV, Kia GENUINE ATF SP-IV
	2.4 GDI	7.1 l (7.50 US qt.)	
Dual clutch transmission fluid		1.9~2.0 l (2.01~2.11 US qt.)	- SAE 70W, API GL-4 HK SYN DCTF 70W (SK) SPIRAX S6 GHME 70W DCTF (H.K.SHELL) GS DCTF HD 70W (GS CALTEX)

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 If the API service SM engine oil is not available in your country, you are able to use API service SL.

Lubricant		Volume	Classification
Coolant	1.6 T-GDI	7.1 ℓ (7.50 US qt.)	Mixture of antifreeze and water (Ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant for cooling device)
	2.0 T-GDI	7.5 ℓ (7.92 US qt.)	
	2.4 GDI	7.2 ℓ (7.60 US qt.)	
Brake fluid		0.45 ℓ (0.47 US qt.)	FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4
Fuel		70 ℓ (18.5 US gal.)	Unleaded gasoline

Recommended SAE viscosity number

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged. Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance; however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage. When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers

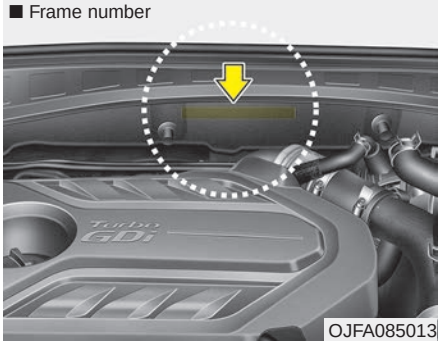
Temperature	°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50
	(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80	100	120	
Gasoline Engine Oil (Theta II 2.0 T-GDI, Gamma 1.6 T-GDI) *1				20W-50						
				15W-40						
			10W-30							
		5W-30, 5W-40								
Gasoline Engine Oil (Theta II 2.4 GDI) *2			10W-30							
		5W-20, 5W-30								

*1 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 (ACEA A5). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

*2 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20 (API SM / ILSAC GF-4 / ACEA A5). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

■ Frame number

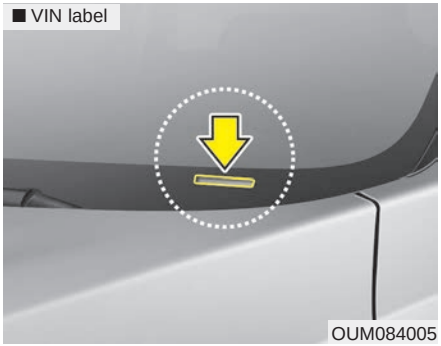


OJFA085013

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the front side wall of the engine room.

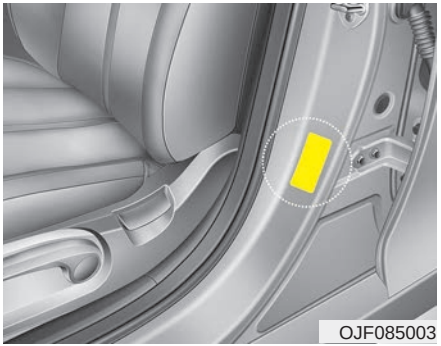
■ VIN label



OUM084005

The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

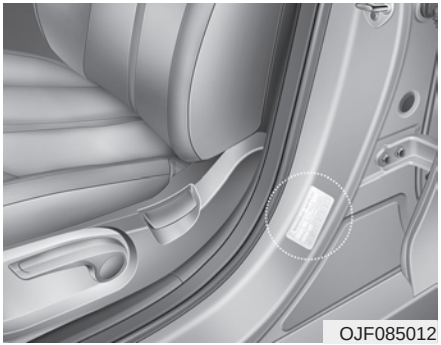
VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



OJF085003

The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

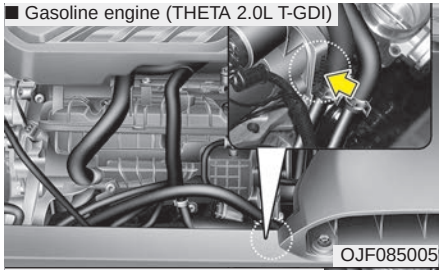


The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

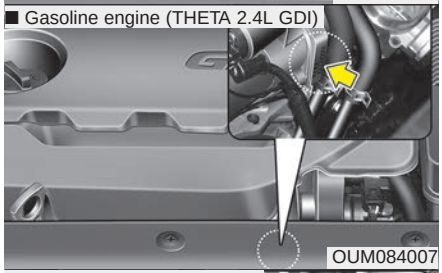
The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

ENGINE NUMBER

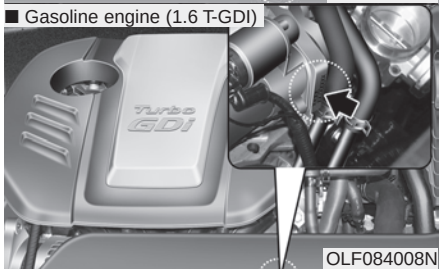
■ Gasoline engine (THETA 2.0L T-GDI)



■ Gasoline engine (THETA 2.4L GDI)



■ Gasoline engine (1.6 T-GDI)



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

Index

A

Advanced smart cruise control system (ASCC).....6-66
Limitations of the system.....6-77
Speed setting (ASCC) 6-67
To adjust the sensitivity of Advanced Smart Cruise Control.....6-76
To convert to cruise control mode: 6-77
Vehicle to vehicle distance setting (ASCC).....6-72
Air bag - advanced supplemental restraint system.....3-43
Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle 3-70
Air bag warning label 3-70
Air bag warning light.....3-46
Curtain air bag 3-63
Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-58
How does the air bag system operate? 3-44
Occupant Detection System (ODS).....3-50
Side air bag 3-61
SRS Care 3-69
SRS components and functions 3-47
Air cleaner 8-35
Filter replacement 8-35
Air conditioning system 9-6
Appearance care 8-93
Exterior care.....8-93
Interior care 8-98
Around view monitoring system (AVM) 4-102
Audio (With Touch Screen) 5-57
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology 5-90
Features of Your Audio 5-58
Media Mode.....5-74
Phone Mode 5-89
Radio Mode 5-69
Setup Mode 5-105
SiriusXM Radio Mode.....5-72
Voice Recognition Mode 5-97
Audio (Without Touch Screen).....5-8
Features of Your Audio 5-9
Media Mode.....5-26
Phone Mode 5-32
Radio Mode 5-22
Setup Mode 5-46
SiriusXM Radio Mode.....5-24
Voice Recognition Mode 5-37
Audio System 5-2
Antenna 5-2
Aux, USB port 5-4
How vehicle audio works 5-5
Steering wheel audio controls 5-3

Automatic climate control system 4-128
Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-129
Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-138
Climate control air filter 4-138
Manual heating and air conditioning.....4-130
System operation 4-136
Automatic transaxle 6-13
Automatic transaxle operation.....6-13
Good driving practices.....6-19
Paddle shifter 6-17
Shift lock system 6-18
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)/ Forward collision warning (FCW) 6-51
AEB warning message and system control 6-54
Brake operation 6-55
Limitations of the system.....6-58
Recognizing pedestrians 6-61
Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front radar) 6-56
System malfunction 6-57
System setting and activation 6-51

B

Battery.....8-43
For best battery service 8-43
Recharging the battery.....8-44
Reset items.....8-45
Before driving.....6-4
Before entering vehicle 6-4
Before starting 6-4
Necessary inspections 6-4
Blind spot detection system (BSD) 6-86
BSD (Blind Spot Detection) / LCA (Lane Change Assist) 6-87
Limitations condition condition.....6-92
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert).....6-90
Brake fluid 8-32
Checking the brake fluid level.....8-32
Brake system.....6-28
Anti-lock brake system (ABS).....6-42
Auto hold 6-38
Electronic parking brake (EPB).....6-31
Electronic stability control (ESC) 6-44
Good braking practices 6-50
Hill-start assist control (HAC).....6-49
Parking brake - Foot type 6-30
Power brakes 6-28
Vehicle stability management (VSM) 6-48
Warning messages 6-40
Bulb wattage 9-3

C

Child restraint system (CRS) 3-32
Children Always in the Rear 3-32
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-36
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-33
Climate control air filter 8-37
Filter inspection 8-37
Cruise Control system 6-62
To cancel cruise control 6-64
To decrease the cruising speed 6-64
To increase cruise control set speed 6-63
To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) 6-65
To set cruise control speed.....6-63
To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on ..6-64
To turn cruise control off 6-65

D

Declaration of Conformity 5-114
IC 5-114
Defroster 4-117
Rear window defroster.....4-117
Dimensions 9-2
Door locks.....4-21
Child-protector rear door lock 4-24
Impact sensing door unlock system.....4-24
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 4-22
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 4-21
Drive mode integrated control system 6-83
DRIVE mode 6-83
Dual clutch transmission (DCT).....6-20
Dual clutch transmission operation 6-20
Good driving practices.....6-27

E

Economical operation 6-98
Emergency starting 7-5
Jump starting 7-5
Push-starting 7-6
Emission control system.....8-100
Crankcase emission control system.....8-100
Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system 8-100
Exhaust emission control system.....8-101
Engine 9-2
Engine compartment 2-6, 8-3

Engine coolant 8-29
Changing the coolant 8-31
Checking the coolant level.....8-29
Engine number 9-11
Engine oil 8-27
Changing the engine oil and filter 8-28
Checking the engine oil level 8-27
ENGINE START/STOP button 6-9
ENGINE START/STOP button position 6-9
Illuminated ENGINE START/STOP button 6-9
Starting the engine with a smart key 6-11
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 8-23
Exterior overview 2-2

F

Folding key 4-5
Battery replacement 4-8
Immobilizer system 4-9
Key operations 4-5
Record your key number 4-5
Transmitter precautions 4-7
Fuel filler lid 4-37
Closing the fuel filler lid 4-37
Emergency fuel filler lid release 4-40
Opening the fuel filler lid 4-37
Fuel requirements 1-2
Do not use methanol 1-4
Fuel Additives 1-5
Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol 1-3
Operation in foreign countries 1-5
Fuses 8-61
Engine compartment fuse replacement 8-64
Fuse/relay panel description 8-66
Inner panel fuse replacement 8-62

G

Gross vehicle weight 9-6

H

Hood 4-35
Closing the hood 4-36
Opening the hood.....4-35
How to use this manual 1-2

I

If the engine overheats 7-7
If the engine will not start 7-4
If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly 7-4
If engine turns over normally but does not start 7-4

If you have a flat tire 7-15
Changing tires 7-17
Jack and tools.....7-15
Removing and storing the spare tire 7-16
If you have a flat tire (With Tire Mobility Kit) 7-24
Checking the tire inflation pressure.....7-29
Components of the Tire Mobility Kit 7-26
Distributing the sealant 7-29
Introduction 7-24
Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit 7-25
Technical Data 7-30
Using the Tire Mobility Kit 7-27
Important safety precautions 3-2
Air bag hazards 3-2
Always wear your seat belt 3-2
Control your speed.....3-3
Driver distraction 3-2
Keep your vehicle in safe condition 3-3
Restrain all children.....3-2
In case of an emergency while driving.....7-3
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing 7-3
If the engine stalls while driving 7-3
If you have a flat tire while driving.....7-3
Instrument cluster 4-56
Dual clutch transmission shift indicator 4-62
Gauges 4-58
Instrument Cluster Control 4-57
LCD Display Control.....4-57
Transaxle Shift Indicator 4-61
Instrument panel overview 2-5
Interior features.....4-147
Air ventilation seat.....4-149
Bottle holder 4-147
Coat hook.....4-155
Cup holder 4-147
Floor mat anchor (s).....4-155
Power outlet 4-150
Seat warmer 4-148
Side curtain 4-156
Sunvisor 4-149
USB charger.....4-151
Wireless smart phone charging system 4-152
Interior lights.....4-113
Automatic turn off function 4-113
Glove box lamp 4-115
Map lamp 4-114
Room lamp.....4-113
Trunk room lamp 4-115
Vanity mirror lamp.....4-115
Interior overview 2-4

K

Key positions 6-6
Ignition switch position 6-6
Illuminated ignition switch 6-6
Starting the engine 6-8

L

Lane departure warning system (LDWS).....6-94
Conditions that cause the LDWS not to operate 6-96
Conditions that cause missed warnings and false warnings 6-97
Warning indicator.....6-96
LCD display 4-63
LCD Modes 4-63
Service Mode 4-64
User Settings Mode 4-66
Light bulbs 8-76
Back-up lamp bulb replacement 8-86
Bulb replacement precaution 8-76
Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement.....8-82
Glove box lamp bulb replacement.....8-91
Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement.....8-81
Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement 8-80
High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement.....8-89
License plate lamp bulb replacement 8-88
Light bulb position (Front) 8-77
Light bulb position (Rear) 8-78
Light bulb position (Side) 8-79
Map lamp bulb replacement 8-89
Personal lamp bulb replacement 8-91
Position lamp + DRL (LED type) bulb replacement..8-82
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement 8-83
Room lamp bulb replacement 8-90
Side repeater lamp bulb replacement.....8-83
Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-86
Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement 8-84
Tail lamp bulb replacement 8-87
Trunk lamp bulb replacement 8-92
Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement 8-89
Lighting.....4-103
AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) 4-109
Battery saver function 4-103
Check headlight 4-108
Daytime running light 4-103
Headlight leveling device 4-109
High Beam Assist 4-106
High beam operation 4-105
Lighting control 4-103
Turn signals and lane change signals 4-108
Luggage volume 9-5

M

Maintenance services 8-5
Owner maintenance precautions 8-6
Owner's responsibility 8-5
Manual climate control system 4-118
Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-126
Climate control air filter 4-126
Heating and air conditioning 4-119
System operation 4-124
Mirrors 4-51
Inside rearview mirror 4-51
Outside rearview mirror 4-53

O

Owner maintenance 8-7
Owner maintenance schedule 8-7

P

Panoramic sunroof 4-41
Closing the sunroof 4-45
Resetting the sunroof 4-46
Sliding the sunroof 4-43
Sunroof open warning 4-42
Sunshade 4-43
Tilting the sunroof 4-45
Parking brake 8-34
Checking the parking brake 8-34

R

Rear parking assist system 4-97
Non-operational conditions of rear parking assist system 4-98
Operation of the rear parking assist system 4-97
Rear parking assist system precautions 4-99
Self-diagnosis 4-100
Rearview camera 4-101
Recommended lubricants and capacities 9-7
Recommended SAE viscosity number 9-9

S

Scheduled maintenance service 8-9
Seat 3-4
Driver position memory system (for power seat) 3-11
Front seat adjustment - manual 3-7
Front seat adjustment - power 3-8
Headrest (for front seat) 3-13
Rear seat adjustment 3-16
Seatback pocket 3-16

Seat belts 3-21
Care of seat belts 3-31
Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-27
Seat belt precautions 3-29
Seat belt restraint system 3-21
Smart key 4-12
Battery replacement 4-15
Loss of the smart key.....4-14
Record your key number 4-12
Smart key function.....4-12
Smart key immobilizer system 4-16
Smart key precautions 4-15
Smart trunk 4-27
Special driving conditions 6-100
Driving at night 6-101
Driving in flooded areas 6-103
Driving in the rain 6-102
Driving off-road.....6-103
Hazardous driving conditions 6-100
Highway driving 6-103
Rocking the vehicle 6-100
Smooth cornering.....6-101
Steering wheel.....4-47
Electric power steering (EPS) 4-47
Heated steering wheel 4-49
Horn 4-50
Tilt and telescopic steering 4-48
Storage compartments.....4-145
Center console storage.....4-145
Glove box.....4-145
Sunglass holder 4-146

T

Theft-alarm system 4-18
Armed stage 4-18
Disarmed stage.....4-19
Theft-alarm stage 4-19
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).....7-8
Changing a tire with TPMS 7-12
Check tire pressure.....7-8
Low tire pressure position telltale 7-10
Low tire pressure telltale 7-10
Tire specification and pressure label 9-11
Tires and wheels 8-46
All season tires.....8-58
Checking tire inflation pressure.....8-47
Low aspect ratio tire 8-59
Radial-ply tires.....8-58
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures.....8-46
Snow tires 8-58
Summer tires 8-58
Tire care 8-46
Tire maintenance 8-51
Tire pressure.....8-47

Tire replacement 8-50
Tire rotation 8-48
Tire sidewall labeling.....8-51
Tire traction 8-51
Wheel alignment and tire balance 8-49
Wheel replacement 8-51
Tires and wheels 9-5
Towing 7-31
Towing service.....7-31
Trip modes (Trip computer) 4-72
A/V Mode 4-76
ASCC/LDWS Mode 4-76
Digital speedometer 4-75
Fuel Economy 4-72
One time driving information mode 4-75
Trip A/B 4-74
Trip Modes.....4-72
Turn By Turn Mode 4-76
Warning Messages 4-77
Trunk.....4-25
Closing the trunk 4-26
Emergency trunk safety release 4-26
Opening the trunk 4-25

V

Vehicle break-in process.....1-5
Vehicle certification label 9-10
Vehicle data collection and event data recorders 1-6
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 9-10
Vehicle load limit 6-107
Certification label.....6-111
Tire and loading information label 6-107
Vehicle weight 7-2
Hazard warning flasher 7-2
Vehicle weight.....6-112

W

Warning and indicator lights.....4-85
Indicator Lights 4-92
Warning lights 4-85
Washer fluid 8-33
Checking the washer fluid level 8-33
Welcome system 4-116
Headlight (Headlamp) escort function.....4-116
Interior light 4-116
Pocket lamp 4-116
Windows 4-31
Power windows 4-32
Windshield defrosting and defogging.....4-140
Automatic climate control system 4-141
Defogging logic 4-142
Manual climate control system 4-140

Winter driving.....6-104
Carry emergency equipment 6-106
Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary 6-105
Check battery and cables 6-105
Check spark plugs and ignition system 6-105
Don’t let your parking brake freeze.....6-106
Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath 6-106
Snowy or icy conditions 6-104
To keep locks from freezing 6-105
Trailer towing.....6-106
Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system ..6-105
Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant 6-105
Wiper blades 8-39
Blade inspection.....8-39
Blade replacement 8-39
Wipers and washers 4-110
Front windshield washers 4-112
Windshield wipers 4-110